





كتب العمالقة

الصف الثانى الثانوى
الفصل الدراسى الأول

لقد اجتهدنا...
فإن أحسنا فمن الله
وإن أسأنا فمنا ومن الشيطان
اللهم علماً ينتفع به
والله الموفق

أسرة إعداد كُتب العمالقة

Part 1







Unit 1
Staying healthy

Key Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
infect (v)	يصيب / يُعدي / يلوث	perform (v)	يؤدي	guide (v/n)	يرشد / يوجه / مرشد
infected (adj)	مصاب / ملوث	performance (n)	أداء	guidance (n)	توجيه / إرشاد
infection (n)	إصابة / عدوى	severe (adj)	شديد / خطير	collaborate (v)	يتعاون
infectious (adj)	مُعدي	technique (n)	طريقة / أسلوب	collaboration (n)	تعاون
act (v/n)	يمثل / عمل / فعل	bleed (v)	ينزف	injure (v)	يصيب
action (n)	عمل / تصرف	bleeding (n)	نزيف	injured (adj)	مصاب
react (v)	رد فعل / يتصرف	resilience (n)	مرونة	injury (n)	إصابة

Main Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
CPR	التنفس الصناعي (الإنعاش القلبي الرئوي)	allow (v)	يسمح	responsible (adj)	مسئول
come off (v)	يسقط / يقع / ينكسر	allowance (n)	سماح / نصيب	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
rise up (v)	ينهض / يقوم	athlete (n)	لاعب ألعاب قوى	kits (n)	معدات / أدوات / أمتعة
wrap (v)	يغلف / يلف	athletic (adj)	رياضي / نشيط	blood (n)	دم
breath (n)	النفس	examine (v)	يفحص	immediately (adv)	حالاً / فوراً
breathe (v)	يتنفس	examination (n)	فحص	tight (adj)	ضيق / محكم / مشدود
breathing (n)	التنفس	muscles (n)	عضلات	lock (v/n)	يغلق / قفل / يحبس
first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية	operate (v)	يجري عملية / يشغل	sign (v/n)	لافتة / إشارة / يوقع
close to	قريب من	operation (n)	عملية جراحية	follow (v)	يتبع
chest (n)	الصدر	emergency (n)	الطوارئ	instructions (n)	تعليمات
danger (n)	خطر	damage (v/n)	يفسد / يتلف / تلف	flat (n)	مسطح / مستوى / شقة
dangerous (adj)	خطير	competition (n)	مسابقة / منافسة	surface (n)	سطح
pioneer (n)	رائد	trophy (n)	كأس / غنيمة	expert (n)	خبير
survive (v)	ينجو / يبقى على قيد الحياة	sudden (adj)	مفاجئ	pump (v/n)	يضخ / مضخة
regular (adj)	منتظم	press (v/n)	يضغط / صحافة	fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
regularly (adv)	بانتظام	gloves (n)	قفازات	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
place (v/n)	يضع / مكان	available (adj)	متاح	respond (v)	يستجيب
rule (v/n)	قاعدة / قانون / يحكم	executive director	المدير التنفيذي	reply (v/n)	يرد / رد

Synonym & Antonym

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	العكس Antonym
responsible	مسئول	in charge of - reliable - in control	irresponsible - unaccountable
follow	يتبع	obey - track - shadow	break - disobey - ignore
collaborate	يتعاون	cooperate - participate	resist - hinder
severe	خطير / عنيف	dangerous - serious	unserious - gentle
normal	طبيعي / عاقل	ordinary - sane - usual	abnormal - insane - unusual
regularly	بانتظام	frequently - usually	uncommonly - unusually
react	رد فعل / يتصرف	respond - perform	stop - keep - ignore

Prepositions

get **on**	يركب	rise **up**	ينهض / يقوم	reply **to**	يرد على
hear **of**	يسمع عن	take **up**	يمارس هواية / يشغل	wrap... **around**	يلف .. على
forget **about**	ينسى بشأن	press **down on**	يضغط على	protect **from**	يحمى من
care **about**	يهتم بـ	look **around**	ينظر حوله	pull **out**	يقتلع / يخلع
disagree **about**	يعترض على	react **with**	يستجيب بـ	respond **to**	يستجيب لـ

Expressions & Idioms

ask questions	يطرح الأسئلة
call for help	يطلب المساعدة
react quickly	يُبدى رد فعل سريع
stay calm	اهدأ / حافظ على الهدوء
Have the right **to**	لدية الحق فى
be right **to**	يكون محقاً فى
have **severe** injuries	لديه إصابات خطيرة
follow the **instructions**	يتبع التعليمات
Athletic Heart Centre (AHC) ⇐	مركز القلب الرياضي
CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation) ⇐	الإنعاش القلبى الرئوى
lock your fingers **together** ⇐	اقفل (اشبك) أصابعك معا
do first aid	يقوم بالإسعافات الأولية
move closer to	يقترب أكثر من
lying on his back	مستلقى على ظهره
place your hand **on**	ضع يدك على
how to perform CPR	كيفية القيام بالإسعافات الأولية
make sure/ **be** sure	يتأكد
be **careful**	كن حذراً
emergency services	خدمات الطوارئ

Definitions

infection	عدوى	▸ a disease caused by a virus or bacteria
perform	يؤدى	▸ means the same as do an action
react	رد فعل / يقوم بعمل	▸ do something because something else has been done
severe	شديد / حاد / عنيف	▸ describes an illness or injury that is extremely bad or serious
technique	أسلوب / طريقة	▸ a way of doing something with a skill
damage	ضرر / تلف	▸ physical harm caused to something in such a way as to impair its value, usefulness, or normal function
CPR	الإنعاش القلبى الرئوى	abbreviation for **cardiopulmonary resuscitation** ▸ a method used to keep someone alive in a medical emergency, in which you blow into their mouth then press on their chest and then repeat the process
first aid	إسعافات أولية	▸ basic medical treatment which is given to someone as soon as possible after they have been hurt in an accident or suddenly become ill
collaboration	تعاون	▸ when two or more people work together to create or achieve the same thing

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
infect	يصيب	infection	عدوى / إصابة	infectious	معدي
develop	يطور / يتطور	development	التنمية	developed	متطور
protect	يحمي	protection	حماية	protective	حمائى / دفاعى / واقي
wake	يوقظ	wake	يقظة	awake	مستيقظ / يقظ
act	يمثل / يقوم بعمل / يفعل	action	عمل / تصرف	active	نشط / نشيط
collaborate	يتعاون	collaboration	التعاون	collaborative	متعاون
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع / تشجيع
bleed	ينزف	bleeding	نزيف	bleeding	مجروح / دامى
perform	يؤدى	performance	اداء	performing	مؤد



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

health	صحة	wealth	ثروة
special	خاص (مميز)	private	خاص (ملكية)
decide to	يقرر	decide on	يختار / يحدد
rule	يحكم	role	دور
save	ينقذ / يوفر	safe	آمن
on time	فى الوقت المناسب (بالضبط)	in time	مبكرا عن الموعد المحدد
health	صحة	healthy	صحي
encourage ..... to	يشجع... على	discourage ..... from	يعوق ... من
fortunately	لحسن الحظ	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
fortunate	محظوظ	unfortunate	غير محظوظ
athletes	رياضيين	athletics	ألعاب قوى
sign	لافتة تعطى معلومة / إشارة لحدث ما	signal	إشارة (تليفون / تليفزيون / ...)
follow	يتبع	fellow	رفيق
heart	قلب	hurt	يؤلم
expert (in - on - at)	خبير في	export (to)	يصدر إلى
wrap	يلف	fold	يطوي
member	عضو / فرد (فى فريق)	organ	عضو (فى الجسم)
similar to	مشابه (جزئي)	the same ..... as	متطابق (كلي)
kit	عدة / أدوات / أمتعة	tool	آلة يدوية (مع الحرف)

infect, infected, infection & infectious

infect	يصيب	▶ Covid-19 infects the old more than the young.
infected	مصاب / ملوث	▶ After the operation the wound became infected.
infection	إصابة / عدوى	▶ White blood cells help defend the body against infection.
infectious	معدى	▶ Dogs may still be infectious.





illness & disease

illness	مرض / اعتلال عام بالصحة	▶ I think your illness is due to overwork.
disease	مرض محدد ويمكن أن يكون معدى	▶ There is no known cure for this disease.

operation & process

operation	عملية (جراحية/حسابية/تشغيل)	▶ He had an operation on his injured leg yesterday.
process	عملية (ذات خطوات محددة)	▶ It is a natural process.

responsible, irresponsible & responsibility

responsible for	مسئول عن	▶ The police believe that the same man is responsible for three other murders in the area.
irresponsible	غير مسئول / متهور	▶ It was highly irresponsible of him to leave the children on their own in the pool.
responsibility	مسئولية	▶ She takes her responsibilities as a nurse seriously.

danger, dangerous, endanger & endangered

danger	خطر	▶ The patient is now out of danger.
dangerous	خطير	▶ She walked home by herself, although she knew that it was dangerous.
endanger	يعرض للخطر	▶ He would never do anything to endanger the lives of his children.
endangered	معرض للخطر	▶ There are many animals which are endangered.

technique, method, way & means

technique	تقنية (تحتاج لمهارة)	▶ This is a powerful negotiating technique.
method	طريقة (أسلوب معين)	▶ Various methods were used in these studies.
way	طريقة (كيفية فعل الشيء)	▶ I hate the way she always criticizes me.
means	وسيلة / وسائل	▶ We will use whatever means are necessary.

lie & lay

lie / lied / lied (lying)	يكذب / يضلل	▶ Jana lied about her age to get married.
lie / lay / lain (lying)	يرقد / يقع	▶ Seif lay on the sofa and fell asleep.
lay / laid / laid (laying)	تبيض / يضع	▶ Turtles lay their eggs in the sand.

arrive, reach & get to

arrive (in)	يصل (مكان كبير)	▶ He arrived in Cairo.
arrive (at)	يصل (مكان صغير)	▶ He arrived at the office early.
arrive	يصل (بدون حرف جر)	▶ When did they arrive?
reach + object	يصل (بدون حرف جر)	▶ He reached Cairo airport.
get to	يصل الى	▶ They got to Cairo airport.

role & rule

role	دور	▶ Youth play a positive role in the society.
rule	قاعدة / قانون / يحكم	▶ All students must follow school rules. ▶ The king should rule fairly.



يتطلع إلى ⟶ look forward to + اسم or v + ing

- I look forward to my summer holiday.
- I look forward to visiting London.

take (took) ⟵ فترة زمنية + to مصدر or spend (spent) ⟵ فترة زمنية + v + ing

- He took three hours to study his lessons.
- He spent three hours studying his lessons.

Causative

فاعل + make - let - have + مفعول + inf. ⟶ مصدر

فاعل + get / allow / force / cause + مفعول + to + مصدر

فاعل + have - get + مفعول غير عاقل + P.P ⟶ (المبنى للمجهول)

- He didn't let them smoke.
- He didn't allow them to smoke.
- Too much rain causes the river to flood.
- I got my room cleaned.

فاعل + make + مفعول + مصدر / مفعول + V.be + made to + مصدر

- Toka makes Jana tidy her room.
- Jana is made to tidy her room.
- My teacher always makes me study hard.
- He was made to stay alone.



HOW TO PERFORM FIRST AID

Step 1



1) If you find an ill or injured person, you must check the area around him / her first to make sure it isn't dangerous. Then move closer to the person and look carefully at them. Do they seem to be very ill? Do they have severe injuries?
2) If the person is awake but not bleeding, you have to ask them how they feel and what happened. Check their body for signs of injury or infection. You don't have to touch the person's body to do this.

Step 2



3) If the person doesn't reply, touch their shoulder or their foot and shout to see if they react, and remember to check for normal breathing.
4) If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the emergency services immediately.
5) If you know how to perform CPR, you have to do this to help the person start breathing again. However, you mustn't do CPR unless the person is lying on their back on a flat surface such as the floor.

Step 3



6) Place your hand on the centre of the person's chest. Put your other hand on top of the first hand and lock your fingers together. Make sure that your shoulders are above your hands.
7) You don't have to press down on the person's chest very much – only five to six centimetres. Keep your hands on their chest and allow it to rise up again. You have to do this 100 to 120 times a minute until the person starts breathing again.





Athletic Heart Centre (AHC)

Most of us know that we need to stay healthy and many of us enjoy sports. But some young athletes believe that they don't need to worry about heart problems until they get very ill. However, health experts agree that athletes must get a special heart examination before they can be completely sure that they don't have a problem.

For example, in 2006, Mohamed Abdelwahab was an Egyptian footballer from Fayum who seemed to be very healthy.

At that time, football clubs didn't have to check their players' hearts, but then Abdelwahab fell down while he was training. Sadly, although the emergency services took him to hospital, Abdelwahab didn't survive.

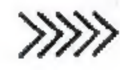
Fortunately, Egypt became a pioneer in athletic heart care in 2018 when it established the first Athletic Heart Centre in the Middle East in Wadi el Nil Hospital.

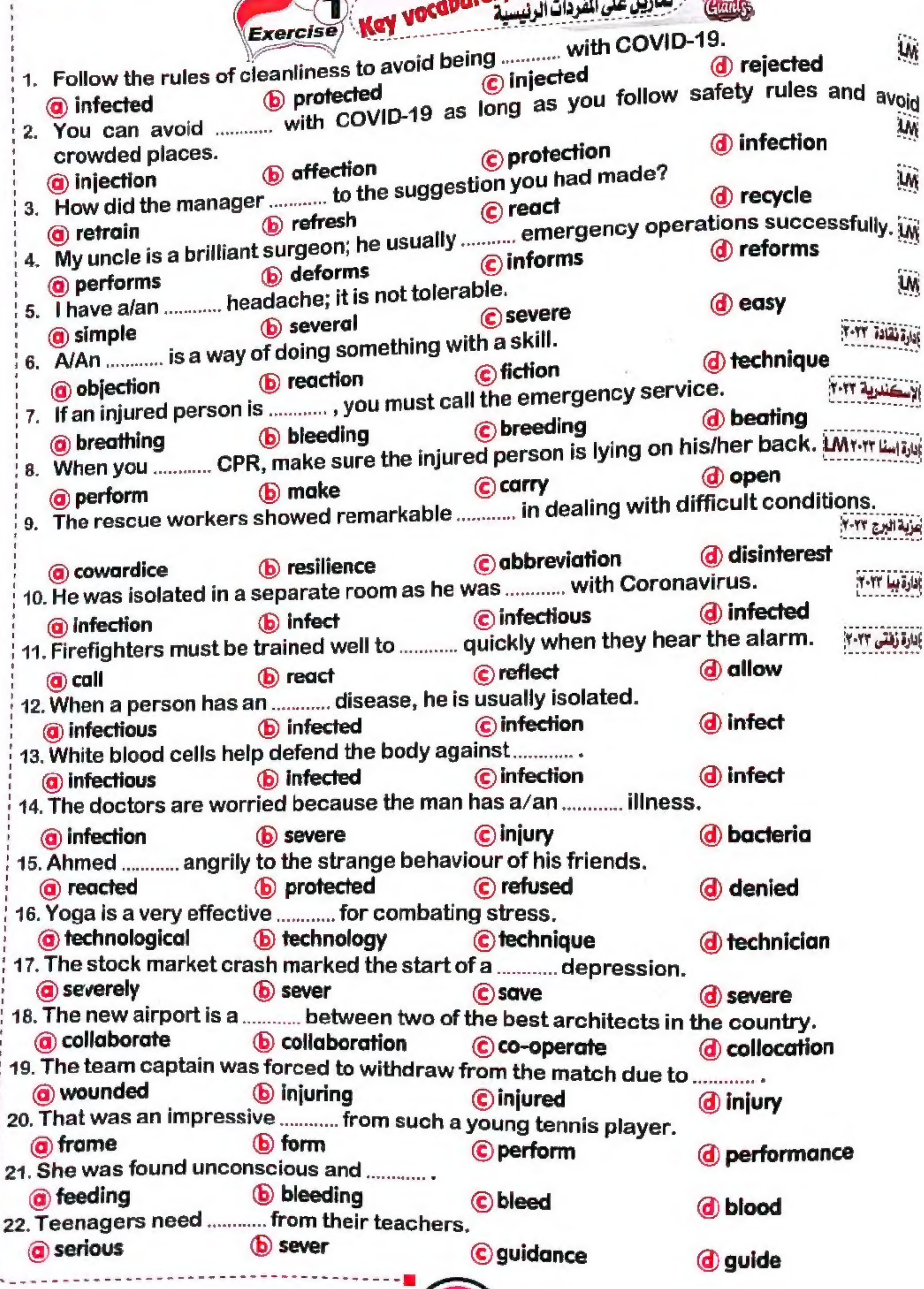
It was decided that the AHC had to have the best technology to check every detail of an athlete's heart. And Dr Hazem Khamis, the Hospital Director, has said that the centre will help to protect everyone who enjoys sport in Egypt, and it will work with Liverpool John Moores University to help athletes abroad.

Dr Ahmed Ashraf Eissa, who is the Executive Director of the centre, also believes that anyone who does any kind of sport should check the health of their heart first. For example, the members of the Egyptian national team take full tests of their hearts before major competitions, such as the World Handball Championships.

And now Dr Hazem and Dr Ahmed have published a book together so that everyone can understand the importance of having a healthy heart. It's called Athletic Heart: Between Dreams of a Trophy and Sudden Death.

Young athletes, and their families, mustn't miss this chance to learn about the importance of heart examinations to stay fit and healthy.





Exercise 1 Key vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الرئيسية

1. Follow the rules of cleanliness to avoid being .... with COVID-19. LM
   ⓐ infected ⓑ protected ⓒ injected ⓓ rejected
2. You can avoid .... with COVID-19 as long as you follow safety rules and avoid crowded places. LM
   ⓐ injection ⓑ affection ⓒ protection ⓓ infection
3. How did the manager .... to the suggestion you had made? LM
   ⓐ retrain ⓑ refresh ⓒ react ⓓ recycle
4. My uncle is a brilliant surgeon; he usually .... emergency operations successfully. LM
   ⓐ performs ⓑ deforms ⓒ informs ⓓ reforms
5. I have a/an .... headache; it is not tolerable. LM
   ⓐ simple ⓑ several ⓒ severe ⓓ easy
6. A/An .... is a way of doing something with a skill. إدارة نقادة ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ objection ⓑ reaction ⓒ fiction ⓓ technique
7. If an injured person is .... , you must call the emergency service. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ breathing ⓑ bleeding ⓒ breeding ⓓ beating
8. When you .... CPR, make sure the injured person is lying on his/her back. إدارة إسنا ٢٠٢٢ LM
   ⓐ perform ⓑ make ⓒ carry ⓓ open
9. The rescue workers showed remarkable .... in dealing with difficult conditions. عزبة البرج ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ cowardice ⓑ resilience ⓒ abbreviation ⓓ disinterest
10. He was isolated in a separate room as he was .... with Coronavirus. إدارة بيا ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ infection ⓑ infect ⓒ infectious ⓓ infected
11. Firefighters must be trained well to .... quickly when they hear the alarm. إدارة زفتى ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ call ⓑ react ⓒ reflect ⓓ allow
12. When a person has an .... disease, he is usually isolated.
    ⓐ infectious ⓑ infected ⓒ infection ⓓ infect
13. White blood cells help defend the body against ....
    ⓐ infectious ⓑ infected ⓒ infection ⓓ infect
14. The doctors are worried because the man has a/an .... illness.
    ⓐ infection ⓑ severe ⓒ injury ⓓ bacteria
15. Ahmed .... angrily to the strange behaviour of his friends.
    ⓐ reacted ⓑ protected ⓒ refused ⓓ denied
16. Yoga is a very effective .... for combating stress.
    ⓐ technological ⓑ technology ⓒ technique ⓓ technician
17. The stock market crash marked the start of a .... depression.
    ⓐ severely ⓑ sever ⓒ save ⓓ severe
18. The new airport is a .... between two of the best architects in the country.
    ⓐ collaborate ⓑ collaboration ⓒ co-operate ⓓ collocation
19. The team captain was forced to withdraw from the match due to ....
    ⓐ wounded ⓑ injuring ⓒ injured ⓓ injury
20. That was an impressive .... from such a young tennis player.
    ⓐ frame ⓑ form ⓒ perform ⓓ performance
21. She was found unconscious and ....
    ⓐ feeding ⓑ bleeding ⓒ bleed ⓓ blood
22. Teenagers need .... from their teachers.
    ⓐ serious ⓑ sever ⓒ guidance ⓓ guide



Exercise 2 Main vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الاساسية

23. Sadly, although the emergency services took him to hospital, Ali didn't .... LM
ⓐ deprive ⓑ survive ⓒ arrive ⓓ drive

24. The doctors are doing all that they can, but she is still not .... properly. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ breeze ⓑ breath ⓒ breathe ⓓ breathing

25. If you have .... pain, you must consult your doctor immediately to make sure you have no problem with your heart. LM
ⓐ feast ⓑ fist ⓒ chest ⓓ rest

26. He was a/an .... in the field of heart surgery. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ pioneer ⓑ performer ⓒ athlete ⓓ actor

27. The old woman .... her husband by only a few years. Their relation was an amazing one. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ kept ⓑ dissolved ⓒ called ⓓ survived

28. I do different sports .... to keep fit. LM
ⓐ regularly ⓑ irregularly ⓒ gradual ⓓ carelessly

29. All .... wish to win medals. LM
ⓐ athletic ⓑ athletes ⓒ athletics' ⓓ athletics

30. AHC is .... for Athletic Heart Centre. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ short ⓑ stand ⓒ form ⓓ advert

31. Emad has huge .... because he goes to the gym. إدارة القوصية ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ hearts ⓑ ears ⓒ muscles ⓓ bones

32. Your heart .... about 380 litres of blood through your body every hour. LM
ⓐ pumps ⓑ jumps ⓒ absorbs ⓓ blocks

33. Of the 5 people injured in the crash , only one .... إدارة نقادة ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ served ⓑ existed ⓒ survived ⓓ lived

34. You shouldn't smoke, it is very bad for your ....
ⓐ muscles ⓑ cells ⓒ surfaces ⓓ lungs

35. .... the two girls returned home safely after the accident. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ Fortunately ⓑ Kindly ⓒ Severely ⓓ Happy

36. He is currently considered to be the best British ....
ⓐ athletes ⓑ athletics ⓒ athletic ⓓ athlete

37. The package was .... in plain brown paper.
ⓐ hurt ⓑ examined ⓒ wrapped ⓓ raised

38. Every workplace should have a .... kit.
ⓐ first-aid ⓑ second-aid ⓒ aid-first ⓓ aid-second

39. Dr Zewail is more than just a Noble laureate; he is a/an .... in chemistry.
ⓐ investor ⓑ explorer ⓒ pioneer ⓓ politician

40. The emergency .... searched all night for crash survivors.
ⓐ services ⓑ severe ⓒ saver ⓓ save

41. Drunk drivers pose a .... threat to other road users.
ⓐ sort ⓑ serious ⓒ seriously ⓓ series

42. A work-out in the gym will exercise all the major .... groups.
ⓐ minds ⓑ bones ⓒ teeth ⓓ muscle

43. He called on the people to .... against the invaders.
ⓐ rise on ⓑ rise out ⓒ rise up ⓓ rise of

44. Susan sat on a chair .... the window.
ⓐ take to ⓑ look forward to ⓒ object to ⓓ close to

45. We demand the .... and unconditional release of all political prisoners.
ⓐ near ⓑ immediate ⓒ immediately ⓓ soon

46. People are concerned about the quality of the air they ....
ⓐ breeze ⓑ breath ⓒ breathe ⓓ breathing

47. She was dizzy and short of ....
ⓐ breeze ⓑ breath ⓒ breathe ⓓ breathing

48. Grandma always kept a bit of money tucked away in case there was a/an ....
ⓐ infected ⓑ severe ⓒ emergency ⓓ merge

49. We must also do things like washing our hands ....
ⓐ regularly ⓑ gradual ⓒ gradually ⓓ regular

50. He paid .... amounts of money to a charity.
ⓐ gradually ⓑ regularly ⓒ regular ⓓ gradual

Exercise 3 Synonyms & Antonyms المرادفات والمتضادات

51. "We need somebody to take charge of the financial side." What does the word 'charge' mean in this sentence?
ⓐ responsibility ⓑ responsibly ⓒ irresponsible ⓓ responsible

52. Ali had to react politely so as not to insult his friend. React is a synonym for ....
ⓐ comfort ⓑ connect ⓒ respond ⓓ mistake

53. "Researchers around the world collaborate to develop a new vaccine." The word 'collaborate' here can be replaced by ....
ⓐ cooperation ⓑ operation ⓒ operate ⓓ cooperate

54. .... is a synonym to very serious.
ⓐ Serve ⓑ Simple ⓒ Severe ⓓ Safe

55. The word 'flexibility' can be replaced by ....
ⓐ boost ⓑ ability ⓒ resilience ⓓ disability

56. "We meet regularly to discuss the progress of the project." The adverb 'regularly' in this sentence is antonymous with ....
ⓐ uncommonly ⓑ unusually ⓒ usually ⓓ a & b

Exercise 4 Choose two Answers اختر إجابتين

57. Don't worry, I will give you the medicine ....
ⓐ lately ⓑ commonly ⓒ immediately ⓓ at once ⓔ once

58. Everyone should learn how to .... first aid.
ⓐ move ⓑ make ⓒ perform ⓓ carry ⓔ do

59. I hope the manager will .... to my complaint on time.
ⓐ respond ⓑ neglect ⓒ prefer ⓓ reply ⓔ imply

60. I don't like to work in distant places. "Distant" is the opposite in meaning to ....
ⓐ remote ⓑ close ⓒ far ⓓ crowded ⓔ near

61. I'm sure we can .... this task in case we cooperate together.
ⓐ reform ⓑ perform ⓒ damage ⓓ do ⓔ make

62. I decided to sell my car later. "Later" here is opposite in meaning to ....
ⓐ immediately ⓑ once ⓒ cheap ⓓ soon ⓔ latter

Exercise 5 Various Exercises تمارين منوعة

63. The poor injured driver had two major .... in two weeks.
ⓐ operations ⓑ operated ⓒ processes ⓓ processed

64. Getting fit again has been a long slow........... .

ⓐ operation ⓑ operated ⓒ process ⓓ processed

65. You must make .... that the oil in the engine is enough.

ⓐ notes ⓑ sure ⓒ suggestions ⓓ money

66. Are you alone? I just wanted a .... word.

ⓐ particular ⓑ public ⓒ special ⓓ private

67. The future of our planet is in .... if we continue to plunder it as we do.

ⓐ endangered ⓑ dangerous ⓒ danger ⓓ endanger

68. Toka .... six hours studying English yesterday.

ⓐ take ⓑ took ⓒ spend ⓓ spent

69. .... species of animals should be protected all over the world.

ⓐ Danger ⓑ Endangered ⓒ Endanger ⓓ Dangerous

70. We're really looking forward .... you again.

ⓐ see ⓑ to see ⓒ seeing ⓓ to seeing

71. She walked home by herself, although she knew that it was ....

ⓐ endangered ⓑ dangerous ⓒ danger ⓓ endanger

72. Physical exercise can .... you against heart disease.

ⓐ provide ⓑ prevent ⓒ protect ⓓ produce

73. Tests should he administered by medical ....

ⓐ exposure ⓑ experience ⓒ experts ⓓ experiment

74. Many people suffer from some form of mental .... during their lives.

ⓐ patient ⓑ sick ⓒ ill ⓓ illness

75. Some athletes take drugs to .... their performance.

ⓐ infect ⓑ proof ⓒ improve ⓓ prove

76. He was angry but managed, with great self-restraint, to .... calmly.

ⓐ reply ⓑ replay ⓒ pump ⓓ apply

77. The state of my father's .... concerns us greatly.

ⓐ wealthy ⓑ healthy ⓒ health ⓓ unhealthy

78. Do your muscles have the strength and .... that they should have?

ⓐ weakness ⓑ resilience ⓒ stupid ⓓ weak

79. Thanks to modern technology, these children will ....

ⓐ alive ⓑ survival ⓒ survive ⓓ survivors

80. Where do you have to put your hands when you .... CPR?

ⓐ do ⓑ perform ⓒ make ⓓ a & b

Don't get confused — **Causative (get - let - make - allow - cause)**

81. The government shouldn't let anyone .... in public places.

ⓐ smoke ⓑ to smoking ⓒ to smoke ⓓ smoking

82. The government shouldn't allow anyone .... in public places.

ⓐ smoke ⓑ to smoking ⓒ to smoke ⓓ smoking

83. We know what .... the lake get polluted.

ⓐ gets ⓑ makes ⓒ causes ⓓ allows

84. We know what .... the lake to get polluted.

ⓐ lets ⓑ makes ⓒ causes ⓓ reasons

85. A lot of students .... repeat their homework again because they did it wrong.

ⓐ were made to ⓑ made to ⓒ made ⓓ was made

86. I always get my car .... every month.

ⓐ check ⓑ to check ⓒ checking ⓓ checked





Obligation & Necessity

الإلـــــــزام والضـــــــرورة

must - mustn't

* نستخدم must / mustn't للتعبير عن (الإلزام أو الضرورة أو التحريم).
* بعد must / mustn't يأتى الفعل فى المصدر (بدون أى إضافات وبدون to).
* تأتى must / mustn't مع جميع الضمائر والأسماء سواء كانت مفرد أو جمع.

must / mustn't + مصدر

لاحظ استخدامات must

- You mustn't park here. (القواعد العامة و القوانين)
- I must work hard for the exams next week. (الزام شخصي)
- I must buy a present for my mother. (مشاعر قوية)
- You must come to my party tonight. (دعوة قوية)
- You must stop smoking. (نصيحة قوية)
- We must buy souvenirs for our friends here. (توصية قوية)
- Why must Ali laugh at me all the time? (اللوم / الانتقاد)
- There mustn't be any rubbish left. (تحذير قوي)

* يتكون السؤال بـ (هل) كالآتى: (ويكون معناه " هل يجب ...؟)

Must + فاعل + مصدر + ...تكملة الجملة ...?

- Must I turn right here?
  - ☞ Yes, you must.
  - ☞ No, you mustn't.

* يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالآتى:

أداة استفهام + must / mustn't + subject + inf...?

- What must I do to avoid traffic fines?
  - ☞ You must stick to the rules.

* لاحظ صيغة المبنى للمجهول كالآتي:

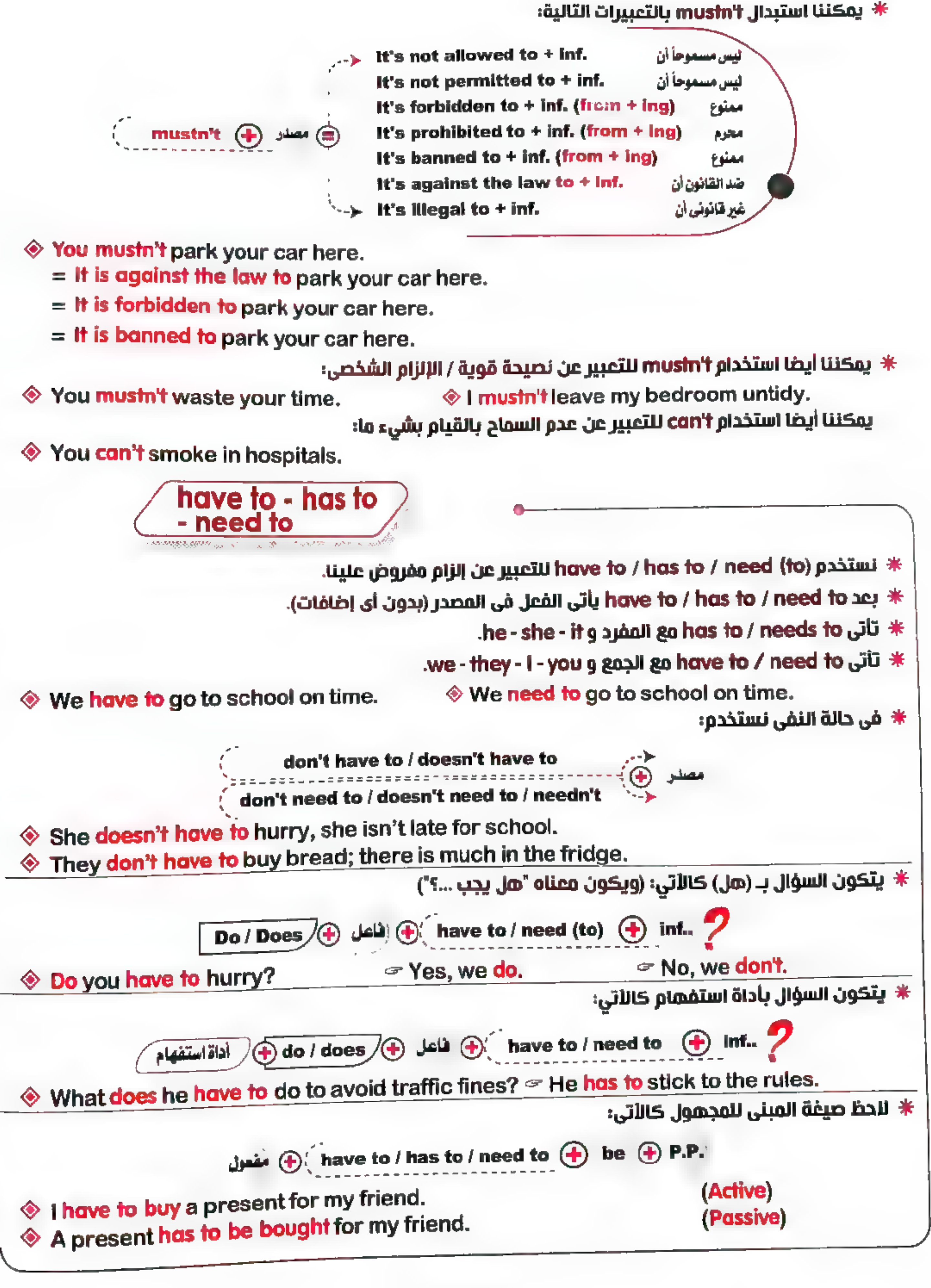
مفعول + ... must / mustn't + be + P.P.

- I must buy a present for my mother. (Active)
- A present for my mother must be bought. (Passive)

* يمكننا استبدال must بالتعبيرات التالية:

must + مصدر = It's necessary / It's a necessity / It's obligatory / It's legal / It's a must + for... + to + inf.

- You must turn right.
  - = It is necessary for you to turn right.
  - = It is a necessity for you to turn right.
  - = It is obligatory for you to turn right.
  - = It is a must for you to turn right.



* يمكننا استبدال mustn't بالتعبيرات التالية:

mustn't + مصدر =

- It's not allowed to + inf. — ليس مسموحاً أن
- It's not permitted to + inf. — ليس مسموحاً أن
- It's forbidden to + inf. (from + ing) — ممنوع
- It's prohibited to + inf. (from + ing) — محرم
- It's banned to + inf. (from + ing) — ممنوع
- It's against the law to + inf. — ضد القانون أن
- It's illegal to + inf. — غير قانوني أن

◈ You mustn't park your car here.
= It is against the law to park your car here.
= It is forbidden to park your car here.
= It is banned to park your car here.

* يمكننا أيضا استخدام mustn't للتعبير عن نصيحة قوية / الإلزام الشخصي:

◈ You mustn't waste your time.
◈ I mustn't leave my bedroom untidy.

يمكننا أيضا استخدام can't للتعبير عن عدم السماح بالقيام بشيء ما:

◈ You can't smoke in hospitals.

have to - has to - need to

* نستخدم have to / has to / need (to) للتعبير عن إلزام مفروض علينا.
* بعد have to / has to / need to يأتي الفعل فى المصدر (بدون أى إضافات).
* تأتي has to / needs to مع المفرد و he - she - it.
* تأتي have to / need to مع الجمع و we - they - I - you.

◈ We have to go to school on time.
◈ We need to go to school on time.

* فى حالة النفى نستخدم:

مصدر + don't have to / doesn't have to
مصدر + don't need to / doesn't need to / needn't

◈ She doesn't have to hurry, she isn't late for school.
◈ They don't have to buy bread; there is much in the fridge.

* يتكون السؤال بـ (هل) كالآتي: (ويكون معناه "هل يجب ...؟")

Do / Does + فاعل + have to / need (to) + inf.. ?

◈ Do you have to hurry? ☞ Yes, we do. ☞ No, we don't.

* يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالآتي:

أداة استفهام + do / does + فاعل + have to / need to + inf.. ?

◈ What does he have to do to avoid traffic fines? ☞ He has to stick to the rules.

* لاحظ صيغة المبنى للمجهول كالآتي:

مفعول + have to / has to / need to + be + P.P.

◈ I have to buy a present for my friend. (Active)
◈ A present has to be bought for my friend. (Passive)

had to ⊕ مصدر

◈ I couldn't go out because I **had to** do my homework.

* في حالة النفي نستخدم:

didn't have to ⊕ مصدر

◈ She **didn't have to** hurry, she wasn't late for school.

had to ⊕ مصدر ⊜ It was necessary (for) (to + اسم / ضمير مفعول) ⊕ مصدر

◈ I **had to** do my homework, so I couldn't go out.
= **It was necessary for me** to do my homework.

Exercise 1 from Tests أسئلة امتحانات الإدارات

1. One .... violate the law. (إدارة نقادة ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ needn't ⓒ must ⓓ should
2. You .... pay to go in the museum. It's free to enter. (القليوبية ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ must ⓑ have to ⓒ doesn't have to ⓓ don't have to
3. If you eat while driving, you will be fined. You .... do it. (الغربية ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ don't have to ⓑ mustn't ⓒ needn't ⓓ shouldn't
4. Yesterday, our car ran out of petrol so we .... take a taxi. (إدارة التوصية ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ had to ⓑ didn't have to ⓒ may ⓓ might
5. You .... take photos here. It's forbidden. (الفيوم ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ shouldn't ⓑ mustn't ⓒ must ⓓ should
6. You .... be 18 to drive a car in England. (إدارة التوصية ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ need ⓑ can ⓒ have to ⓓ mustn't
7. You .... be so rude! Why don't you try saying "please" once in a while? (المنيا ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ don't need ⓒ needn't ⓓ haven't
8. In the past, people .... hunt for food. (مطروح ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ must ⓑ mustn't ⓒ had had ⓓ had to
9. Yesterday, I .... work for 12 hours to finish the task. (إدارة ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ had to ⓑ have to ⓒ will have to ⓓ must
10. The majority of mothers think that babies .... at regular times. (إدارة ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ must feed ⓑ have to feed ⓒ have to be fed ⓓ need to feed
11. We are going to the beach this afternoon, so you .... be careful. (٢٠٢٢ / إدارة ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ must ⓑ don't have to ⓒ mustn't ⓓ has to
12. You .... forget to bring a coat to the mountains. It will be cold there. (إدارة ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ don't have to ⓑ must ⓒ need to ⓓ mustn't
13. You ....take photos here; it's a military area. (بني سويف ٢٠٢٢ LM)
ⓐ must ⓑ mustn't ⓒ needn't ⓓ shouldn't
14. You ....take this medicine; you are quite well now. (٢٠٢٢ LM)
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ have to ⓒ don't have to ⓓ need to
15. What technology did he ....put in the Athletic Heart Center? (٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ has to ⓑ must ⓒ have to ⓓ had to
16. He ....go to school yesterday. It was a holiday. (٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ needn't ⓑ won't ⓒ didn't have to ⓓ may not

17. I............ buy bread because we had a lot at home. LM
ⓐ did not have to ⓑ have to ⓒ needn't ⓓ had to

18. I .... install a new antivirus; I need to protect my computer. LM
ⓐ must ⓑ didn't have to ⓒ had to ⓓ shouldn't

19. You .... try my sister's cake now. It's really delicious! LM
ⓐ needn't ⓑ need ⓒ mustn't ⓓ must

20. .... cancel your trip to Dahab? - Yes, unfortunately, my father was ill. LM
ⓐ Must you ⓑ Did you have to ⓒ Do you have to ⓓ Will you have to

21. You .... pass a driving test to drive a car in Egypt. LM
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ needn't ⓒ have to ⓓ need

22. I .... go to the service centre. I needed to make sure the car was ready for the long trip. LM
ⓐ must ⓑ had to ⓒ have to ⓓ needn't

23. I really .... buy my mother a present on her birthday. One should be grateful! LM
ⓐ needn't ⓑ have to ⓒ mustn't ⓓ must

24. You .... worry; you still have a lot of time to answer the other question. LM
ⓐ don't have to ⓑ mustn't ⓒ should ⓓ need

25. My friend .... stop the car because he felt there was something wrong with the brakes. LM
ⓐ must ⓑ had to ⓒ didn't have to ⓓ needn't

26. Football clubs .... train players to perform CPR because it is a very necessary procedure.
ⓐ has to ⓑ needn't ⓒ must ⓓ had to

27. Swimming is banned here. This means you .... here. LM
ⓐ mustn't swim ⓑ could have swum ⓒ may swim ⓓ needn't swim

28. There was no need for me to leave the office early. I .... depart early. LM
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ had to ⓒ didn't have to ⓓ needn't

29. I miss you so much; you .... come and have lunch with me. LM
ⓐ had to ⓑ must ⓒ needn't ⓓ shouldn't have

30. I .... take a taxi because I was about to miss the first lecture. LM
ⓐ had to ⓑ have to ⓒ didn't have to ⓓ don't have to

31. You .... miss this lecture, it's the most important one. LM
ⓐ must ⓑ had to ⓒ mustn't ⓓ don't have to

32. Unfortunately, my friend broke his leg and .... to hospital where he received proper treatment. LM
ⓐ had to go ⓑ should have gone ⓒ has to go ⓓ didn't have to go

33. Mona is really economical; she .... more bread; she actually had a lot in the fridge. LM
ⓐ needn't buy ⓑ didn't have to buy ⓒ mustn't buy ⓓ had to buy

34. You............ your car without wearing your seat belt; otherwise, you will have to pay a fine. LM
ⓐ mustn't drive ⓑ needn't drive ⓒ had to drive ⓓ should have driven

35. The flight .... due to the bad weather conditions. LM
ⓐ have been canceled ⓑ must cancel ⓒ had to cancel ⓓ had to be canceled

36. .... a fine? – Surely because he had exceeded the speed limit. LM
ⓐ Might he have paid ⓑ Did he have to pay
ⓒ Shouldn't he have paid ⓓ Won't he pay

37. It was crucial for Amany to consult a doctor. This means:
ⓐ She could have consulted a doctor.
ⓑ She can't have consulted a doctor.
ⓒ She had to consult a doctor.
ⓓ She didn't have to consult a doctor

Exercise 3 Giants تمارين كتاب العمالقـــة

38. I'm sorry for not visiting you last night; I .... be with my uncle in the hospital.
ⓐ must ⓑ had to ⓒ didn't have to ⓓ needn't
39. You .... sit on that wall. It is dangerous.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ don't have to ⓒ must ⓓ had to
40. Unfortunately, my friend broke his leg and .... go to hospital.
ⓐ has to ⓑ should have gone ⓒ had to ⓓ didn't have to
41. I don't want anyone to know about our plan. You .... tell anyone.
ⓐ have to ⓑ must ⓒ doesn't have to ⓓ mustn't
42. You .... pass a driving test to drive a car in Egypt.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ needn't ⓒ have to ⓓ need
43. Seif .... to work on Fridays.
ⓐ don't have ⓑ doesn't have ⓒ hasn't ⓓ mustn't
44. I promised I would be on time. I .... be late.
ⓐ have to ⓑ must ⓒ don't have to ⓓ mustn't
45. You .... buy a ticket before you get on the train.
ⓐ have to ⓑ don't have to ⓒ doesn't have to ⓓ mustn't
46. Leila .... work hard if she wants to pass her exams.
ⓐ have to ⓑ had to ⓒ has to ⓓ mustn't
47. It's our final exam tomorrow. We .... be late.
ⓐ must ⓑ needn't ⓒ mustn't ⓓ have to
48. You mustn't smoke in sleeping rooms. This is a/an ....
ⓐ prohibition ⓑ necessity ⓒ criticism ⓓ suggestion
49. You .... come with us if you don't want.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ don't have to ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ have to
50. When .... Mona have to go after I had left?
ⓐ did ⓑ doing ⓒ does ⓓ do
51. I .... take my coat last night because it was not raining.
ⓐ had to ⓑ needn't ⓒ have to ⓓ did not have to
52. "You must have the dinner with me". It's ....
ⓐ an invitation ⓑ strong advice ⓒ a must ⓓ a recommendation
53. You .... park your car here until you pay for it.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ must ⓒ can ⓓ must be
54. What .... do?
ⓐ must the children to
ⓑ must the children
ⓒ do the children must
ⓓ do the children must to
55. "Seat belts must be worn." In this sentence, 'must' is used to talk about ....
ⓐ deduction and conclusion
ⓑ rules and laws
ⓒ no obligation
ⓓ invitation
56. You mustn't tell this to anyone. It's a secret. This means ....
ⓐ It's unnecessary to tell this to anyone.
ⓑ It's necessary not to tell this to anyone.
ⓒ It's necessary to tell this to anyone.
ⓓ It isn't necessary to tell this to anyone.
57. "You must come and see us soon." In this sentence, 'Must' is used to talk about ....
ⓐ criticism and blame
ⓑ deduction and conclusion
ⓒ obligation and necessity
ⓓ invitation and encouragement





Staying healthy



Key Vocabulary

boost (v)	يقوى / يعزز / تعزيز / دعم	champion (n)	بطل رياضي	improve (v)	يحسن / يطور
cell (n)	خلية / زنزانة	cough (v/n)	كحة / سعال / يكح	join (v)	ينضم الى / يلتحق بـ
immune system (n)	الجهاز المناعي	explain (v)	يشرح / يفسر	separate (v/adj)	يفصل / منفصل
organ (n)	عضو في جسم الإنسان	explanation (n)	شرح / تفسير	situation (n)	موقف
virus (n)	فيروس	persuade (v)	يقنع	diet (n)	نظام غذائي
brilliant (adj)	رائع	persuasive (adj)	مقنع	serious (adj)	جاد / خطير
brain (n)	مخ	persuasion (n)	إقناع	support (v/n)	يدعم / دعم

Main Vocabulary

protect (v)	يحمي	immune (adj)	حصين / عنده مناعة	special (adj)	خاص
protection (n)	حماية	skill (n)	مهارة	awake (adj)	مستيقظا
describe (v)	يصف	skilled (adj)	ماهر	major (adj)	رئيسي
description (n)	وصف	director (n)	مدير / مخرج	safe (adj)	آمن
educate (v)	يعلم / يثقف	appear (v)	يظهر	safety (n)	أمان
education (n)	تعليم	sound (v/n/adj)	يبدو / سليم / صوت	necessary (adj)	ضروري
lung (n)	رئة	living things (n)	كائنات حية	necessity (n)	ضرورة
chance (n)	فرصة	express (v)	يعبر عن	prohibit (v)	يمنع
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا / جراثيم	expression (n)	تعبير	prohibition (n)	منع / تحريم
bacterium (n)	جرثومة (مفرد)	compare (v)	يقارن	obligate (v)	يلزم
medicine (n)	دواء / طب	fight (v/n)	يحارب / يقاوم / شجار	obligation (n)	إلزام
medical (adj)	طبي	COVID-19 (n)	كورونا	advice (n)	نصيحة
grow (v)	ينمو	remind (v)	يذكر	suggestion (n)	اقتراح
growth (n)	النمو / تطور	area (n)	منطقة	video games (n)	ألعاب الفيديو
growing (adj)	متزايد / متنامي	right (n/adj)	حق / صواب / يمين	microscope (n)	مجهر
encourage (v)	يشجع	dream (v/n)	يحلم / حلم	cause (v)(n)	يسبب / سبب
flu (n)	أنفلونزا	ill (adj)	مريض	pleasure (n)	سعادة
inside (adv)	داخل	illness (n)	مرض	mistake (n)	خطأ
outside (adv)	خارج	check (v)	يفحص	Olympic (adj)	أوليمبي

King Lear

majesty (n)	جلالة	pleased (adj)	سعيد	point to (v)	يشير إلى
palace (n)	قصر	kingdom (n)	مملكة	foolish (adj)	أحمق
duty (n)	واجب	map (n)	خريطة	shout (v)	يصرخ
forest (n)	غابة	proud (adj)	فخور	divide (v)	يقسم
sword (n)	سيف	a third (n)	ثلث	believe (v)	يصدق
riches (n)	ثروات	power (n)	سلطة	honest (adj)	أمين





Synonym & Antonym

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym العكس
boost	يقوى / يعزز	raise - enlarge	decline - decrease - hinder
brilliant	رائع	bright - talented - excellent	dark - ordinary - stupid
serious	جاد / خطير	dangerous - severe	unserious - safe
encourage	يشجع	boost - inspire - promote	discourage - depress
improve	يحسن / يطور	develop - promote	damage - demote - hinder

Prepositions

look forward **to**	يتطلع إلى	persuade.... **to**	يقنع ... أن	breathe **in**	يستنشق
a way **of**	طريقة لـ	fight **against**	يحارب ضد	breathe **out**	يزفر (يطلق زفير)
a part **of**	جزء من	worry **about**	قلق على	complete... **with**	يكمل بـ
encourage... **to**	يشجع .... أن	interested **in**	مهتم بـ	stay **at**	يقيم فى
brilliant **at**	رائع فى	think **of**	يفكر فى	hear **from**	يسمع من

Expressions & Idioms

make notes **on**	يدون ملاحظات على
take a two-day course	يأخذ دورة تدريبية لمدة يومين
how to stay calm	كيفية البقاء هادئا
do first aid	يقوم بالإسعافات الأولية
do something	يقوم بفعل شيء
become an expert	يصبح خبير
make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
check work for **mistakes**	يفحص العمل لمعرفة الأخطاء

in the **correct** way	بالطريقة الصحيحة
Keep ..... clean	يبقى ... نظيف
stay calm	يبقى هادئ
give (**express**) an opinion	يعبر عن الرأي
ask for advice	يطلب النصيحة
give advice	يقدم النصيحة
talk **to**... **about**	يتحدث إلى ... عن ...
on the centre of	منتصف / وسط

Definitions

boost	يقوى / يعزز	help someone or something to improve or get better
cell	خلية	the smallest separate part of a plant or animal
immune system	الجهاز المناعي	a way that your body protects you from disease
organ	عضو	a part of your body that performs a job, e.g. the brain or heart
virus	فيروس	a very small living thing that causes disease
bacterium	جرثومة (مفرد)	a type of very small organism that lives in air, earth, water, plants and animals, often one which causes a disease



Notice the Difference

champion	بطل رياضي	hero	بطل (فى الحقيقة / قصة / فيلم / خيال)
advertisement	إعلان (تجارى عن منتج)	announcement	إعلان (إذاعة خبر)
serious	جاد / خطير	series	سلسلة / مسلسل
call	يسمى / ينادى / يتصل	cell	خلية / زنزانة
hard	صعب / شاق / قاس	hardly	بالكاد / بصعوبة
encourage	يشجع	discourage	يعوق / يثنى عن
boost	يعزز / يدعم	boast	يتباهى / يفتخر
developed	متقدم	developing	نامي
reason for	سبب لـ	cause of	سبب لـ
later	فيما بعد	latter	الثانى / الأخير
necessary	ضرورى	necessity	ضرورة
realise	يدرك	release	يطلق / يحرر
organ	عضو (فى الجسم)	member	عضو (فريق ـ مجلس ـ نادى...)
advice	نصيحة	advise	ينصح
teach	يُعلم	learn	يتعلم

listen & hear

listen to	يستمع (بإنصات/عن قصد)	I always **listen to** my teachers.
hear	يسمع	While I was studying, I **heard** someone crying.
hear from	يتلقى أخبار من	Wait until you **hear from** the boss.
hear of	يسمع عن (شخص)	I'd never **heard of** him before he won the prize.
hear about	يسمع عن (شئ)	I **heard about** what happened with you yesterday.

remember & remind

remember	يتذكر	I **remembered** calling Aya.
remind	يُذكر (شخص بشيء)	Please **remind** me to do my homework.

live, alive & living

live	يعيش	I **live** in Egypt.
alive	على قيد الحياة	He isn't dead, he is **alive**.
living	حى / معيشة	We should be kind to all **living** creatures.

decide to, decide that & decide on

decide to + inf.	يقرر أن	They **decided to** sell their old car.
decide that + جملة	يقرر أن	He **decided that** he would look for another job.
decide on + n	يختار	We've **decided on** Paris for our next holiday.



✱ الصفات المركبة ⇐ لاحظ عدم جمع الكلمات الآتية إذا جاء قبلها عدد وبعدها اسم:

year / month / week / day / hour / minute / second

◈ I usually have a ten-minute break for coffee at midday.

◈ a five-hour meeting.

◈ a three-day trip.

✱ فى حالة وجود كلمة time بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم ('s) فى حالة المفرد و(s') فى حالة الجمع:

◈ in a week's time.

◈ in two years' time.

Read the email

Reading

Hi Fares,

How are you?

It's great that some of your friends are going to take a first aid course next week! I really think you should join them because everyone has to know how to do first aid. You never know when someone you know will injure themselves and you'll have to help them. You would want other people to help you too, right?

I'm sure you would be great at doing first aid because you can think fast and you know how to stay calm in difficult situations. You don't have to become an expert, just learn enough so you can help someone until the emergency services arrive. The two-day course your friends want to do sounds perfect.

Talk to you soon!

Mahmoud

To:

From:

Dear Health Today,

My cousins, Imad and Munir, are visiting me again for a few days, and it's always a pleasure to see them. Unfortunately, because they are both less than seven years old, they sometimes forget how important it is to keep clean and stay healthy. At the moment, many people in my area have the flu and so these things are even more important than usual. What can I do to persuade my cousins to change how they behave? They often come very close to show me things, like photos they have taken on their phones or something funny that they have found. And when they cough, they do not cover their mouths. They don't seem to understand why it is so important and it worries me a lot.

I'm also worried when I see them come inside because I don't think that they always wash their hands after they have been playing outside, touching things and getting dirty. They will clean their hands when I ask them, but I always have to remind them to do it.

I have heard that young children don't usually get very sick from flu and so they don't give the flu to older people, but I don't know if that is true. Do you think that I am right to worry?

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours,

Shady

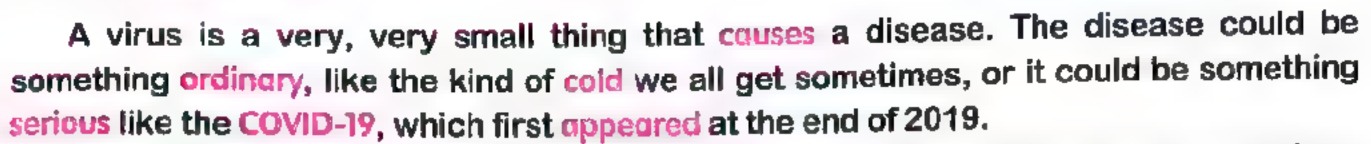




Listening

The Immune System

Our **organs** are the parts of our bodies that help us to **do things**, like the **brain** that thinks, or the heart that sends blood around our bodies. The **immune system** comes from the **cells** and **organs** that work **together** to **protect** us **from diseases**. The immune system does this by **destroying** things that get into our bodies like **viruses**.



A virus is a very, very small thing that **causes** a disease. The disease could be something **ordinary**, like the kind of **cold** we all get sometimes, or it could be something **serious** like the **COVID-19**, which first **appeared** at the end of 2019.

When a virus **gets into** a part of the body, a **message** is sent to the immune system. Then the immune system **reacts** by sending **cells** to find the virus. Cells are the smallest, **separate living things** in our bodies and they are small enough to **fight against** a disease.

Some people's immune systems work better than other people's. We all want our immune systems to be **strong** so we can stay healthy, so what can we do to help?

We can **boost** our immune system by eating a lot of **fruit** and **vegetables, especially** vegetables with green leaves. We also need to exercise **regularly**. We don't have to run 50 kilometres every day, but we need to be as **active as possible**.

We also need to **make sure** that we get enough **sleep**. For most people that means **at least** seven hours every night. Finally, we must do things like washing our hands **regularly**, which will help us to **avoid** getting a virus or an **infection in** the first place. We also need to do things like **covering** our mouths when we cough to stop other people getting an **infection** or virus.



Exercise 1 Key vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الرئيسية

1. We must .... our immune systems to enjoy good health. LM
   ⓐ boast ⓑ boost ⓒ burst ⓓ paste
2. The immune system sends .... to find the virus that attacks your body. LM
   ⓐ seals ⓑ sales ⓒ soils ⓓ cells
3. You should have healthy food to .... your immune system. LM
   ⓐ prove ⓑ pass ⓒ boost ⓓ support
4. Unfortunately, I couldn't .... him to participate in that project. LM
   ⓐ let ⓑ persuade ⓒ make ⓓ discourage
5. Our director is very .... He can make you do what he wants easily. منازل ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ aggressive ⓑ persuasive ⓒ available ⓓ deniable
6. He .... loudly to warn them he was coming.
   ⓐ coughed ⓑ laughed ⓒ separated ⓓ persuaded
7. The long hot summer has led to .... water shortages.
   ⓐ series ⓑ serious ⓒ seriously ⓓ seriousness

8. My father always advises us to be .... to the power of advertising and not to buy things which we don't need. الغربية ٢٠٢٣

ⓐ immune ⓑ respiratory ⓒ prohibited ⓓ allowed

9. Practice is the best way to .... your French.

ⓐ prevent ⓑ provide ⓒ improve ⓓ import

10. The immune system sends .... to find the virus that attacks your body.

ⓐ seals ⓑ sales ⓒ cells ⓓ soils

11. He tries to keep his professional life completely .... from his private life.

ⓐ spear ⓑ separate ⓒ together ⓓ gather

12. Food must be heated to a high temperature to kill harmful ....

ⓐ cells ⓑ vitamins ⓒ minds ⓓ bacteria

13. The defending .... will play her first match of the tournament tomorrow.

ⓐ championship ⓑ champion ⓒ hero ⓓ heroin

14. The waiter asked if we were all together so I explained that we were two .... parties.

ⓐ separate ⓑ fixed ⓒ alone ⓓ lonely

15. It was difficult to .... Ali to change his mind.

ⓐ do ⓑ make ⓒ persuade ⓓ check

16. The doctors have attributed the cause of the illness to an unknown ....

ⓐ virus ⓑ immune system ⓒ boost ⓓ organ

17. The boss gave the staff a talk this morning in an attempt to .... sales.

ⓐ post ⓑ boots ⓒ lost ⓓ boost

18. The liver is an extremely complex .... which needs special care.

ⓐ member ⓑ organ ⓒ individual ⓓ place

19. When we .... , we should cover our mouths.

ⓐ rough ⓑ caught ⓒ drink ⓓ cough

20. The .... system is our body's shield against infection. إدارة عزبة البرج ٢٠٢٢

ⓐ immune ⓑ mute ⓒ mule ⓓ mean

21. We can .... our immune system by eating a lot of fruits and vegetables. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

ⓐ post ⓑ prove ⓒ boast ⓓ boost

22. A/An .... can make a lot of people very ill.

ⓐ muscle ⓑ orange ⓒ virus ⓓ brain

Exercise 2 Main vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الاساسية

23. We should always .... students to think independently. LM

ⓐ make ⓑ discourage ⓒ encourage ⓓ prevent

24. We mustn't .... damage to the environment. LM

ⓐ cause ⓑ trick ⓒ discover ⓓ make

25. COVID-19 first .... at the end of 2019. LM

ⓐ showed ⓑ published ⓒ appeared ⓓ disappeared

26. Can you explain the ...... why agriculture needs to change from one place to another? LM

ⓐ reason ⓑ result ⓒ cause ⓓ effect

27. What is .... about the rainforest in Sudan? LM

ⓐ private ⓑ special ⓒ specially ⓓ privately

28. The doctor .... the results of the two blood analyses to see how much the patient had improved. LM

ⓐ cured ⓑ completed ⓒ compared ⓓ mixed

29. Athletes must understand the importance of .... their hearts regularly. LM

ⓐ changing ⓑ shaking ⓒ sharing ⓓ checking



30. These organizations have .... very hard for the rights and welfare of immigrants.
ⓐ flight ⓑ fought ⓒ remembered ⓓ reminded

31. Teachers should .... their students to take part in school activities.
ⓐ courage ⓑ suppose ⓒ encourage ⓓ discourage

Exercise 3 Synonyms & Antonyms المرادفات والمتضادات

32. Decrease is a/an .... for boost.
ⓐ opposite ⓑ synonym ⓒ antonym ⓓ a & c

33. .... is a synonym to severe.
ⓐ Boost ⓑ Simple ⓒ Series ⓓ Serious

34. We encourage the victims to talk freely about their experiences. Encourage is a synonym for ....
ⓐ decline ⓑ boost ⓒ hinder ⓓ depress

35. "My company collaborated with a German firm to develop the product." What does the word 'develop' mean in this sentence?
ⓐ compare ⓑ prove ⓒ destroy ⓓ improve

36. This advertisement will help boost the sales. Boost here is the synonym of ....
ⓐ promote ⓑ fail ⓒ increase ⓓ a & c

37. "Her progress hasn't been hindered by her lack of experience." The verb 'hinder' in this sentence is antonymous with ....
ⓐ prevent ⓑ improve ⓒ discourage ⓓ prove

Exercise 4 Choose two Answers اخـــتر إجابتـــين

38. I am not joking; I'm serious. "Serious" is opposite in meaning to .... LM
ⓐ lazy ⓑ humorous ⓒ normal ⓓ funny ⓔ strict

39. Our teacher always supports us so much. "Support" here is an antonym for........... LM
ⓐ assist ⓑ disappoint ⓒ assess ⓓ let ⓔ let down

40. We must punish those who .... damage to the environment. LM
ⓐ do ⓑ make ⓒ cause ⓓ fight ⓔ disappear

41. How can I...........my language skills? LM
ⓐ appear ⓑ improve ⓒ reduce ⓓ waste ⓔ enhance

42. We should do sports to .... in good health. LM
ⓐ stay ⓑ leave ⓒ make ⓓ remind ⓔ remain

43. Please, ... sure you turn off the gas before you leave the house. LM
ⓐ give ⓑ be ⓒ do ⓓ make ⓔ take

44. I could reach a solution .... the problem alone. LM
ⓐ of ⓑ with ⓒ to ⓓ for ⓔ by

Exercise 5 Various Exercises تماريـــن منوعـــة

45. He is a/an .... of the local tennis club.
ⓐ organ ⓑ member ⓒ community ⓓ society

46. Your ears, eyes, tongue, nose and skin are your sense ....
ⓐ original ⓑ oranges ⓒ organs ⓓ members

47. My job doesn't allow me to fully use my ....
ⓐ skillful ⓑ skilled ⓒ skills ⓓ skull

48. Average earnings for .... workers are rising.
ⓐ skills ⓑ skull ⓒ skill ⓓ skilled

...them, but I always have to .... them to do it.

49. They will clean their hands when I ask them, but I always have to .... them to do it.
ⓐ remember ⓑ remind ⓒ member ⓓ stay

50. It's great that some of your friends are going to .... a first aid course next week!
ⓐ go ⓑ spend ⓒ make ⓓ take

51. I look forward .... from you soon.
ⓐ hear ⓑ hearing ⓒ to hearing ⓓ to hear

52. Investigators are still trying to determine the .... of the accident.
ⓐ reason ⓑ result ⓒ reasonable ⓓ cause

53. I can't decide .... who to invite to the ceremony.
ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ to ⓓ that

54. What should you do to .... healthy?
ⓐ ask ⓑ say ⓒ save ⓓ stay

55. Accidents .... occur on this bend.
ⓐ gradual ⓑ regularly ⓒ regular ⓓ gradually

56. In .... time, I will travel to London.
ⓐ two week ⓑ two week's ⓒ two weeks ⓓ two weeks'

57. He wouldn't give the reasons .... his decision.
ⓐ of ⓑ for ⓒ why ⓓ from

58. We must also .... sure that we get enough sleep.
ⓐ get ⓑ give ⓒ do ⓓ make

59. I'm going to take a five- .... course on how to cook Spanish dishes.
ⓐ day ⓑ days' ⓒ days ⓓ day's

60. He's always trying to .... trouble between us.
ⓐ give ⓑ do ⓒ reason ⓓ cause

61. He didn't seem very interested .... what I was saying.
ⓐ of ⓑ for ⓒ on ⓓ in

62. My father is very sick; he is going to .... an operation today.
ⓐ do ⓑ make ⓒ have ⓓ perform

63. I can't help .... so many mistakes.
ⓐ to make ⓑ making ⓒ do ⓓ doing

64. Come on boys, let's .... some work!
ⓐ make ⓑ do ⓒ made ⓓ did

Exercise 6 King Lear تمارين على الملك لير

65. The teacher .... students into four groups to encourage teamwork.
ⓐ joined ⓑ separated ⓒ divided ⓓ shared

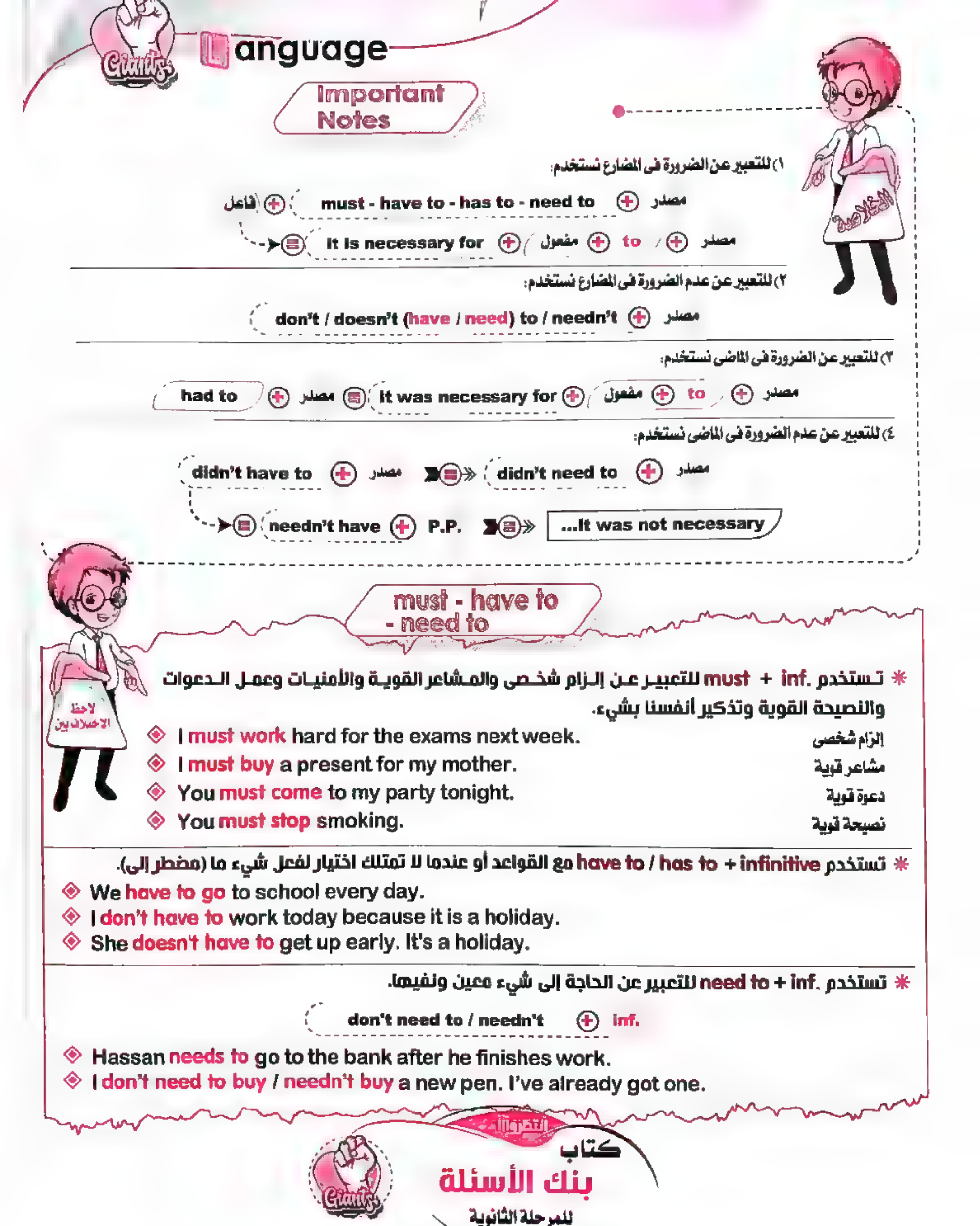
66. His teacher .... him as a noisy, disruptive influence in class.
ⓐ persuaded ⓑ described ⓒ remembered ⓓ joined

67. King Lear intended to give a .... of his kingdom to each daughter.
ⓐ third ⓑ three ⓒ thirdly ⓓ thirteen

68. It would be .... to give up your job when you haven't got any other source of income.
ⓐ clever ⓑ foolish ⓒ intelligent ⓓ wise

69. Her .... stretched for thousands of miles.
ⓐ kingdom ⓑ palace ⓒ king ⓓ prince

70. I'm not quite sure how to get there - I'd better consult a ....
ⓐ doctor ⓑ car ⓒ phone ⓓ map



Important Notes

١) للتعبير عن الضرورة فى المضارع نستخدم:

فاعل + must - have to - has to - need to + مصدر

= It is necessary for + مفعول + to + مصدر

٢) للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة فى المضارع نستخدم:

don't / doesn't (have / need) to / needn't + مصدر

٣) للتعبير عن الضرورة فى الماضى نستخدم:

had to + مصدر = It was necessary for + مفعول + to + مصدر

٤) للتعبير عن عدم الضرورة فى الماضى نستخدم:

didn't have to + مصدر = didn't need to + مصدر

= needn't have + P.P. = ...It was not necessary

must - have to - need to

✳ تستخدم must + inf. للتعبير عن إلزام شخصى والمشاعر القوية والأمنيات وعمل الدعوات والنصيحة القوية وتذكير أنفسنا بشيء.

- I **must work** hard for the exams next week. — إلزام شخصى
- I **must buy** a present for my mother. — مشاعر قوية
- You **must come** to my party tonight. — دعوة قوية
- You **must stop** smoking. — نصيحة قوية

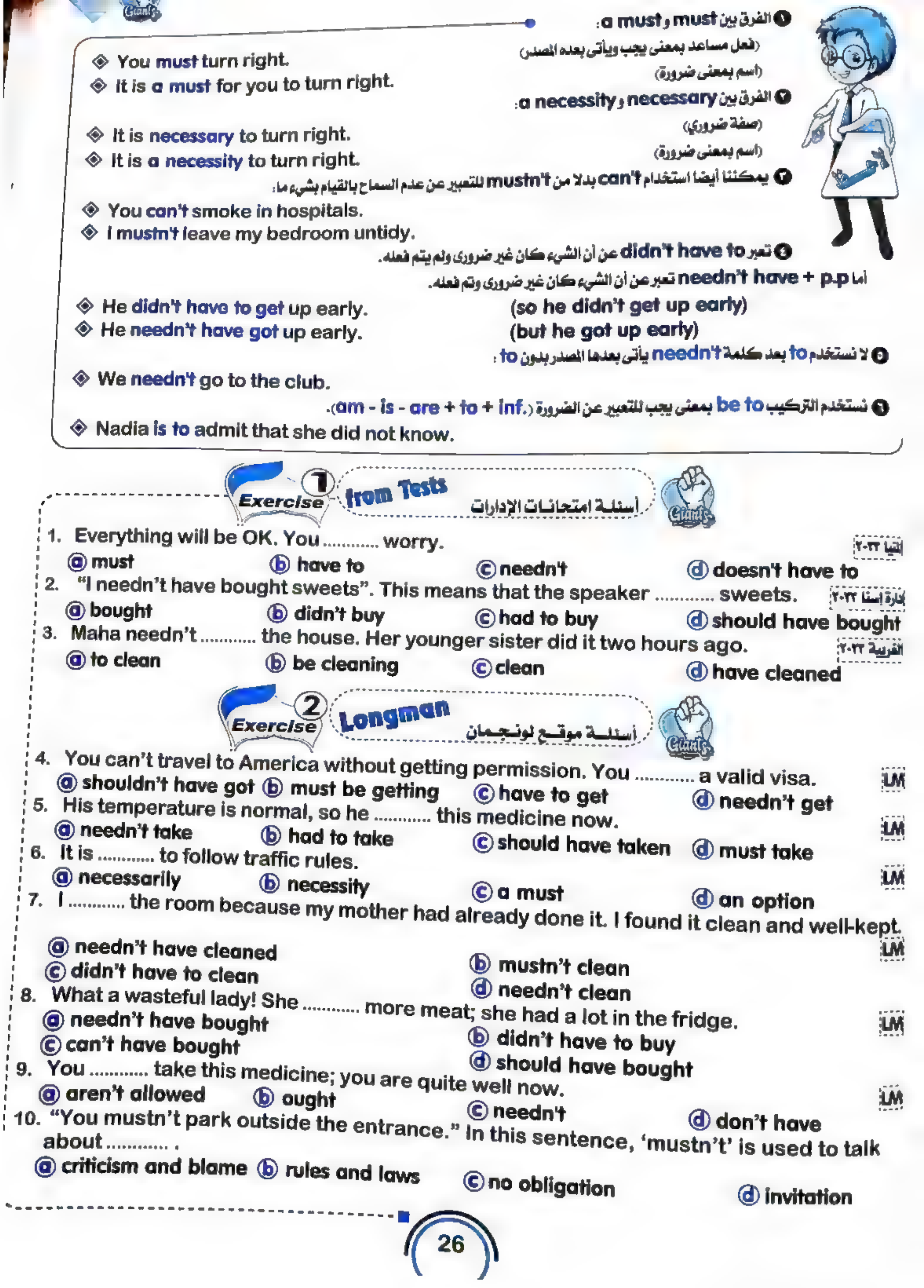
✳ تستخدم have to / has to + infinitive مع القواعد أو عندما لا تمتلك اختيار لفعل شيء ما (مضطر إلى).

- We **have to go** to school every day.
- I **don't have to** work today because it is a holiday.
- She **doesn't have to** get up early. It's a holiday.

✳ تستخدم need to + inf. للتعبير عن الحاجة إلى شيء معين ونفيها.

don't need to / needn't + inf.

- Hassan **needs to** go to the bank after he finishes work.
- I **don't need to buy / needn't buy** a new pen. I've already got one.



❶ الفرق بين must و a must:

(فعل مساعد بمعنى يجب ويأتي بعده المصدر)

(اسم بمعنى ضرورة)

◈ You **must** turn right.
◈ It is **a must** for you to turn right.

❷ الفرق بين necessary و a necessity:

(صفة ضروري)

(اسم بمعنى ضرورة)

◈ It is **necessary** to turn right.
◈ It is **a necessity** to turn right.

❸ يمكننا أيضا استخدام can't بدلا من mustn't للتعبير عن عدم السماح بالقيام بشيء ما:

◈ You **can't** smoke in hospitals.
◈ I **mustn't** leave my bedroom untidy.

❹ تعبر didn't have to عن أن الشيء كان غير ضروري ولم يتم فعله.

أما needn't have + p.p تعبر عن أن الشيء كان غير ضروري وتم فعله.

◈ He **didn't have to get** up early. (so he didn't get up early)
◈ He **needn't have got** up early. (but he got up early)

❺ لا نستخدم to بعد كلمة needn't يأتي بعدها المصدر بدون to:

◈ We **needn't** go to the club.

❻ نستخدم التركيب be to بمعنى يجب للتعبير عن الضرورة (am - is - are + to + inf.).

◈ Nadia **is to** admit that she did not know.

Exercise 1 from Tests أسئلة امتحانات الإدارات

1. Everything will be OK. You .... worry. المنيا ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ must ⓑ have to ⓒ needn't ⓓ doesn't have to
2. "I needn't have bought sweets". This means that the speaker .... sweets. إدارة إسنا ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ bought ⓑ didn't buy ⓒ had to buy ⓓ should have bought
3. Maha needn't .... the house. Her younger sister did it two hours ago. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ to clean ⓑ be cleaning ⓒ clean ⓓ have cleaned

Exercise 2 Longman أسئلة موقع لونجمان

4. You can't travel to America without getting permission. You .... a valid visa. LM
   ⓐ shouldn't have got ⓑ must be getting ⓒ have to get ⓓ needn't get
5. His temperature is normal, so he .... this medicine now. LM
   ⓐ needn't take ⓑ had to take ⓒ should have taken ⓓ must take
6. It is .... to follow traffic rules. LM
   ⓐ necessarily ⓑ necessity ⓒ a must ⓓ an option
7. I .... the room because my mother had already done it. I found it clean and well-kept. LM
   ⓐ needn't have cleaned ⓑ mustn't clean
   ⓒ didn't have to clean ⓓ needn't clean
8. What a wasteful lady! She .... more meat; she had a lot in the fridge. LM
   ⓐ needn't have bought ⓑ didn't have to buy
   ⓒ can't have bought ⓓ should have bought
9. You .... take this medicine; you are quite well now. LM
   ⓐ aren't allowed ⓑ ought ⓒ needn't ⓓ don't have
10. "You mustn't park outside the entrance." In this sentence, 'mustn't' is used to talk about ....
    ⓐ criticism and blame ⓑ rules and laws ⓒ no obligation ⓓ invitation



11. You .... phone him now. It's very urgent.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ has to ⓒ don't have to ⓓ must
12. We didn't have much time yesterday so we .... hurry.
ⓐ have to ⓑ had to ⓒ has to ⓓ must
13. You .... sit on that wall. It is very dangerous.
ⓐ must ⓑ don't have to ⓒ needn't ⓓ mustn't
14. When you go to Alexandria, you .... visit the library. It's amazing!
ⓐ have to ⓑ must ⓒ will ⓓ need
15. He .... to get up early, so he didn't.
ⓐ didn't need ⓑ needn't ⓒ mustn't ⓓ must
16. Don't tell anybody what I said. You .... keep it a secret.
ⓐ has to ⓑ don't have to ⓒ mustn't ⓓ must
17. We've got plenty of time. We .... hurry.
ⓐ needn't ⓑ have to ⓒ doesn't have to ⓓ has to
18. I have to talk to Ali. I .... forget to call him.
ⓐ doesn't have to ⓑ mustn't ⓒ need to ⓓ must
19. Hani .... wear a suit to work, but he usually does.
ⓐ need to ⓑ have to ⓒ doesn't have to ⓓ must
20. Have you ever .... go to hospital?
ⓐ must ⓑ had to ⓒ has to ⓓ need to
21. I'm not working tomorrow, so I .... get up early.
ⓐ don't have to ⓑ doesn't have to ⓒ must ⓓ have to
22. Why did he get up early? He .... got up so early. He could have stayed in bed longer.
ⓐ didn't have to ⓑ must have ⓒ needn't have ⓓ needn't
23. I must finish all my work today or I'll .... work tomorrow.
ⓐ have to ⓑ had to ⓒ has to ⓓ must
24. You .... phone him because I have already talked to him.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ have to ⓒ must ⓓ don't have to
25. A: Can I talk to you, please? B: Sorry, I .... go now. I'm late for a meeting.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ has to ⓒ must ⓓ will
26. Ali .... lose some weight. His doctor said so, then he must go on a diet.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ can ⓒ has to ⓓ will
27. You .... take that book back to the library yet. You can keep it for another week.
ⓐ must ⓑ don't have to ⓒ need to ⓓ mustn't
28. Is it a/an .... to take this medicine?
ⓐ advice ⓑ unnecessary ⓒ necessary ⓓ must
29. Following rules of cleanliness is a/an .... to avoid infection.
ⓐ necessary ⓑ unnecessary ⓒ must ⓓ prohibition
30. A: I .... clean the house, today. B: It's dirty. I'll help you.
ⓐ needn't ⓑ must ⓒ mustn't ⓓ could
31. A: You .... be late for work. B: I know, I'm leaving now.
ⓐ needn't ⓑ must ⓒ mustn't ⓓ won't
32. I .... to go to the library to borrow a book.
ⓐ must ⓑ should ⓒ need ⓓ might
33. You .... go to the bank. I can lend you some money.
ⓐ needn't to ⓑ don't have to ⓒ mustn't ⓓ can't

34. Children .... wear a uniform in primary schools.
ⓐ must ⓑ has to ⓒ mustn't ⓓ shouldn't

35. It is desirable to get up early. You .... get up early.
ⓐ must ⓑ needn't ⓒ mustn't ⓓ has to

36. Poor Hany .... go to hospital yesterday after he hurt his hand.
ⓐ must ⓑ has to ⓒ had to ⓓ needn't

37. It is a .... for Jana to tidy her room.
ⓐ must ⓑ has to ⓒ have to ⓓ had to

38. The sign in the park says that people .... walk on the grass.
ⓐ needn't ⓑ might not ⓒ should ⓓ mustn't

39. I don't want anyone to know about our plan. You .... tell anyone.
ⓐ have to ⓑ must ⓒ mustn't ⓓ doesn't have to

40. We all .... to be careful to keep clean and wash our hands so we do not catch illnesses like COVID-19.
ⓐ have ⓑ must ⓒ has ⓓ mustn't

41. You .... phone him before 3 pm. He won't be available after that.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ have to ⓒ need ⓓ don't have to

42. We haven't got much time. We .... hurry.
ⓐ needn't ⓑ don't have to ⓒ must ⓓ has to

43. On travelling abroad, you always .... carry your passport.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ need ⓒ ought not to ⓓ have to

44. I .... to wear glasses for reading.
ⓐ have ⓑ has ⓒ must ⓓ needn't

45. I can manage the shopping alone. You .... go with me.
ⓐ must ⓑ doesn't have to ⓒ need ⓓ don't have to

46. I had toothache last night. I .... see my dentist.
ⓐ must ⓑ should ⓒ had to ⓓ have to

47. Applications for the job .... by 18 May.
ⓐ have to be received ⓑ have to receive
ⓒ has to be received ⓓ has to receive

48. You .... be here on time every day. Our boss is an unforgivable person.
ⓐ don't have to ⓑ mustn't ⓒ have to ⓓ needn't

49. I .... work from 8.30 to 5.30 every day.
ⓐ have to ⓑ had to ⓒ has to ⓓ must

50. You .... smoke in public transport. It is forbidden.
ⓐ don't have to ⓑ mustn't ⓒ needn't ⓓ shouldn't

51. Ahmed is a really nice person. You .... meet him.
ⓐ have to ⓑ mustn't ⓒ has to ⓓ must

52. His temperature is normal, so he .... this medicine now.
ⓐ needn't take ⓑ had to take ⓒ should have taken ⓓ must take

53. Ali can't come out with us this evening. He .... work late.
ⓐ have to ⓑ had to ⓒ has to ⓓ mustn't

54. We're going to the beach this afternoon, so you .... come with us! It'll be great!
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ have ⓒ must ⓓ has to

55. Why must you mispronounce my name every time? This is a/an ....
ⓐ prohibition ⓑ necessity ⓒ criticism ⓓ suggestion



Exercise on Translation

1. If you want to be an athlete, you m... have strong will. Never smoke and always have healthy food. إدارة القوصية ٢٠٢٢

(أ) إن كنت تريد أن تكون رياضياً فانت تحتاج الى ادارة قوية. ولا تدخن أبدا وتناول الطعام الصحي.

(ب) إن كنت تريد أن تكون رياضياً فانت تحتاج الى إرادة قوية. ولا تدخن أبدا وتناول الطعام الصباحي.

(ج) إن كنت تريد أن تكون رياضياً فانت تحتاج الى إرادة قوية. ولا تدخن أبدا ودائماً تناول الطعام الصحي.

(د) إن كنت تريد أن تكون رياضياً فانت تحتاج الى إرادة قوية. ولا تدخن أبدا وأحيانا تناول الطعام الصحي.

2. Following a diet helps you a lot to maintain a normal weight and good health. Therefore, you must be aware that the stomach is the key to good health if you follow proper eating habits. LM

(أ) إتباع الحمية الغذائية يساعدك كثيراً على الحفاظ على وزن طبيعي وصحة جيدة. لذلك، يجب عليك أن تكون واعياً بأن المعدة هي مفتاح الصحة الجيدة إذا اتبعت عادات تغذية سليمة.

(ب) تتبع الحمية الغذائية يساعدك كثيراً على الحفاظ على وزن غير طبيعي وصحة جيدة. لذلك، يجب عليك أن تكون واعياً بأن المعدة هي مفتاح الصحة الجيدة إذا اتبعت عادات تغذية سليمة.

(ج) تتبع الحمية الغذائية لا يساعدك كثيراً على الحفاظ على وزن طبيعي وصحة جيدة. لذلك، يجب عليك أن تكون واعياً بأن المعدة هي مفتاح الصحة الجيدة إذا اتبعت عادات تغذية حديثة.

(د) إتباع الحمية الغذائية يساعدك كثيراً على الحفاظ على وزن طبيعي وصحة جيدة. لذلك، يجب عليك أن تكون واعياً بأن المعدة هي الفتاح الصحي الجيد إذا اتبعت عادات تغذية سليمة.

3. You must put on gloves before helping someone who's bleeding. If you don't, you might give them an infection or you might get infected. إدارة أبو حماد ٢٠٢٢

(أ) يجب عليك عدم ارتداء القفازات قبل مساعدة شخص ينزف، إذا فعلت ذلك فقد تصيبهم بالعدوى أو قد تصاب أنت بالعدوى.

(ب) يجب عليك ارتداء القفازات بعد مساعدة شخص ينزف، إذا لم تفعل ذلك فلن تصيبهم بالعدوى أو قد تصاب أنت بالعدوى.

(ج) يجب عليك ارتداء القفازات قبل مساعدة شخص ينزف، إذا لم تفعل ذلك فقد تصيبهم بالعدوى أو قد تصاب أنت بالعدوى.

(د) لا يجب عليك ارتداء القفازات عند مساعدة شخص ينزف، إذا لم تفعل ذلك فقد تصيبهم بالعدوى أو قد تصاب أنت بالعدوى.

٤. للرياضة تأثير كبير على كيفية تعلمنا مهارات جديدة والحفاظ على صحتنا الجسدية و العقلية. بالإضافة الى ذلك يمكن للرياضة تحسين العلاقات بين العديد من الدول. إدارة إسنا ٢٠٢٢

ⓐ Sport have a significant impact on how we learn new skills and maintain our physical and mental health. Additionally, sport can improve relationships between many countries

ⓑ Sports have a significant impact on how we learn new skills and maintain our physical and mental health. Additionally, sports can improve relationships between many countries.

ⓒ Sports have a significant impact on how we learn new skills and maintain our physical and mental health. Additionally, sports can improve relationships between many cities.

ⓓ Sports have a significant impact on how we learn new skills and maintain our physically and mentally health. Additionally, sports can improve relationships between many countries.

٥. أشياء غريبة نلاحظها في مجتمعاتنا في الفترة الأخيرة، فهناك من الآباء والأمهات من لا يعتنون بأطفالهم كما ينبغي لأنهم أشخاص لا يتحملوا المسئولية ونتيجة ذلك هي أطفال الشوارع. إدارة أبو حماد ٢٠٢٢

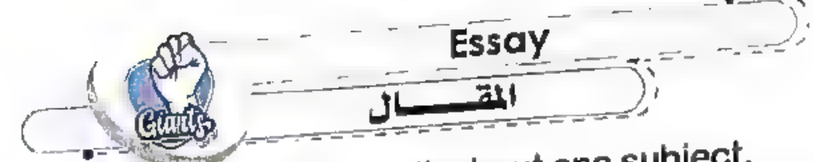
ⓐ Strange things can notice in our societies recently. Some parents don't look liketheir children well because they are irresponsible people. The result of this ishomeless children.

ⓑ Strange things can be noticed in our societies recently. Some parents look aftertheir children well because they aren't irresponsible people. The result of this ishomeless children.

ⓒ Strange things can be noticed in our societies recently. Some patients don't lookfor their children well because they are irresponsible people. The cause of this ishomeless children.

ⓓ Strange things can be noticed in our societies recently. Some parents don't lookafter their children well because they are irresponsible people. The result of this ishomeless children.

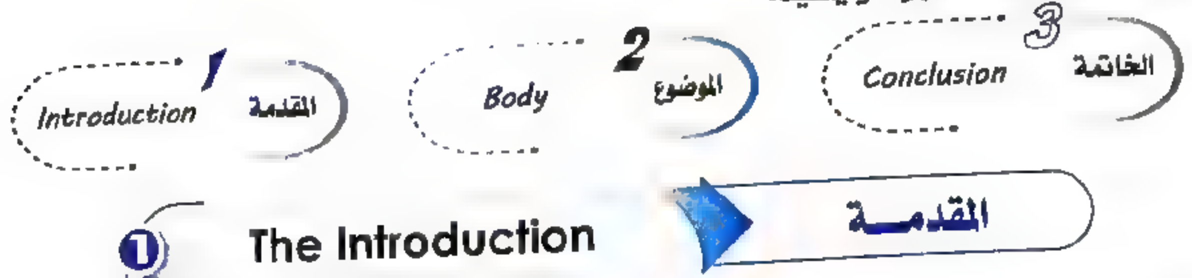




◈ An essay is **a series of paragraphs** that talk about one subject.

✻ المقال هو مجموعة من الفقرات التى تتحدث عن موضوع واحد.

✻ يتكون المقال من ثلاثة أجزاء رئيسية:



① The Introduction — المقدمـــة

- It is the first paragraph in the essay.
- It is only one paragraph.
- It catches the reader's attention.
- It introduces the thesis statement.
- It gives the reader background.

✻ المقدمة هى أول فقرة فى المقال.

✻ وتكون عبارة عن برجراف واحد.

✻ تجذب انتباه القارئ للموضوع.

✻ تقدم الأطروحة (العبارة الافتتاحية).

✻ تعطى للقارئ الخلفية أو المعلومات الأساسية.



Hook = Attention grabber — جملة جذب الانتباه

◈ A **hook** is an **opening statement** in an essay that **attempts** to **grab the reader's attention** so that they continue reading.

✻ هى الجملة الافتتاحية فى المقال وتهدف إلى جذب انتباه القارئ ليستمر فى القراءة وقد تكون:

جملة عامة — حكمة — مثل شعبى — اقتباس

Thesis Statement — الأطروحة (العبارة الافتتاحية)

◈ The thesis statement **states the main idea of the essay.**

✻ توضح الجملة الرئيسية الفكرة الرئيسية للمقال.

◈ It is the point that the writer wants to show in the essay. It sets limits on the topic.

✻ هى النقطة التى يريد الكاتب توضيحها فى المقال وهى تضع حدودا للموضوع.

② The Body



◈ The body is the **middle paragraphs** between the **introduction** and the **conclusion.**

✻ صلب الموضوع هو الفقرات الوسطى بين المقدمة والخاتمة.

◈ They are **paragraphs of support** for the thesis. فقرات تدعم الموضوع.

◈ They contain **facts, data, evidences, comments, analysis, examples, pros** and **cons.**

✻ يحتوى صلب المقال على حقائق، بيانات، دلائل، تعليقات، تحليل، امثلة ، مميزات، عيوب.

✻ تحتوى كل فقرة من فقرات جسم الموضوع على:

1 Topic Sentence — الجملة الرئيسية

2 Supporting Sentences — الجمل الداعمة

3 Concluding Sentence — الجملة الختامية






3 The Conclusion — الخاتمــــة

◈ The conclusion is the **last paragraph** of the essay. It is only one paragraph.

* الخاتمة هى الفقرة الأخيرة من المقال. وتكون عبارة عن برجراف واحد.

◈ The conclusion **restates** the **introductory** paragraph.

* تعيد الخاتمة صياغة الفقرة التمهيدية.

◈ The conclusion **summarises** the **ideas of the body** and the **introduction**.

* تلخص الخاتمة أفكار صلب الموضوع والمقدمة.

◈ It **signals** the **end** of the essay. It is a **brief review** of the **main body**.

* تشير إلى نهاية المقال. تعطى مراجعة ملخصة لصلب الموضوع الأساسى.

✓ يعبر هذا الجزء عن شخصيتك، حيث تعرض رأيك ومقترحاتك والحلول وقد يشمل نصيحة أو تحذير أو تلخيص لما قلته.

✓ يمكننا القول أن الخاتمة هى نفسها المقدمة لكن بصياغة مختلفة. **(restatement of the thesis and thoughts)**

*يمكن أن نبدأ الخاتمة بإحدى هذه الروابط:

conclusion transitions
روابط الخاتمة

To summarize, = To sum up,
In conclusion, = To conclude,
In short, = In summary,
Finally, = All in all = On the whole

Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

"How we can stay healthy."

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



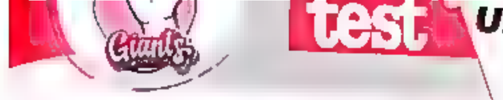
Health experts urge people to maintain a healthy lifestyle that involves good nutrition and regular exercise, with the goal of improving general well-being and strength. But what about the mind? One healthy method to battle difficult situations is a practice called mindfulness. Mindfulness is your awareness of what is happening in your mind, whether it is positive or negative. It is a mental exercise of learning how to react wisely, instead of blindly, to things that happen to you.

Mindfulness allows you to choose what will strengthen your mind and put it into action as well as pick what you ought to let go of.

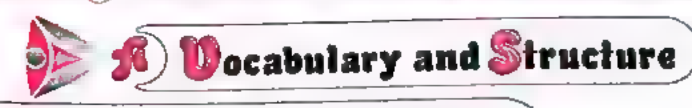
One benefit of mindfulness is dealing with negative thoughts. Being aware of the negativity entering your mind enables you to control it before it affects your mood. Another advantage of practising mindfulness is being aware of positive emotions and using them to guide your mental state. You must be aware of your own thinking and feeling processes.

Since mindfulness is a habit, it requires training your consciousness and senses to focus on the surrounding environment to stay in the present moment instead of worrying about the past or future. Also, it requires you to observe your thoughts without getting absorbed in them. If you are feeling sad about a certain situation, it does not mean you are living a sad life. Finally, pay attention to your bodily sensations, such as breathing and moving, to remind yourself that you are more than just your emotions and thoughts. Once you master mindfulness, you will be able to recognise patterns, improve your behaviour, and maintain your inner peace.

1. The passage is mainly about ....
   (a) being in control of your mind and reactions
   (b) how to read people's minds
   (c) advantages of a healthy diet
   (d) filling your mind with positive thought
2. The underlined word master means ....
   (a) do (b) learn (c) finish (d) teach
3. Which of the following best summarises the information in the last paragraph?
   (a) A healthy physical lifestyle is necessary for mindfulness.
   (b) Negative thoughts cannot be controlled without mindfulness.
   (c) Being mindful means being positive all the time.
   (d) Activities to help you be more mindful
4. People who practise mindfulness can ....
   (a) never feel peaceful
   (b) be misguided by their positive thoughts
   (c) stop bad things from happening to them
   (d) cleverly react to life's difficult situations
5. According to the passage, living and enjoying the present moment ....
   (a) means you hate the past
   (b) helps a person worry less
   (c) does not mean you are sad
   (d) improves your physical strength
6. Which of the following is not correct?
   (a) Being mindful makes you recognise your emotions.
   (b) You are not defined by your thoughts and emotions.
   (c) Handling thoughts and emotions requires holding on to them first.
   (d) Your mood is affected by how well you control your negative thoughts.
7. You need to have mental .... to be able to control your thoughts and feelings.
   (a) health (b) awareness (c) patterns (d) exhaustion
8. It can be inferred from the text that ....
   (a) mental strength requires practice like physical strength
   (b) fighting tough situations is impossible
   (c) breathing and moving do not affect your mental well-being
   (d) only focusing on your senses helps you acquire positive emotions







A) Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sadly, my neighbour has a .... illness.
 ⓐ injury ⓑ infection ⓒ bacteria ⓓ severe
2. We .... wash these tomatoes. They've already been washed.
 ⓐ must ⓑ doesn't have to ⓒ needn't ⓓ mustn't
3. The driver .... take a side road.
 ⓐ are to ⓑ need ⓒ is to ⓓ have to
4. You must leave immediately. You're in great .... here.
 ⓐ dangerous ⓑ danger ⓒ safe ⓓ safety
5. It's getting dark. I .... go now.
 ⓐ must ⓑ had to ⓒ ought ⓓ should have
6. They can't fix my computer, so I .... to buy a new one.
 ⓐ must ⓑ has ⓒ will have ⓓ had
7. He .... the air force in 1994 and spent ten years in the service.
 ⓐ joined ⓑ checked ⓒ went ⓓ gave
8. You .... smoke in petrol stations.
 ⓐ shouldn't ⓑ needn't ⓒ mustn't ⓓ oughtn't
9. You needn't .... You could have taken your time.
 ⓐ rushing ⓑ have rushed ⓒ rushed ⓓ rush
10. What do I .... do to get a new driving licence?
 ⓐ have to ⓑ had to ⓒ has to ⓓ must
11. A road accident left him severely ....
 ⓐ injuries ⓑ injury ⓒ injure ⓓ injured
12. You .... take an umbrella if you are going to Aswan. It doesn't often rain there.
 ⓐ haven't to ⓑ don't need to ⓒ must ⓓ need to
13. You are not late. You .... hurry.
 ⓐ have to ⓑ had to ⓒ don't have to ⓓ didn't have to
14. I have a/an .... headache: it is not bearable.
 ⓐ simple ⓑ several ⓒ severe ⓓ easy
15. The man was .... heavily after the accident.
 ⓐ bleeding ⓑ explaining ⓒ breeding ⓓ producing

B) Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Once upon a time, there was a young prince who wanted to marry a girl of good morals. So he ordered a royal decree asking every young woman who wanted to be his bride to come to the royal palace the following day at eight o'clock in the morning. The promised day came, and the girls gathered in the courtyard of the palace, each in their best looks. The prince stood, greeted them, called them, and told them that he would hold a contest and marry the one who won it. And that he would give each of them a planting pot in which there was a seed, and he asked each of them to take care of this seed in her own way, and to return here a month from today. The girls took their pots and left with surprises at this strange contest. One of these girls was a beautiful girl named Maria. Maria diligently watered and looked after her seed, but she never noticed its growth for a month. She decided that she would not go to the palace the next day because her seed did not grow, but

Aunt Diana convinced her to go. Maria went to the palace with her vegetated basin. She feels ashamed when she sees the girls holding plants of different shapes and colors in their hands. Maria was about to return home with tears over her, but the minister who was wandering in the square asked her to go up to the platform with him to meet the prince. Maria was stunned and turbulently climbed up to the stage with him. The prince greeted her and said: I commanded the minister to give each of you a planting tank in which there was a rotten seed, so that I could see what you would do with it. Maria wins the contest and the prince asks her to marry him, to the astonishment of all the other girls.

16. .... gained the respect of the prince.
ⓐ Diana ⓑ Maria ⓒ The con artists ⓓ The minister

17. The underlined word "convinced" means ....
ⓐ persuaded ⓑ followed ⓒ misused ⓓ understood

18. There was a rotten seed in the ....
ⓐ pot ⓑ the palace ⓒ the tank ⓓ a & c

19. When Maria returned to the palace , she feels ....
ⓐ ashamed ⓑ good ⓒ angry ⓓ a & c

20. What is the passage about?
ⓐ Planting ⓑ Science ⓒ A story ⓓ Playing

21. What is the main idea of the passage?
ⓐ Honesty is the best policy
ⓑ A friend in need is a friend indeed
ⓒ Knowledge is power
ⓓ An action is louder than speaking

22. The passage mentioned .... names of people.
ⓐ two ⓑ three ⓒ four ⓓ five

23. Maria was ....
ⓐ bad ⓑ dishonest ⓒ con ⓓ honest

C Writing

24. A: Translate the following into Arabic.

Reading newspapers is a must for many people. Thirst for knowledge urges many people to read them.

إدارة زفتى ٢٠٢٢

(أ) تعتبر قراءة الصحف شيء واجب لدى كثير من الناس، فالعطش للمعرفة يحسهم على عدم قراءتها.
(ب) تمثل قراءة الجرائد أهمية لدى كثيرا من الناس، فالعطش للمعرفة يحسهم على قراءتها.
(ج) ان قراءة الصحف شيء ضروري لدى كثيراً من الناس، فالتعطش للمعرفة يحثهم على قراءتها.
(د) لقد أصبحت قراءة الصحف ضرورة لدى كثيراً من الناس، فالعطش للمعرفة حثهم على قراءتها.

25. B: Translate the following into English.

كانت مصر من أوائل الدول فى الشرق الأوسط التى وفرت لقاح كوفيد ١٩ لمواطنيها وقد عددت من مصادر الحصول على الأنواع المختلفة منه كما وفرته بالمجان.

أسيوط ٢٠٢٢

ⓐ Egypt was of the first states in the Middle East that prove a vaccine COVID-19 for its people. It has also made more sources of obtaining different types of it for free.
ⓑ Egypt was of the first countries in the Middle East to provide a COVID-19 vaccine to its citizens. It also made much more sources of buying different types of it, and provided it free of charge.
ⓒ Egypt was one of the first states in the Middle East which provide a vaccine COVID-19 for its citizens. It had also made many sources of getting different types of it for free.
ⓓ Egypt was one of the first countries in the Middle East to provide a COVID-19 vaccine to its citizens. It also made many sources of obtaining different types of it, and provided it free of charge.

26. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

"How to use social media in a good way."

1) Complete the following dialogue: (2 Marks)

أزهر الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

Marwa Can you give me some suggestions on how to stay healthy?
Khaled You should .... ❶ ....
Marwa What kind of food should I avoid?
Khaled ❷ ....
Marwa Is exercise important?
Khaled ❸ ....It's a good way to keep fit.
Marwa ❹ ....?
Khaled You should drink about 8 glasses of water every day.

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (5 Marks)

أزهر الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

Learning English is important for us. English is an interesting language. It is spoken in lots of countries, so my teacher always says, "You must learn English". It is not difficult. You will use it at university and your future job, but unless you listen to English and use it, you will forget it. English language gives us the chance to read English books and know a lot of information. We can get better jobs if we speak English fluently. If you go to a foreign country, you will need English to be able to talk to people there. So, all of us need to improve English well.

A Answer the following questions:

1. Why is it important to learn English?
....
2. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?
....
3. How can you get better jobs?
....

B Choose the correct answer:

4. People in .... countries speak English.
ⓐ few ⓑ no ⓒ many ⓓ all
5. All of us need to improve .... well.
ⓐ English ⓑ Arabic ⓒ French ⓓ Spanish

3. A- Translate into Arabic: (1 Mark)

أزهر المنيا ٢٠٢٢

Sometimes, many people forget how important it's to keep clean and stay healthy. They must eat less fast food to protect themselves from diseases.

B- Translate into English: (1 Mark)

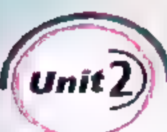
أزهر المنيا ٢٠٢٢

....
....

لقد ظهرت العديد من الوظائف التى تؤدى من البيت وانتشر التسوق عبر الانترنت.

....
....





Eating around the world



Key Vocabulary

celebrate (v)	يحتفل	occasion (n)	مناسبة	tradition (n)	تقليد / عرف
celebration (n)	احتفال	serve (v)	يقدم / يخدم	traditional (adj)	تقليدى
celebrity (n)	شخص مشهور	service (n)	خدمة	taste (v/n)	مذاق / يتذوق
eat out (v)	يأكل بالخارج	salty (adj)	مالح / مملح	tasty (adj)	لذيذ
popular (adj)	محبوب	spicy (adj)	حار / كثير التوابل	old-fashioned (adj)	موضة قديمة
get together (v)	يتقابل / يتجمع	rare (adj)	نادر	fashionable (adj)	على الموضة
prepare (v)	يعد / يجهز	curious (adj)	فضولى	fashion (n)	موضة

Main Vocabulary

delicious (adj)	لذيذ	cornbread (n)	خبز الذرة	called (v)	يسمى
extract (v)	مقتطف / يستخلص / يستخرج	toast (n)	خبز محمص	sweet (adj)	حلو / حلوى
special (adj)	خاص	curry (n)	الكاري (بهارات هندية)	customer (n)	عميل / زبون
native (adj)	محلي / أحد السكان الأصليين	gather (v)	يجمع / يتجمع	turkey (n)	ديك رومى
roasted (adj)	مشوي	pie (n)	فطيرة	beans (n)	فول
fried (adj)	مقلي	event (n)	حدث	prefer (v)	يفضل
dessert (n)	التحلية	snow (n)	الثلج	expect (v)	يتوقع
smell (v/n)	يشم / رائحة	seafood (n)	مأكولات بحرية	laugh (v)	يضحك
recipe (n)	وصفة (طعام)	prawn (n)	جمبري	surprised (adj)	مندهش
feed (v)	يطعم	oyster (n)	المحار	whatever	مهما / أياً كان
quantity (n)	كمية	passenger (n)	راكب / مسافر	whale (n)	حوت
amount (n)	كمية	Thanksgiving (n)	عيد الشكر	type (kind - sort) (n)	نوع
popularity (n)	شعبية	survive (v)	يبقى حياً / ينجو	jar (n)	برطمان
difficulty (n)	صعوبة	chopsticks (n)	أعواد للأكل (صينية)	spoon (n)	ملعقة
festival (n)	مهرجان	recent (adj)	حديث	pan (n)	مقلاة
midnight (n)	منتصف الليل	leaves (n)	أوراق الشجر	dish (n)	طبق / وجبة / أكلة
exist (v)	يوجد	pasta (n)	مكرونة / معجنات	plate (n)	طبق
nuts (n)	مكسرات	chili (n)	شطة	pots (n)	أواني

Synonym & Antonym

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym العكس
rare	نادر	unusual - limited - unlikely	common - usual - frequent
popular	محبوب	attractive - beloved	unpopular - unknown
traditional	تقليدي	conventional - classical	unconventional - modern
old-fashioned	موضة قديمة	old - ancient - dated	modern - fashionable - recent
delicious	لذيذ	tasty - enjoyable	tasteless - nasty
difficult	صعب	hard - complicated	easy - simple



Prepositions

catch up with	يواكب / يساير	choose to	يختار أن	get out	يخرج
dig out of	يخرج من / ينبش	choose from	يختار من	made from	يصنع من مادة تتغير
keep out of	يبتعد عن	popular with	محبوب من	made of	يصنع من مادة لا تتغير
belong to	ينتمي الى	worried about	قلق بشأن	look after	يعتني بـ
wait for	ينتظر لـ	at least	على الأقل	look for	يبحث عن

Expressions & Idioms

prepare food	يعد الطعام
have a meal	يتناول وجبة
take place	يحدث
take part in	يشارك في
a bit (quite)	الي حد ما
on the occasion of	في مناسبة
amount of food	كمية من الطعام
ready to serve	جاهز ليقدم
particular amount	كمية محددة
at Thanks giving	يكون على حق في

celebrate a special occasion	يحتفل بمناسبة خاصة
a bunch of grapes	عنقود عنب
mother tongue	اللغة الأصلية
go native	يتصرف مثل أهل البلد
traditional ways	طرق تقليدية
survive with help from	يبقى على قيد الحياة بمساعدة من
become ready to	يصبح جاهز لـ
make breakfast for	يعد الإفطار لـ
make cakes	يجهز الكيك
fall asleep	ينام

Definitions

amount	كمية	how much of something there is/a quantity of something
celebrate	يحتفل	do something fun to show that an event is special
eat out	يأكل بالخارج	have a meal outside your home
get together	يتقابل	meet people and spend time with them
occasion	مناسبة	a time when something special happens
prepare	يعد / يجهز	get something ready to eat or use
serve	يقدم / يخدم	give people food or drink
traditional	تقليدي	a way of doing something that has existed for a long time
popular	محبوب	be liked or enjoyed by a large number of people
rare	نادر / نيئ / غير مطهي	not done, seen, happening, etc., very often
salty	مالح / مملح	containing or tasting of salt
spicy	حار / كثير التوابل	having a strong taste
sweet	حلو / حلوى	containing, or tasting as if it contains a lot of sugar
special	خاص / مميز	not ordinary or usual / different from what is normal





Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
celebrate	يحتفل	celebration	احتفال	celebrated	مشهور
		celebrity	شخص مشهور	celebratory	احتفالى
prepare	يعد / يجهز	preparation	إعداد / تجهيز	prepared	معد / جاهز
-----		tradition	تقليد / عرف	traditional	تقليدى
serve	يقدم / يخدم	service	خدمة	serviceable	نافع / مفيد
taste	يتذوق	taste	مذاق	tasty	لذيذ
survive	ينجو	survival	النجاة	surviving	ناجٍ
exist	يوجد	existence	وجود	existing	موجود



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

whatever	مهما كان	whenever	في أي حين
be right to	يكون على صواب فى	have the right to	يمتلك الحق في
amount	كمية (لا تعد)	quantity	كمية (تعد)
contact	يتصل (تليفونيا / ايميل ....)	connect	يوصل (شيء / بسلك)
popular	شعبى / محبوب	popularity	شعبية
take part in	يشارك فى	take place	يحدث في
tasty	لذيذ الطعم	tasteful	ذو ذوق جميل
between	بين اثنين	among	بين أكثر من اثنين
teach	يُعلم / يُدرس	learn	يتعلم
find (found)	يجد	found (founded)	يؤسس
desert	صحراء	dessert	حلوى
cost	يكلف / تكلفة	coast	ساحل
old fashioned	موضة قديمة	fashionable	على الموضة
fall (fell)	يقع (وقع)	fill (full)	يملئ (ممتلئ)
menu	قائمة طعام	recipe	وصفة (طعام)
damage	تلف / يدمر	damages	تعويضات
communicate with	يتواصل مع	connect to	يوصل بـ
manage (to)	ينجح / يتمكن من	succeed (in)	ينجح / يتمكن من

events, occasions, accident & incident

events	أحداث هامة (لها ذكرى عظيمة)	The 6th of October is one of the greatest events in our history.
occasion	مناسبة (اجتماعية / احتفال) - سبب	He gave me a present on the occasion of my birthday.
accident	حادث	It was an accident not a murder.
incident	حدث (فى قصة أو فيلم)	This story is full of interesting incidents.



habit, custom, customary & tradition

habit	عادة (شخص)	Listening to loud music is a bad **habit**.
custom	عادة (مجتمع)	Celebrating Sham El-Nasim is an Egyptian **custom**.
customary	معتاد / مألوف	It is **customary** for artists to perceive themselves as the conscience of society.
tradition	تقليد / عرف (شيء موروث)	We should respect our **traditions**.

tradition, traditional, & traditionally

tradition (n)	تقليد / عرف	The old people in the village still observe the local **traditions**.
traditional (adj)	تقليدي	She's very **traditional**.
traditionally (adv)	بشكل تقليدي	More women are entering **traditionally** male jobs.

at last & at least

at last	في النهاية / أخيرا	After days of anxiety, **at last** we knew that the climbers were safe.
at least	على الأقل	There isn't much news about the missing climbers, but **at least** we know they're safe.

other, another & others

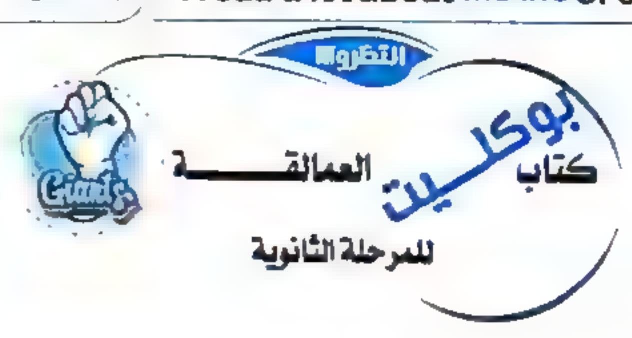
other	أخر (بعدها اسم جمع)	Some students are from the city while **other** students come from villages.
another	أخر (مفرد)	Would you give me **another** chance, please?
others	أخرون (بعدها فعل)	Some students are from here while **others** are from villages.

good (at - for - to)

good at	جيد في	He is **good at** arts.
good to	طيب مع	He is **good to** his classmate.
good for	مفيد / صالح لـ	Taking exercises is **good for** you.

life, a life & the life

life	الحياة بشكل عام (لا تجمع)	A lot of people believe that **life** is a race.
a life	حياة من نوع خاص ويسبقها صفة	This poor man lived **a** sad **life**.
the life	حياة شخص أو فئة من الناس	I read a lot about **the life** of our Prophet Mohammed.







An Old-Fashioned Thanksgiving



In September 1620, a ship called the Mayflower arrived in North America with 102 passengers. Many died, but some were able to grow food and survive with help from Native Americans. Thanksgiving is a day when families get together to remember these events. It is celebrated in the USA every year on the fourth Thursday in November.

In 1882, Louisa M. Alcott wrote a short story called An Old-Fashioned Thanksgiving. Here is an extract:

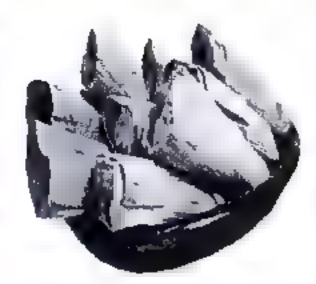
When they woke, there was still a large amount of snow outside. Tilly made a good breakfast for the seven children. "Now, about dinner," she said as they all finished eating. "Ma said that we could have whatever we liked, but she didn't expect us to have a traditional Thanksgiving dinner."

"Have you ever cooked a turkey?" asked Roxy. "Ma said I should decide what to do," replied Tilly. All you children have to do is keep out of the way, and let Prue and me work."

The younger children walked out of the kitchen and into another room. As Tilly and Prue started to prepare the big meal, they got out all the spoons, dishes, pots and pans that they could find.

"Now, sister, we'll have dinner at five," said Tilly. "Pa will be here by that time and he'll be surprised to find us ready to serve the food. There's such a lot to do, and I'm a bit worried about the turkey. It's so big!" "I know," said Prue. "I fed it all summer and now it will feed me," she laughed.

An article about New Year



As one year changes to the next, many countries around the world choose to celebrate the start of the New Year with special food. However, different countries eat very different things to enjoy the occasion. In Mexico, for example, many people eat out at the many restaurants around the country on New Year's Day. The most popular dish is always tamales, which is made from meat, cheese vegetables that are cooked inside banana leaves.

However, when the New Year arrives in Japan, people make special little cakes from sweet rice. Then they get together with their family and friends to eat them and celebrate. In Spain, it is traditional to eat twelve grapes to welcome the New Year. The Spanish people eat this particular amount of grapes late at night, when the clock reaches midnight, or twelve o'clock, and they have one grape for each hour of the clock. In Poland, people start to prepare a fish called "herring" at least five days before they eat it. They put the fish in a jar with water, onions and sugar and then they wait for the big day. Finally, in Greenland, it is traditional for the men to serve a special meal of whale for women to enjoy. It takes months for the meat to become ready to eat and people say the smell is very strong.





A Thanksgiving invitation

Amy So, did you ask your parents about visiting our home for Thanksgiving, Huda?

Hoda Yes. They like me to try new things and they thought it would be a great idea. My mum was very curious about the food you eat.

Amy You'll love the food at Thanksgiving, Hoda. Have you had turkey before? It's a lot like chicken but it's very big.

Hoda Well, I like chicken, so that should be okay. What else do you have?

Amy We have a special kind of bread, called cornbread. It's delicious. And we have sweet potatoes. They're like normal potatoes, but much nicer.

Hoda That sounds great. What do you have for dessert?

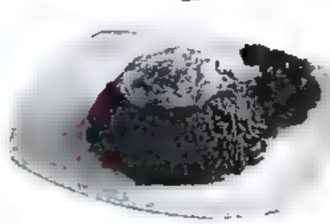
Amy My mum makes the most wonderful pumpkin pie. It's very sweet and heavy. Sometimes I fall asleep after I eat it, so I'll try not to eat too much.

Hoda Now I'm feeling hungry.

Amy Me too. But the best thing about Thanksgiving is that we all have to help with the cooking. It's a great time to meet and catch up with friends and family. That's why we're all really looking forward to seeing you.

Hoda Great. I can't wait!

Meals from around the world



Nasi goreng is a meal with rice from Indonesia. In fact, the words "Nasi goreng' mean 'fried rice' in Indonesian. Many people believe that Nasi goreng is one of the spiciest meals in Indonesia, but for most people it's simply the best meal you can eat.

Nasi goreng is made by frying rice and adding vegetables and either chicken or prawns to the pan. It's a bit saltier than some other Indonesian meals and it often comes with a fried egg on top. Nasi goreng is usually cheaper than most other meals in Indonesia. You can get it either in restaurants or from people who cook food on the side of the road.

Oysters are a type of shellfish that people dig out of the earth under the sea. They're rarer than most other types of seafood and you can only eat them for seven months of the year. During these months, thousands of oysters are eaten in France because many people believe they're one of the most special foods you can eat. This means that oysters are usually one of the most expensive meals on the menu in French restaurants.



Mochi are sweet, round rice cakes which are smaller than most of the cakes people eat. They look like little balls and they're made in many different colours. In Japan, where they come from, mochi are the most popular type of cake and the Japanese eat large amounts of them. Mochi were first made about one thousand years ago and people thought that they brought good luck.

Today, different colours and types of mochi are more popular than others on different special occasions. For example, when the Japanese celebrate New Year's Day, flat, white mochi is the most popular type of mochi to eat.

1. My sister .... a delicious meal of fish and rice. منايل ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ prepared ⓑ compared ⓒ dropped ⓓ celebrated
2. Some people like to have the signature of .... when they meet them. بورسعيد ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ celebration ⓑ celebrities ⓒ celebrate ⓓ celebrated
3. Every year, families get .... to celebrate Thanksgiving. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ along ⓑ ahead ⓒ back ⓓ together
4. To .... means to do something funny to show that an event is special. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ estimate ⓑ celebrate ⓒ prevent ⓓ protect
5. The club members usually get .... when they have serious issues to discuss. LM
ⓐ up ⓑ over ⓒ together ⓓ on
6. I usually visit my village on different .... LM
ⓐ occasions ⓑ purposes ⓒ positions ⓓ reasons
7. This restaurant usually .... cheap and delicious food. LM
ⓐ buys ⓑ takes ⓒ surfs ⓓ serves
8. A .... disease is any disease that affects a very small percentage of the population. LM
ⓐ common ⓑ serious ⓒ rare ⓓ spreading
9. The .... man is the person who wants very much to know about everything. نابل ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ impolite ⓑ stupid ⓒ traditional ⓓ curious
10. In some parts of Africa, people are still using letters as a/an .... way of communication. U
ⓐ modern ⓑ usual ⓒ traditional ⓓ international
11. Some young people believe that following customs and.........is something of the past. U
ⓐ cultivation ⓑ education ⓒ conditions ⓓ traditions
12. We are going to .... after my brother's graduation. U
ⓐ collaborate ⓑ celebrate ⓒ contribute ⓓ educate
13. We had to .... a lot of sweets for my sister's birthday party. U
ⓐ prepare ⓑ compare ⓒ repair ⓓ appear
14. Adel .... together with some friends to plan a party for their friend who win the gold medal for swimming. ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ went ⓑ made ⓒ performed ⓓ got
15. Still, the people in Siwa insist on wearing their .... clothes as their grandfathers used to. U
ⓐ up-to-date ⓑ modern ⓒ traditional ⓓ additional
16. Ever since she was a child, she has had a predilection ميل for .... food.
ⓐ space ⓑ spicy ⓒ sold ⓓ salt
17. ...., poems usually have three or more verses.
ⓐ Transition ⓑ Tradition ⓒ Traditional ⓓ Traditionally
18. This was the .... for expressions of friendship by the two presidents.
ⓐ event ⓑ occasion ⓒ accident ⓓ incident
19. Do you prefer sweet food like chocolate or .... food such as fish and nuts?
ⓐ salt ⓑ salty ⓒ space ⓓ small
20. I helped to .... the food to everyone at the party.
ⓐ serve ⓑ servant ⓒ service ⓓ serviceable

21. Freshly baked apple pie makes a .... dessert.
ⓐ test ⓑ taste ⓒ nasty ⓓ delicious

22. Whatever the latest .... trend, you can be sure Mai will be wearing it.
ⓐ fashionable ⓑ fashion ⓒ old-fashioned ⓓ unfashionable

23. It was an exciting .... because we celebrated my grandfather's 80th birthday!
ⓐ incident ⓑ accident ⓒ occasion ⓓ service

24. He has a collection of .... insect specimens.
ⓐ rarely ⓑ raw ⓒ row ⓓ rare

25. They planned a special .... for her homecoming.
ⓐ celebrity ⓑ celebration ⓒ celebrate ⓓ separated

26. Her .... has declined since her return from exile two years ago.
ⓐ famous ⓑ lovely ⓒ popularity ⓓ popular

27. Most Egyptian dishes are ....
ⓐ taste ⓑ tasty ⓒ tasteful ⓓ tasted

28. People shouldn't .... social occasions in large groups to avoid being harmed by infectious diseases. LM
ⓐ distribute ⓑ graduate ⓒ celebrate ⓓ cooperate

Exercise 2 Main vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الاساسية

29. You should drink the right .... of water every day. LM
ⓐ number ⓑ part ⓒ amount ⓓ ingredient

30. Baking a cake isn't difficult - it's just a matter of following the ....
ⓐ meal ⓑ ripe ⓒ recipe ⓓ receive

31. Healthy lifestyle .... begin when you're young.
ⓐ customary ⓑ customs ⓒ habits ⓓ customers

32. Essential oils are .... from flowers, leaves, fruits and all kinds of different plants.
ⓐ protected ⓑ extracted ⓒ served ⓓ done

33. You must try this cake; it tastes .... , and I'm sure you will like it. LM
ⓐ awfully ⓑ awful ⓒ delicious ⓓ deliciously

34. Zewail was proud of his .... country, Egypt. إدارة قلالوس - مزية البرج ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ naïve ⓑ foreign ⓒ native ⓓ strange

35. You should eat a small .... of food before you do a sport. LM الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ amount ⓑ number ⓒ ingredient ⓓ collection

36. People .... around the street sellers to buy their needs. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ celebrated ⓑ gathered ⓒ served ⓓ prepared

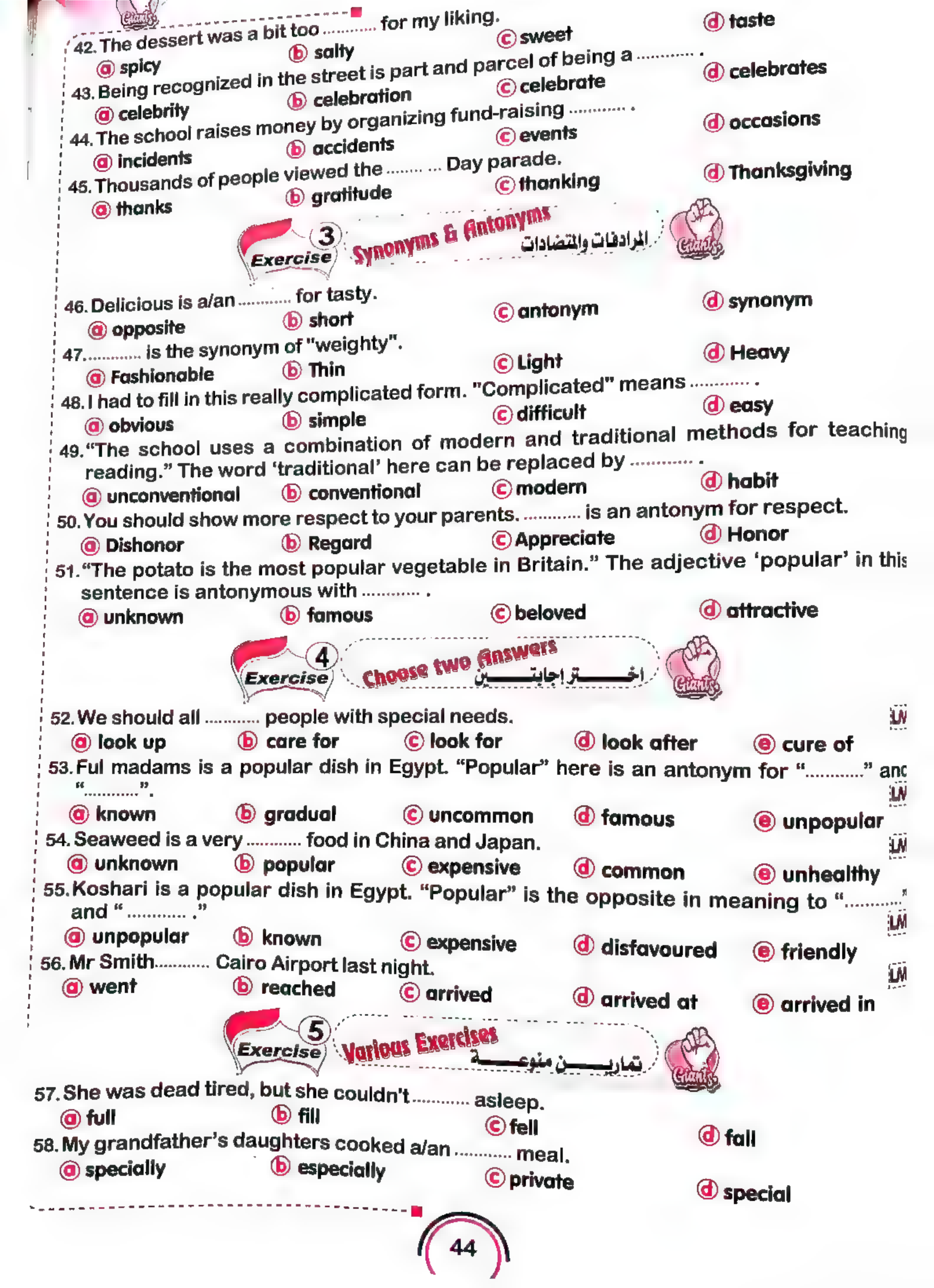
37. Whom are you waiting...........? LM
ⓐ to ⓑ at ⓒ for ⓓ no preposition

38. She has a .... of playing with her hair when she's nervous.
ⓐ custom ⓑ customer ⓒ habit ⓓ tradition

39. .... with my peers is really important because we discuss serious issues.
ⓐ Separation ⓑ Communication ⓒ Disagreement ⓓ Improvement

40. There's only a fifty-fifty chance that she'll .... the operation.
ⓐ save ⓑ alive ⓒ survive ⓓ live

41. It is my sister's eighteenth birthday today, so my family is going to .... this evening.
ⓐ survive ⓑ celebrate ⓒ expect ⓓ serve



42. The dessert was a bit too .... for my liking.
ⓐ spicy ⓑ salty ⓒ sweet ⓓ taste
43. Being recognized in the street is part and parcel of being a ....
ⓐ celebrity ⓑ celebration ⓒ celebrate ⓓ celebrates
44. The school raises money by organizing fund-raising ....
ⓐ incidents ⓑ accidents ⓒ events ⓓ occasions
45. Thousands of people viewed the .... Day parade.
ⓐ thanks ⓑ gratitude ⓒ thanking ⓓ Thanksgiving

Exercise 3 Synonyms & Antonyms المرادفات والمتضادات

46. Delicious is a/an .... for tasty.
ⓐ opposite ⓑ short ⓒ antonym ⓓ synonym
47. .... is the synonym of "weighty".
ⓐ Fashionable ⓑ Thin ⓒ Light ⓓ Heavy
48. I had to fill in this really complicated form. "Complicated" means ....
ⓐ obvious ⓑ simple ⓒ difficult ⓓ easy
49. "The school uses a combination of modern and traditional methods for teaching reading." The word 'traditional' here can be replaced by ....
ⓐ unconventional ⓑ conventional ⓒ modern ⓓ habit
50. You should show more respect to your parents. .... is an antonym for respect.
ⓐ Dishonor ⓑ Regard ⓒ Appreciate ⓓ Honor
51. "The potato is the most popular vegetable in Britain." The adjective 'popular' in this sentence is antonymous with ....
ⓐ unknown ⓑ famous ⓒ beloved ⓓ attractive

Exercise 4 Choose two Answers اختر إجابتين

52. We should all .... people with special needs. LM
ⓐ look up ⓑ care for ⓒ look for ⓓ look after ⓔ cure of
53. Ful madams is a popular dish in Egypt. "Popular" here is an antonym for "............" and "............". LM
ⓐ known ⓑ gradual ⓒ uncommon ⓓ famous ⓔ unpopular
54. Seaweed is a very .... food in China and Japan. LM
ⓐ unknown ⓑ popular ⓒ expensive ⓓ common ⓔ unhealthy
55. Koshari is a popular dish in Egypt. "Popular" is the opposite in meaning to "............" and "............ ." LM
ⓐ unpopular ⓑ known ⓒ expensive ⓓ disfavoured ⓔ friendly
56. Mr Smith............ Cairo Airport last night. LM
ⓐ went ⓑ reached ⓒ arrived ⓓ arrived at ⓔ arrived in

Exercise 5 Various Exercises تمارين منوعة

57. She was dead tired, but she couldn't............ asleep.
ⓐ full ⓑ fill ⓒ fell ⓓ fall
58. My grandfather's daughters cooked a/an .... meal.
ⓐ specially ⓑ especially ⓒ private ⓓ special

59. People have always enjoyed eating .... in Malaysia.
ⓐ out ⓑ of ⓒ up ⓓ down

60. It will cost .... $100.
ⓐ at least ⓑ at last ⓒ at lest ⓓ at list

61. He was killed in a car ....
ⓐ occasion ⓑ event ⓒ accident ⓓ incident

62. I prefer to .... arguments about money.
ⓐ keep out of ⓑ keep in of ⓒ keep of out ⓓ catch out of

63. You won't last long in your job if you carry on being so .... to the customers.
ⓐ ride ⓑ rid ⓒ rude ⓓ road

64. She should get .... with her friends.
ⓐ of ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ about

65. I have my meals indoors most of the time, but every now and then I ....
ⓐ catch up with ⓑ find out ⓒ get together ⓓ eat out

66. They were making a tremendous .... of noise last night.
ⓐ quantities ⓑ amount ⓒ quality ⓓ mount

67. There are eight pets in my house. Six are cats and .... are dogs.
ⓐ others ⓑ another ⓒ the other ⓓ the others

68. .... is too short to worry about money!
ⓐ Life ⓑ The life ⓒ A life ⓓ Live

69. It is the .... in that country for women to marry young.
ⓐ habit ⓑ traditional ⓒ custom ⓓ customary

70. Nader .... a lot of weight when he was ill.
ⓐ missed ⓑ lost ⓒ won ⓓ earned

71. Despite the big disaster of the earthquake, many people ....
ⓐ save ⓑ alive ⓒ survived ⓓ live

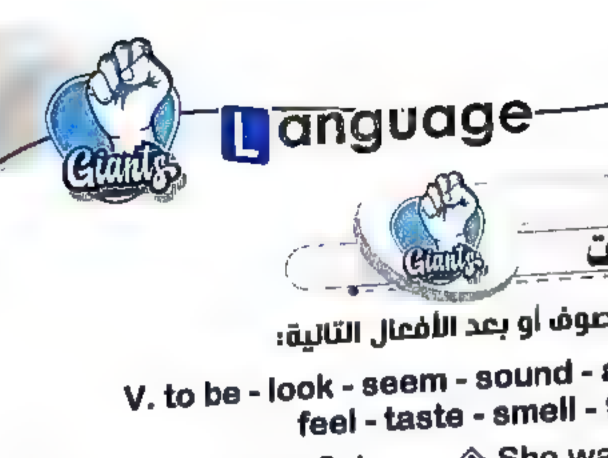
72. Do you think that Americans .... right to celebrate Thanksgiving?
ⓐ are ⓑ is ⓒ have ⓓ has

73. Most developed countries........... a lot of money on scientific research.
ⓐ depend ⓑ miss ⓒ spend ⓓ save

74. Sorry, but what you say doesn't .... any sense.
ⓐ rise ⓑ make ⓒ get ⓓ take

75. I didn't........... with my brother when we were young, but we're good friends now.
ⓐ fall out ⓑ get into ⓒ get on ⓓ lose touch





Adjectives
الصفـــــات

* الصفة هى كلمة تصف الاسم والضمير وتاتى الصفة قبل الموصوف أو بعد الأفعال التالية:

V. to be - look - seem - sound - appear - go - get - come - become - stay - feel - taste - smell - touch - fall - grow - turn - how

◈ He bought a **new** flat. ◈ She was a **clever** student. ◈ He is **lazy**.
◈ Toka seems **ill**. ◈ He gets **tired** quickly.

* لا يحدث أى تغيير للصفة سواء كان الموصوف مفرداً أو جمعاً، مذكراً أو مؤنثاً (الصفة لا تجمع، وصفة المذكر هى أيضاً صفة للمؤنث).

◈ He is **clever**. ◈ She is **clever**. ◈ They are **clever**.

* لاحظ أن الصفة قد تكون:

تستخرج من اسم بإضافة لاحقة suffix	◈ hope (hopeful - hopeless) / friend (friendly)
اسم فاعل	◈ interesting- exciting - boring - amazing
اسم مفعول	◈ interested- excited - bored - amazed
اسم يستخدم كصفة (لا يجمع الاسم فى هذه الحالة).	◈ **world** news - **school** girl - **girl** education - **horse** race.
رقم وبعده اسم فيكون الرقم صفة للاسم	◈ a **forty-year** man - a **two-day** trip - a **ten-day** break

* لاحظ أن يمكننا عكس الصفة بإضافة بادئة Prefix:

un	im	in	il	dis	ir
lucky	polite	correct	legal	loyal	regular
unlucky	impolite	incorrect	illegal	disloyal	irregular

* يمكننا تقسيم الصفات من حيث القوة إلى نوعين:

❶ صفات عادية (يمكننا أن يأتى قبلها كلمة very).

hot	cold	bad	large	tired	angry

❷ صفات قوية = صفة عادية + very (لا يمكن أن يأتي قبلها كلمة very)

boiling	freezing	awful	huge	exhausted	furious

◈ He had been working all day. He was **very tired (exhausted)**.
◈ Because of his awful marks, his parents were **very angry (furious)**.

* من حيث النوع تنقسم الصفة إلى نوعين:

❶ صفة قصيرة تتكون من مقطع واحد عند النطق مثل:

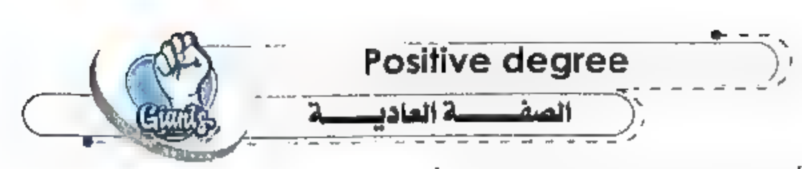
big	small	short	tall	fast	slow

❷ صفة طويلة تتكون من أكثر من مقطع عند النطق مثل:

expensive	comfortable	dangerous	valuable	wonderful	important

* تنقسم الصفات من حيث الدرجة إلى ثلاث درجات:

❶ الصفة العادية (Positive degree) الغرض منها الوصف وليس المقارنة.
❷ صفة المقارنة (Comparative degree) وتستخدم فى المقارنة بين اثنين.
❸ صفة التفضيل (Superlative degree) صفة التفضيل للمقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين.



Positive degree
الصفـــــة العاديـــة

* وهى الدرجة العادية أو البسيطة التى تبين الصفة مثل:

lucky محظوظ	nice لطيف
happy سعيد	rich غنى

* تستخدم الدرجة البسيطة لكى تعبر عن المساواة فى الصفة.

as + صفة + as

- Toka is **as clever as** Jana.
- Ahmed is **as strong as** a horse.

* تستخدم الدرجة البسيطة لكى تعبر عن عدم المساواة فى الصفة.

not as / so + صفة + as

- Ali is **not as clever as** Ahmed.
- He is **not as (so) rich as** his brother.

Comparative degree
صفـــــة المقارنـــة

* تستخدم المقارنة بين اثنين عندما نريد إظهار تفوق شخص أو شيء على شخص أو شيء وتتكون كالآتى:

صفة قصيرة + er + than

- Ali is **taller than** Ahmed.
- Ahmed is **shorter than** Ali.

more / less + الصفة + than

more ... than ← أكثر من
less ... than ← أقل من

- Mona is **more beautiful than** Nada.
- Nada is **less beautiful than** Mona.

Superlative degree
صفـــــة التفضيـــل

* وهى تستخدم عندما نريد إظهار تفوق شخص أو شيء على مجموعة من الأشخاص أو الأشياء وتتكون كالآتى:

the + صفة قصيرة + est

- Ali is **the tallest** student in the class.
- She is **the shortest** one.

the most / the least + صفة طويلة

the most ← الأكثر
the least ← الأقل

- Mona is **the most beautiful** girl I have ever seen.



short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

Positive الصفات		Comparative		Superlative
happy	سعيد	happier	than / the	happiest
heavy	ثقيل	heavier	than / the	heaviest
pretty	جميل	prettier	than / the	prettiest
short	قصير	shorter	than / the	shortest

long adjectives الصفات الطويلة

Positive الصفات		Comparative		Superlative
dangerous	خطير	more / less dangerous	than / the most / the least	dangerous
important	مهم	more / less important	than / the most / the least	important
valuable	قيم	more / less valuable	than / the most / the least	valuable
wonderful	مدهش	more / less wonderful	than / the most / the least	wonderful

بعض الصفات الشاذة

positive وصف	comparative مقارنة		superlative تفضيل	
good (right)	better	than / the	best	الأحسن
bad (wrong)	worse	than / the	worst	الأسوأ
many / much	more	than / the	most	الأكثر
little	less	than / the	least	الأقل
far	farther أبعد	than / the	farthest	الأبعد
far	further أكثر / إضافي	than / the	furthest	الأبعد

◈ Ali is **better than** Ahmed. ➲ Ahmed is **worse than** Ali.

* نضع (er-est) بعد الصفة القصيرة أما إذا انتهت بـ(e) وقبلها حرف ساكن توضع (r- st) فقط أما إذا انتهت بـ(y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن تحول إلى (ier- iest) ولاحظ مضاعفة الحرف الأخير فى الصفة إذا انتهت بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد.

small	smaller than	the smallest
wide	wider than	the widest
heavy	heavier than	the heaviest
big	bigger than	The biggest

ملاحظات هامة على الصفات





Exercise 1 from Tests أسئلة امتحانات الإدارات

1. Mr. Ali is .... teacher I've ever seen. He teaches us in an easy way. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ more skillful ⓑ the most skillful ⓒ the least skillful ⓓ the more skillful
2. It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere .... ? المنيا ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ more quieter ⓑ quiet ⓒ quietest ⓓ quieter
3. She earns at least as much .... her brother, and probably more. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ as ⓑ than ⓒ more ⓓ of
4. You must download the .... update for your apps. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ late ⓑ later ⓒ latest ⓓ latter
5. I prefer to travel by plane because I think it is the .... means of transport. إدارة إسنا ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ fast as ⓑ fastest ⓒ faster ⓓ faster than
6. This is .... persuasive girl I have ever met. منازل ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ less ⓑ most ⓒ the most ⓓ the more
7. That chocolate ice cream tastes .... الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ deliciously ⓑ more deliciously ⓒ delicious ⓓ the most deliciously
8. Tanta is a .... city in Egypt. إدارة القوصية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ biggest ⓑ the biggest ⓒ bigger than ⓓ big
9. He speaks English as .... as he speaks Arabic. الفيوم ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ best ⓑ bad ⓒ good ⓓ well
10. The man I saw was not .... that one. قنا ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ as tall so ⓑ so tall so ⓒ so tall as ⓓ so tall
11. Which of these is an adjective? It is .... بني سويف ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ hard ⓑ hardly ⓒ harden ⓓ hardship
12. Yesterday was hot and today is .... وسط طنطا ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ hottest ⓑ hotter than ⓒ hotter ⓓ a hotter
13. January is .... month in Egypt. البحيرة ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ coldest ⓑ colder than ⓒ the coldest ⓓ the colder
14. What is .... dish in Egypt? الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ the spiciest ⓑ spiciest ⓒ much spicy ⓓ most spiciest

Exercise 2 Longman أسئلة موقع لونجمان

15. Your homework is .... than last week; you seem lazy. LM
   ⓐ better ⓑ worse ⓒ good ⓓ bad
16. Which is .... in summer: Cairo or Alexandria? LM
   ⓐ hotter than ⓑ as hot ⓒ hottest ⓓ hotter
17. What is the .... mountain in Europe? LM
   ⓐ highest ⓑ high ⓒ highly ⓓ much high
18. This is .... situation I have ever faced; I'm in a tight spot. LM
   ⓐ the most difficult ⓑ most difficult ⓒ the least difficult ⓓ Cleverest
19. This exam seems .... than the previous one; you don't have to worry. LM
   ⓐ more difficult ⓑ the easiest ⓒ easier ⓓ much difficult
20. You should avoid dealing with these boys. Better alone .... in bad company. LM
   ⓐ less ⓑ as ⓒ than ⓓ then
21. In France, oysters are .... most other types of seafood. LM
   ⓐ the rarest ⓑ rarer ⓒ rarer than ⓓ rare

22. The Egyptian Museum is one of the .... places to visit in Cairo. Thousands of tourists like to visit it.
ⓐ more popular ⓑ less popular ⓒ least popular ⓓ most popular

23. What is .... planet from the sun?
ⓐ the nearest ⓑ the farthest ⓒ farthest ⓓ nearest

24. Living in a big city isn't .... living in a small village.
ⓐ so cheap ⓑ as cheap ⓒ so cheap as ⓓ cheaper

25. What is .... dish in Egypt?
ⓐ the spiciest ⓑ spiciest ⓒ much spicy ⓓ most spiciest

26. I wish you all .... of luck to join the faculty you are dreaming of.
ⓐ a bad ⓑ the worst ⓒ the best ⓓ a better

27. I think physics is the .... of all subjects; a lot of students don't like it.
ⓐ easier ⓑ more difficult ⓒ easiest ⓓ most difficult

28. Dalia is the tallest girl in class. She isn't .... her friends.
ⓐ tall enough like ⓑ as tall as ⓒ so short as ⓓ taller than

29. January is .... month in Egypt.
ⓐ the colder ⓑ the coldest ⓒ colder than ⓓ coldest

30. "Oliver Twist" is one of Charles Dickens' .... novels.
ⓐ as famous ⓑ much famous ⓒ the most famous ⓓ most famous

31. It was hot yesterday, and it is even........... today.
ⓐ hottest ⓑ hotter than ⓒ hotter ⓓ a hotter

32. Who is the .... of the two runners?
ⓐ more faster ⓑ much fast ⓒ fastest ⓓ faster

Exercise 3 Giants تمارين كتاب العمالقة

33. She looked .... and ran away from the dog.
ⓐ fright ⓑ frightened ⓒ frightening ⓓ frighten

34. What was the .... event in your life?
ⓐ happiest ⓑ happier ⓒ more happy ⓓ most happy

35. I think little Jenny .... today. She can go to school.
ⓐ seem better ⓑ looks better ⓒ seems best ⓓ looks best

36. The scene was horrifying. The spectators were ....
ⓐ horrifyingly ⓑ horrify ⓒ horrifying ⓓ horrified

37. Little Hassan is very clever. He's .... than his friends.
ⓐ intelligenter ⓑ more intelligent ⓒ most intelligent ⓓ intelligentest

38. I don't think this winter is .... last winter.
ⓐ as cold as ⓑ as cold ⓒ so cold ⓓ colder

39. Your homework is .... than last week; you seem lazy!
ⓐ better ⓑ worse ⓒ good ⓓ bad

40. It was .... music I have ever heard.
ⓐ more beautiful ⓑ less beautiful ⓒ the most beautiful ⓓ most beautiful

41. The Nile is .... river in Africa.
ⓐ longer than ⓑ the longest ⓒ longer one ⓓ longest than

42. In my opinion, it was the .... meal I've ever eaten!
ⓐ best ⓑ good ⓒ better ⓓ worse

43. The students all feel .... now that the exams have finished.
ⓐ the happiest ⓑ happier ⓒ more happy ⓓ happiest

44. Your problem is not difficult. It's ....than ours.
ⓐ easier ⓑ more easy ⓒ easiest ⓓ most easy

45. This man isn't .... Mr Ali, perhaps taller.
ⓐ tall as ⓑ so tall so ⓒ as tall so ⓓ so tall as

46. Nobody here is .... Peter.
ⓐ efficient ⓑ as efficient as ⓒ most efficient than ⓓ as efficient

47. This book was ....than the last one she wrote. I didn't like it.
ⓐ bad ⓑ best ⓒ worst ⓓ worse

48. That meal was too salty, it was ....meal I've had at that restaurant!
ⓐ worse ⓑ the worst ⓒ worse than ⓓ bad

49. Mexican food is usually ....than French food.
ⓐ most spicy ⓑ spiciest ⓒ spicy ⓓ spicier

50. Do you want ....house?
ⓐ big ⓑ a big ⓒ a biggest ⓓ biggest

51. Oysters are one of ....meals you can eat in France.
ⓐ more expensive ⓑ expensive ⓒ the most expensive ⓓ most expensive

52. My mother's dress is ....than my aunt's.
ⓐ more long ⓑ longest ⓒ longer ⓓ the longest

53. Our football team is ....yours.
ⓐ better than ⓑ the better ⓒ best than ⓓ the best

54. This is ....month.
ⓐ hot ⓑ hottest ⓒ the hotter ⓓ the hottest

55. Vegetable curry is ....than the other meals on the menu.
ⓐ the most popular ⓑ more popular ⓒ popular ⓓ most popular

56. Their house is ....from the main road.
ⓐ the farther ⓑ farther than ⓒ the farthest ⓓ farthest

57. Adel isn't as old as Hatim. Adel is really ....
ⓐ younger ⓑ older ⓒ youngest ⓓ oldest

58. This exam seems ....than the previous one; you don't have to worry.
ⓐ more difficult ⓑ the easiest ⓒ easier ⓓ much difficult

59. Please, tell me something ....than this old joke.
ⓐ interesting ⓑ less interesting
ⓒ more interesting ⓓ the most interesting

60. There was a big crowd. It was ....than ever.
ⓐ crowdest ⓑ more crowded ⓒ most crowded ⓓ crowder

61. What is the ....mountain in Europe?
ⓐ highest ⓑ high ⓒ highly ⓓ much high

62. Is the Great Wall of China still ....man-made structure in the world?
ⓐ the longer ⓑ longest ⓒ the longest ⓓ much longer

63. Is this dish ....expensive than other takeaway food?
ⓐ the ⓑ least ⓒ most ⓓ more

64. What a pity! She lives so far. I wish she lived ....
ⓐ nearest ⓑ nearer ⓒ more near ⓓ most near

65. My bicycle is very nice, but that one is ....
ⓐ the nicest ⓑ more nice ⓒ nicer ⓓ more nicer

66. He looks ....than her.
ⓐ happy ⓑ happier ⓒ happiest ⓓ more happy

Eating around the world



Key Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
attractive (adj)	جذاب	relatives (n)	أقارب	article (n)	مقال
foreigners (n)	أجانب	beef (n)	لحم بقري	respect (n/v)	يحترم / احترام
personal (adj)	شخصي	vertical (adj)	رأسي	respected (adj)	محترم (وظيفة)
personally (adv)	بشكل شخصي	horizontal (adj)	أفقي	respectable (adj)	محترم (عائلة / مهنة)
simple (adj)	بسيط	ingredients (n)	مكونات / مقادير	respectful (adj)	محترم (تصرف)

Main Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
questionnaire (n)	استبيان	options (n)	خيارات	flourish (v)	يزدهر / يزخرف
difficult (adj)	صعب	optional (adj)	اختياري	rude (adj)	وقح
confusion	ارتباك	skills (n)	مهارات	welfare (n)	الرفاهية
confused (adj)	مرتبك	share (n/v)	يشارك / حصة	noodles (n)	شعرية
confusing (adj)	مربك	distant (adj)	بعيد	effect (n)	تأثير
light (n/adj)	ضوء / خفيف / فاتح	type (n/v)	نوع / يكتب علي آلة	crisis (n)	أزمة
complicated (adj)	معقد	soup (n)	شوربة / حساء	crises (n)	أزمات
believe (v)	يعتقد	understand (v)	يفهم	disaster (n)	كارثة
believer (n)	مؤمن	normal (adj)	طبيعي / عادي	generally (adv)	بشكل عام
belief (n)	عقيدة / اعتقاد	corn (n)	ذرة	grill (v)	يشوي
consider (v)	يعتبر	meal (n)	وجبة	mind map (n)	خريطة ذهنية
achieve (v)	يحقق / ينجز	mean (v) (adj)	يعني / يقصد / بخيل	repeat (v)	يكرر
achievement (n)	تحقيق / إنجاز	follow (v)	يتبع	improve (v)	يحسن
tips (n)	نصائح	rest (n)	راحة	prove (v)	يثبت / يبرهن
onions (n)	بصل	ready (adj)	مستعد / جاهز	industry (n)	الصناعة
grapes (n)	عنب	include (v)	يشمل / يتضمن	trade (n)	التجارة
snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة	make sure (v)	يتأكد	investment (n)	استثمار
introduce (v)	يقدم			go abroad (v)	يذهب للخارج

King Lear

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
deserve (v)	يستحق	deceive (v)	يخدع	beat (v)	يضرب
loyalty (n)	ولاء	trust (v)	يثق	complain (v)	يشكو
exit (n)	مخرج	truth (n)	حقيقة	succeed (v)	ينجح
palace (n)	قصر	enter (v)	يدخل	decision (n)	قرار
income (n)	دخل	inheritance (n)	ميراث	adult (n)	بالغ

Synonym & Antonym

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	العكس Antonym
personal	شخصي	private - special	public - usual - common
rude	وقح	impolite - insulting	gentle - nice
achieve	يحقق / ينجز	accomplish - complete	fail - miss - miscarry
effect	تأثير	influence - result - outcome	cause - reason
follow	يتبع	obey	avoid - neglect - break
consider	يعتبر	regard - value	ignore - undervalue
provide	يزود / يوفر	supply - hand	deprive - maintain

Prepositions

rude to	وقح مع	get rid of	يتخلص من	start with	يبدأ ب
careful about	حريص بشأن	difficult for	صعب لـ	come from	يأتي من
decide on	يختار / يحدد	find out	يعرف / يكتشف	spend on	ينفق على
respect for	احترام لـ	relate to	يتعلق بـ	expect to	يتوقع ان
popular with	محبوب من			such as	مثل

Expressions & Idioms

write a questionnaire	يكتب استبيان
make a questionnaire	يصنع استبيان
make noise	يحدث ضوضاء
do (answer) a questionnaire	يجاوب على استبيان
simple language	لغة بسيطة
show respect for	يظهر الاحترام لـ
As you probably know,	كما تعرف على الأرجح
Personally, I think	بشكل شخصي اعتقد
go abroad	يسافر للخارج
In my opinion	من وجهة نظري
It is thought that...	يعتقد أن....
traditional ways	طرق تقليدية

Definitions

respect	احترام	admiration felt or shown for someone or something that you believe has good ideas or qualities
questionnaire	استبيان	a written list of questions that are answered by a number of people
snack	وجبة خفيفة	a small meal or amount of food eaten in a hurry
belief	عقيدة / اعتقاد	the feeling of being certain that something exists or is true

Language Notes

Notice the Difference

present	يقدم (شيئاً)	introduce	يقدم (شخصاً)
strange	غريب	foreign	أجنبي
stranger	شخص غريب	foreigner	شخص أجنبي
follow	يتبع	fellow	رفيق
abroad	خارج	aboard	على متن
personal	شخصي	personnel	شئون عاملين

person, personal, personally & in person

person	شخص	▶ He was a very nice **person**, always pleasant and friendly.
personal	شخصي	▶ Don't ask me about this matter as it is a **personal** problem.
personally / in person	شخصيا	▶ **Personally**, I believe that women shouldn't work.

respect, respected, respectful & respectable

respect	يحترم / احترام	▶ She won the **respect** of her boss.
respected	محترم (يحترمه الناس / وظيفة)	▶ Yehia Haqqi is **respected** for his simple style in the Egyptian literature.
respectful	محترم (يظهر الاحترام ويتعامل به)	▶ Young children are very **respectful** towards their teachers.
respectable	محترم (عائلة / مهنة)	▶ They are well behaved children who come from a **respectable** family.

experience

experience	خبرة (لا تعد)	▶ My brother doesn't have much **experience** for the job.
experience	تجربة في الحياة (تعد)	▶ Travelling abroad is an exciting **experience**.
experience	يمر بتجربة	▶ I need to meet new people to **experience** a new life.

نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ ing مع العاقل وغير العاقل للتعبير عن المؤثر و ed للمتأثر (عاقل / غير عاقل)

frightened, frightening, confused, confusing, impressed & impressive

frightened	مرعوب	▶ When the dog started barking, I was **frightened**.
frightening	مرعب	▶ The old woman told the children a **frightening** story.
confused	مرتبك	▶ Speak to him slowly as he gets **confused** easily.
confusing	مربك	▶ These questions were **confusing**.
impressed	منبهر	▶ I was **impressed** by his good manners.
impressive	مبهر	▶ His behaviour with us was **impressive**.

belief, believe & believer

belief	اعتقاد / معتقد / إيمان	▶ People should have the courage to stand up for their **beliefs**.
believe (in)	يعتقد / يؤمن	▶ I don't **believe** that story for a moment.
believer (in)	مؤمن	▶ Ali is a great **believer** in healthy food.





Three ways that people show respect when they have meals together



A) Personally, I think it's important to respect our older relatives. When South Korean families eat together, the oldest person at the table always starts to eat first. The rest of the family waits until this person has finished eating before they finish their meals. It is believed that this shows your respect for the most important people in your family.

B) As you probably know, people in China usually use chopsticks to eat their food. However, you need to be careful about what you do with them when you're eating there. It is considered very rude to put your chopsticks vertically into your bowl of food, for example. I understand that this is a Chinese tradition, but for me, foreigners who do this don't mean to be rude at all.



C) In my opinion, lunchtime isn't the best time of day for eating a large meal. However, in Russia it is thought that people should eat their largest meal of the day between 1 o'clock and 3 o'clock in the afternoon. In the evening, people usually eat some light food, such as bread and cold meat followed by tea. This is a traditional way of eating in Russia.

Read these other beliefs about mealtimes

1. It's normal for a family to share food from one plate. (Ethiopia)
2. People should never eat beef because cows are special animals. (India)
3. It's OK to make noises while you're eating soup with noodles. (Japan)

There are often differences in people's beliefs and ways of doing things.
It is important to show respect for other people's beliefs.

Tips to write a questionnaire

When you write a questionnaire, the type of questions you use is important. The questions should use simple language and shouldn't be difficult to understand. You don't need to repeat the question. Don't give too many options as this will confuse people. And never ask personal questions. People generally won't want to answer these. Ask one thing at a time. Make sure you don't have two questions in one, for example, "Do you go abroad often with your friends." And don't ask about things which happened a long time in the past. It can be difficult for people to remember. When you are ready, decide on the best time to ask your questions - before people start to forget!

- Remember to use simple language.
- Think carefully about the questions. What information do you need to find out?
- Do not ask personal questions or questions that are difficult to answer.
- Do not have too many options.
- Ask one question at a time.





Read a conversation between Adam and Shady



Adam: As you probably know, people eat very different things for breakfast around the world.

Shady: Yes, they do. In my opinion, breakfast is the best meal of the day. What do people eat in other countries?

Adam: Let's start with the UK. It is thought that the British have the most unhealthy traditional breakfast. They have fried eggs, beans, toast and fried meat.

Shady: Personally, I wouldn't want to eat such a big meal in the morning. What about the French?

Adam: I understand that the French have a much smaller breakfast: just a croissant or piece of bread.

Shady: That sounds nice, but for me, I'm happy with my usual breakfast of bread, cheese and an egg! One piece of bread would be too little.



Listening

Tips on writing a questionnaire

When you're writing a questionnaire, you need to ask the right questions. Some questions are a lot more useful than others. And, very often, small changes to a questionnaire can make a lot of difference.

Firstly, it's important that the questions are easy for you to understand, so it's always helpful to use simple language. If you use complicated language, people will need to read or hear the questions two or three times.

Secondly, it's important to use words with clear meanings. Words like mostand 'many' mean different things to different people. So, use words that are easier to understand, such as almost all and almost none instead.

Thirdly, don't have too many options. People get confused when there are more than six options to choose from.

Don't ask personal questions, like questions about money. People don't like talking about these things.

Remember to ask one question at a time. Don't put two questions into one, for example: 'How often do you eat out with your family?' Some people will eat out quite often, but not with their family. And others might eat with their family all the time, but only at home.

Finally, make sure the answers to your questions are easy to remember. Don't ask about events in the distant past, especially if they are about something that was boring.

Then, when you know the questions you want to ask, think about the best time to ask people. If you're going to ask people about a recent event, for example, do it before they start to forget.







الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

1. Pupils have great respect .... their teachers.
   ⓐ for ⓑ from ⓒ form ⓓ of
2. Remember to take all your .... possessions with you when you leave the place.
   ⓐ personally ⓑ personal ⓒ personality ⓓ personnel
3. The Minister intervened .... to stop the museum being closed.
   ⓐ personnel ⓑ personality ⓒ personally ⓓ personal
4. It is important to show .... for other people's beliefs.
   ⓐ respectful ⓑ respect ⓒ respected ⓓ respectable
5. He was always .... of my independence.
   ⓐ respected ⓑ respectable ⓒ respectful ⓓ respectably
6. He is a highly .... journalist.
   ⓐ respected ⓑ respect ⓒ respectful ⓓ respectably
7. They are well behaved children who come from a .... family.
   ⓐ respectful ⓑ respectable ⓒ respected ⓓ respect
8. It was a noble effort that deserves ....
   ⓐ respectable ⓑ aspect ⓒ respect ⓓ respected
9. He created a wonderful meal from very few ....
   ⓐ chemicals ⓑ contains ⓒ ingredients ⓓ contents
10. The elevator's .... movement allowed passengers to reach their destination on the top floor quickly.
    ⓐ horizontal ⓑ vertical ⓒ ingredient ⓓ common
11. Do not ask .... questions or questions that are difficult to answer.
    ⓐ personnel ⓑ personally ⓒ person ⓓ personal
12. Charles Dickens was widely .... as a novelist. The whole world enjoys his works.
    ⓐ respect ⓑ respectable ⓒ respected ⓓ respectful
13. In the family gathering, there were uncles, aunts, cousins, and other .... present.
    ⓐ relatives ⓑ enemies ⓒ infections ⓓ foreigners
14. The recipe book provided a step-by-step guide on how to combine the .... to make a delicious smoothie.
    ⓐ elements ⓑ organs ⓒ ingredients ⓓ members
15. The local community warmly welcomed the new ...., offering assistance in finding accommodation.
    ⓐ citizens ⓑ residents ⓒ foreigners ⓓ natives

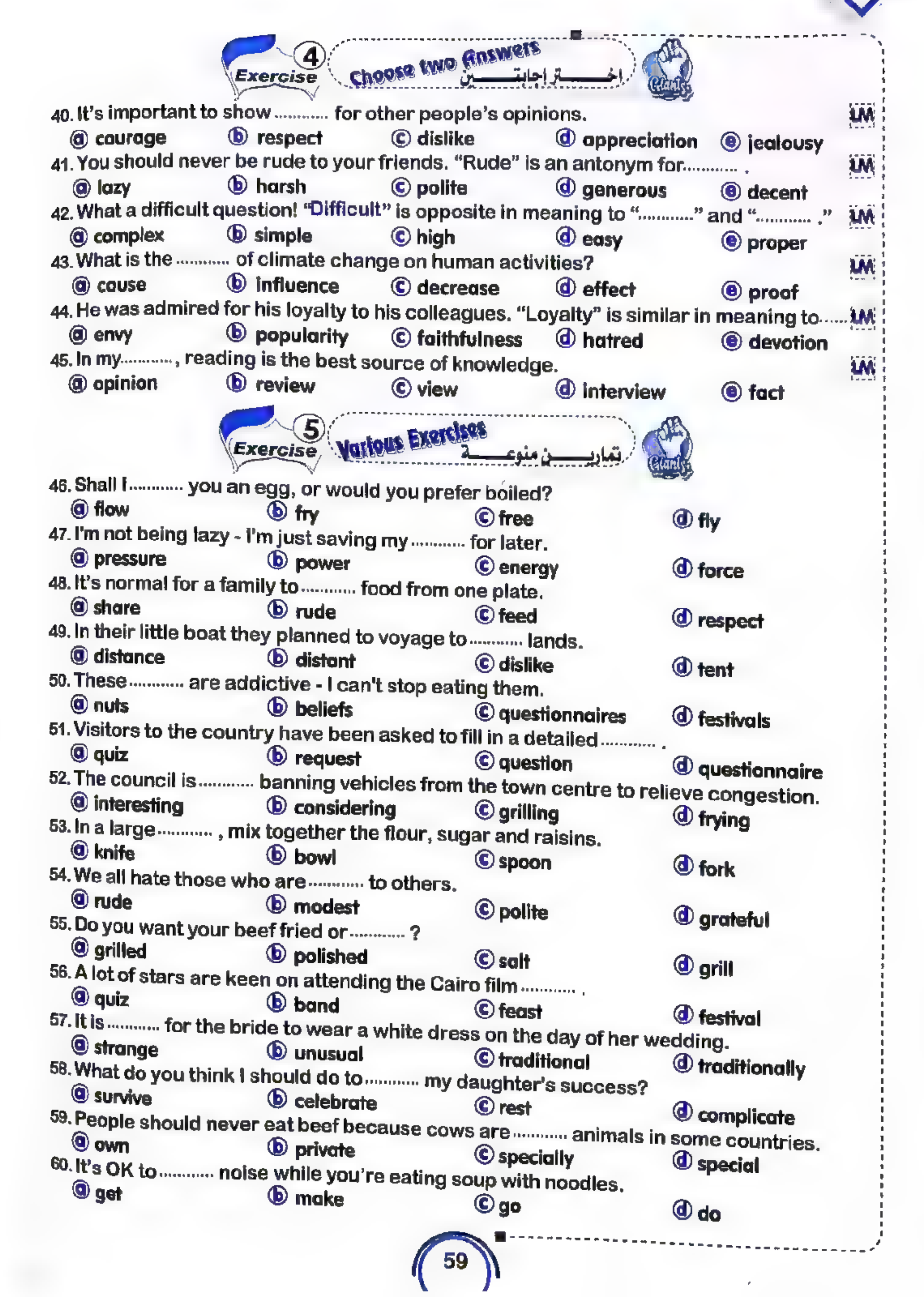
Exercise 2 Main vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الاساسية

16. Taher wasn't .... in the team, as he was injured. LM
    ⓐ contained ⓑ consisted ⓒ included ⓓ appeared
17. I am sorry, I did not .... to disturb you; I just called to make sure you are well. LM
    ⓐ tell ⓑ mean ⓒ mention ⓓ whisper
18. What special food does your family usually eat during .... ?
    ⓐ festivals ⓑ celebrate ⓒ beliefs ⓓ asleep
19. What are the negative .... and positive sides of using mass media? LM
    ⓐ effects ⓑ advantages ⓒ infections ⓓ benefits
20. I looked in .... at the man sitting beside me in the bus as he looked suspicious. LM
    ⓐ comfort ⓑ support ⓒ disbelief ⓓ belief

21. Don't give too many options as this will .... people.
ⓐ confusion ⓑ confusing ⓒ confused ⓓ confuse
22. Her unexpected visit threw us into ....
ⓐ confused ⓑ confusion ⓒ confuse ⓓ confusing
23. Her unexpected visit made us ....
ⓐ confused ⓑ confusion ⓒ confuse ⓓ confusing
24. Her unexpected visit was so ....
ⓐ confused ⓑ confusion ⓒ confuse ⓓ confusing
25. The HR department used a .... to collect feedback from employees about their job satisfaction.
ⓐ questionnaire ⓑ cv ⓒ problem ⓓ book
26. The .... instructions on the assembly manual made it difficult for the customer to set up the product.
ⓐ complicated ⓑ simple ⓒ clear ⓓ straight
27. The fitness instructor shared valuable .... for improving health and flexibility.
ⓐ tips ⓑ taps ⓒ infections ⓓ foreigners
28. The company offered a-an .... work-from-home policy for employees, giving them the flexibility to choose their holidays.
ⓐ obligatory ⓑ necessity ⓒ optional ⓓ compulsory
29. The tutor advised the student to .... the challenging math problems to reinforce learning.
ⓐ repeat ⓑ avoid ⓒ neglect ⓓ deny
30. He was a strong .... in the power of books and supported many young writers.
ⓐ belief ⓑ believe ⓒ believer ⓓ beliefs
31. There are often differences in people's .... and ways of doing things.
ⓐ beliefs ⓑ believes ⓒ believers ⓓ believer
32. It's hard to .... there's anything wrong with him - he looks so healthy.
ⓐ belief ⓑ believe ⓒ believer ⓓ a believer
33. His battle against cancer has strengthened his .... in God.
ⓐ belief ⓑ believes ⓒ believers ⓓ believer

Exercise 3 Synonyms & Antonyms المرادفات والمتضادات

34. .... is an antonym to gentle.
ⓐ Polite ⓑ Rude ⓒ Respected ⓓ Nice
35. Provide is a/an .... for supply.
ⓐ opposite ⓑ short ⓒ antonym ⓓ synonym
36. I decided to follow her advice and go to bed early. Follow is a synonym for ....
ⓐ obey ⓑ break ⓒ neglect ⓓ avoid
37. I didn't ignore her intentionally - I just didn't recognize her .... is an antonym to ignore.
ⓐ Undervalue ⓑ Provide ⓒ Achieve ⓓ Consider
38. "My grandmother had a strong influence on my early childhood." What does the word 'influence' mean in this sentence?
ⓐ affect ⓑ effect ⓒ effective ⓓ effectively
39. "We've achieved some marvellous results with this new drug." The word 'achieve' here can be replaced by ....
ⓐ miscarry ⓑ operation ⓒ accomplish ⓓ miss



Exercise 4 Choose two Answers اختر إجابتين

40. It's important to show .... for other people's opinions.
   ⓐ courage ⓑ respect ⓒ dislike ⓓ appreciation ⓔ jealousy
41. You should never be rude to your friends. "Rude" is an antonym for........... .
   ⓐ lazy ⓑ harsh ⓒ polite ⓓ generous ⓔ decent
42. What a difficult question! "Difficult" is opposite in meaning to "..........." and "........... ."
   ⓐ complex ⓑ simple ⓒ high ⓓ easy ⓔ proper
43. What is the .... of climate change on human activities?
   ⓐ cause ⓑ influence ⓒ decrease ⓓ effect ⓔ proof
44. He was admired for his loyalty to his colleagues. "Loyalty" is similar in meaning to......
   ⓐ envy ⓑ popularity ⓒ faithfulness ⓓ hatred ⓔ devotion
45. In my..........., reading is the best source of knowledge.
   ⓐ opinion ⓑ review ⓒ view ⓓ interview ⓔ fact

Exercise 5 Various Exercises تمارين متنوعة

46. Shall I .... you an egg, or would you prefer boiled?
   ⓐ flow ⓑ fry ⓒ free ⓓ fly
47. I'm not being lazy - I'm just saving my .... for later.
   ⓐ pressure ⓑ power ⓒ energy ⓓ force
48. It's normal for a family to .... food from one plate.
   ⓐ share ⓑ rude ⓒ feed ⓓ respect
49. In their little boat they planned to voyage to .... lands.
   ⓐ distance ⓑ distant ⓒ dislike ⓓ tent
50. These .... are addictive - I can't stop eating them.
   ⓐ nuts ⓑ beliefs ⓒ questionnaires ⓓ festivals
51. Visitors to the country have been asked to fill in a detailed ....
   ⓐ quiz ⓑ request ⓒ question ⓓ questionnaire
52. The council is .... banning vehicles from the town centre to relieve congestion.
   ⓐ interesting ⓑ considering ⓒ grilling ⓓ frying
53. In a large .... , mix together the flour, sugar and raisins.
   ⓐ knife ⓑ bowl ⓒ spoon ⓓ fork
54. We all hate those who are .... to others.
   ⓐ rude ⓑ modest ⓒ polite ⓓ grateful
55. Do you want your beef fried or .... ?
   ⓐ grilled ⓑ polished ⓒ salt ⓓ grill
56. A lot of stars are keen on attending the Cairo film ....
   ⓐ quiz ⓑ band ⓒ feast ⓓ festival
57. It is .... for the bride to wear a white dress on the day of her wedding.
   ⓐ strange ⓑ unusual ⓒ traditional ⓓ traditionally
58. What do you think I should do to .... my daughter's success?
   ⓐ survive ⓑ celebrate ⓒ rest ⓓ complicate
59. People should never eat beef because cows are .... animals in some countries.
   ⓐ own ⓑ private ⓒ specially ⓓ special
60. It's OK to .... noise while you're eating soup with noodles.
   ⓐ get ⓑ make ⓒ go ⓓ do

61. Think carefully about the questions. What information do you need to find .... ?

ⓐ with ⓑ out ⓒ in ⓓ on

62. When you are ready, decide .... the best time to ask your question.

ⓐ that ⓑ to ⓒ in ⓓ on

63. .... sure you don't have two questions in one.

ⓐ Get ⓑ Give ⓒ Make ⓓ Take

64. When you .... a questionnaire, the type of questions you use is important.

ⓐ get ⓑ solve ⓒ answer ⓓ write

65. Ask all your questions and .... your questionnaire look attractive.

ⓐ spend ⓑ make ⓒ do ⓓ give

66. What is the name of a popular dish .... your country?

ⓐ with ⓑ out ⓒ in ⓓ on

67. Do you like the same snacks now .... you did when you were little?

ⓐ to ⓑ alike ⓒ as ⓓ so

68. Do you spend a lot or a little money .... snacks each day?

ⓐ of ⓑ out ⓒ in ⓓ on

69. The government's policies have not been .... with the voters.

ⓐ interested ⓑ keen ⓒ popular ⓓ famous

70. .... my opinion, this novel is the best novel I have ever read.

ⓐ In ⓑ On ⓒ At ⓓ Of

71. Football is an .... game.

ⓐ indoor ⓑ outdoor ⓒ outdoors ⓓ door

72. Children like eating ice cream because it is ....

ⓐ sweet ⓑ spicy ⓒ salty ⓓ sour

73. I only have time for a .... at lunchtime. I am not hungry.

ⓐ snack ⓑ snake ⓒ shot ⓓ skill

74. I took my .... of the profits.

ⓐ personal ⓑ respect ⓒ party ⓓ share

75. It's quite natural to .... a few doubts just before you get married.

ⓐ experiment ⓑ expert ⓒ experience ⓓ experiences

76. In the first .... the camera moves slowly across the room.

ⓐ sight ⓑ view ⓒ scene ⓓ position

77. He is a sport celebrity. In this sentence "celebrity" means ....

ⓐ fame ⓑ star ⓒ popularity ⓓ celebrated

Exercise 6 King Lear تماريـن على الملك لير

78. Our team was very bad. We didn't .... to win the match.

ⓐ type ⓑ reverse ⓒ observe ⓓ deserve

79. The customer .... that the service was very bad.

ⓐ compared ⓑ complained ⓒ completed ⓓ competed

80. My friend was .... by a young man who pretended to be a sales representative. He was tricked and lost a lot of money.

ⓐ helped ⓑ thanked ⓒ believed ⓓ deceived

81. It is a valuable gold watch; it .... a lot of money!

ⓐ deserves ⓑ preserves ⓒ receives ⓓ deceives

82. There is a fire .... in our factory that we use in case of emergency.

ⓐ exist ⓑ excel ⓒ exit ⓓ excuse

Language

❶ لاحظ عند وضع the قبل الصفة تتحول الى اسم جمع ويأتي بعدها فعل جمع (are - were - have - inf.)

poor	فقير	the poor	الفقراء
brave	شجاع	the brave	الشجعان
disabled	معاق	the disabled	المعاقين
rich	غني	the rich	الأغنياء

❷ لاحظ أن الصفة بمفردها لا يأتي قبلها (a-an) أما إذا جاءت قبل اسم مفرد يعد يأتي قبلها (a-an)

◈ This house is new.
◈ This woman is old.
◈ It is a new house.
◈ She is an old woman.

❸ لاحظ الفرق بين الصفة التي تنتهي بـ ed والتي تنتهي بـ ing:

▸ bored - excited - amazed - interested. نستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي بـ ed كصفة لمستقبل الحدث
نستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي بـ ing كصفة للمسبب للحدث (تستخدم مع العاقل وغير العاقل للوصف) ▸ boring - exciting - amazing – interesting.

❹ لاحظ ترتيب الصفات:

a / an / the / some	opinion	size	age	shape	colour	material	الاسم
	الرأى	الحجم	العمر	الشكل	اللون	المادة الخام	
	nice	small	old	round	red	iron	

◈ I bought a strong big round black wooden table.

Important Notes

❺ لاحظ انه يوجد طرق أخري للتعبير عن المساواة وعدم المساواة:

المساواة
- as + صفة + as
- ... have + the same + اسم + as..
- ... and + ...these + الأقل + the same + than
- .... be similar to ...

◈ Toka is as old as Jana.
= Toka is the same age as Jana. = Toka and Jana are the same age.

❻ يمكن استخدام less قبل الصفة القصيرة:

◈ Ali is less fat than Adel.

❼ يمكن أن نحدد مقدار صفة المقارنة بأن يسبقها كلمات مثل:

much - a lot - a bit - a little - slightly

◈ Toka is much more intelligent than Jana.

❽ كلما .... كلما.

the + صفة مقارنة من الدرجة الثانية + فاعل + فعل , the + صفة مقارنة من الدرجة الثانية + فاعل + فعل

◈ The more I study, the higher marks I get.
◈ The harder you study, the more marks you get.
◈ The less you eat, the thinner you become.
◈ The faster you run, the earlier you arrive.



⑨ استعمال صفات المقارنة حالة ثانية بدلاً من صفات التفضيل حالة ثالثة:

(No girl)

◈ Mai is the most beautiful girl in our family.
☞ No girl in our family is more beautiful than Mai.

⑩ استعمال قاعدة as .... as بدلاً من صفات الحالة الثالثة أو العكس.

(as ... as)

◈ The Nile is the longest river in the world.
☞ No river in the world is as long as the Nile.

(Ahmed ...)

◈ No man in our village is as reliable as Ahmed.
☞ Ahmed is the most reliable man in our village.

⑪ استعمال الصفات مع ever :

اسم / ضمير + is the + صفة حالة ثالثة + اسم + I have ever + p.p.

◈ Toka is the cleverest girl I have ever seen.
◈ Jana is the most beautiful girl I have ever met.

⑫ استعمال الصفات مع never:

I have never + p.p. + a/an + حالة ثانية + اسم + than اسم

◈ I have never met a more beautiful girl than Jana.
◈ I have never met a girl as beautiful as Jana.

⑬ لاحظ هذا التركيب:

the + الصفة + er + of the two + اسم

◈ Toka is the taller of the two girls.

⑭ لاحظ استخدام (most) بدون (the) وهنا تكون بمعنى (very):

◈ I love all my family, but my mum most of all.
◈ I love all my classmates, but I love Ibrahim most.

* بعد صفات الملكية يستخدم التفضيل (most - least - worst - best) بدون the:

◈ His most popular book is Giants.
◈ Her best novel is "Oliver".

⑮ لاحظ استخدام (older / oldest) مع الأشخاص والأشياء ولكن نستخدم (elder / eldest) عند المقارنة داخل نطاق الأسرة:

أكبر من → داخل الأسرة لا تتبع بـ than → elder / older + noun / than
الأكبر → the eldest + noun

◈ He is my elder brother.
◈ Toka is older than Mai.

⑯ نستخدم (farther) عند مقارنة المسافات ولكن نستخدم (further) بمعنى أكثر من ذلك:

◈ Aswan is farther than Beni Suef.
◈ Have you anything further to add?

⑰ لاحظ استخدام الصفة بعد how ولكن الاسم بعد what

How + صفة	How old	How much	How heavy	How high	How tall
= What + اسم	What age	What price	What weight	What height	

⑱ لاحظ الفرق بين الصفة والاسم:

الصفة	young - old	big - small	far - near	expensive - cheap
الاسم	age	size	distance	price



⑲ الصفات القوية يكون معناها أقوى بكثير من الصفات العادية:

Ordinary (عادية)		Strong (قوية)		Ordinary (عادية)		Strong (قوية)	
clever	ماهر	brilliant	رائع	old	قديم	ancient	عتيق
angry	غاضب	furious	غضبان جداً	frightening	مخيف	terrifying	مرعب
bad	سيء	terrible	فظيع	hot	ساخن	boiling	في حالة غليان
big	كبير	enormous	ضخم	tired	متعب	exhausted	مرهق
happy	سعيد	delighted	مسرور	unusual	غير عادي	incredible	خيالي

⑳ لاحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل الصفات العادية: very - rather - fairly - quite - extremely - little

◈ Mr Ahmed is a very good teacher.

◈ I'm very (extremely) tired.

✱ لاحظ أن quite / fairly تعطى معنى إيجابى بينما rather تعطى معني سلبى:

◈ It is rather cold. (I can't bear it.)

◈ It is quite cold. (I can bear it.)

✱ لاحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل الصفات القوية: absolutely - completely - entirely - totally

◈ The man was completely exhausted.

◈ Mr Ahmed is an absolutely amazing teacher.

✱ لاحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل كل من الصفات القوية والعادية: really - pretty

◈ This building is really big / enormous.

✱ لاحظ استخدام (enough) بعد الصفة والظرف وتعطى معنى إيجابى أما (too) تستخدم قبل الصفة والظرف وتعطى معنى سلبى:

◈ He is too weak to lift this bag.

◈ He is strong enough to lift this bag.



1. Ali is (much - more) happier than me.
2. Ali is (more - much) intelligent than me.
3. I have as (many - more) books as Mohamed.
4. I have (more - much) money than Ali.
5. I have (less - little) sugar than Ali.
6. I bought as (little - less) sugar as Ali.
7. I looked bad this morning but Mohamed looked (worse - bad).
8. I am tall but Ali is (taller - the tallest).
9. Who is (taller - the tallest) Ahmed or Ali?
10. Ali is (the younger - the youngest) of the two boys.
11. Ali is (the youngest - the younger) of the three boys.
12. Ali is (older - elder) than his brother.
13. My (elder - older) brother is a doctor.
14. She is the (elder - eldest) of the two daughters.
15. I love all my family but I love my father (most - the most).
16. I like all subjects but I like English (best - the best).
17. For (farther - further) information, call me.
18. I am a (much - bit) happier than Ali.
19. Ali is a (good - better) player in this game than me.





Exercise 1 from Tests أسئلة امتحانات الإدارات

1. Egypt's .... discovery in the last three years is the gas wells in the Mediterranean. إدارة بنها ٢٠٢٢

ⓐ more important ⓑ much more important ⓒ the most important ⓓ most important

2. For .... details, you can contact the principal. الشرقية - إدارة نقادة ٢٠٢٢

ⓐ farther ⓑ further ⓒ furthest ⓓ far

3. The younger you are, the .... freedom you have. إدارة زفتى ٢٠٢٢

ⓐ most ⓑ best ⓒ more ⓓ much

4. Dina's dress is .... more beautiful than Aya's. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

ⓐ far ⓑ farther ⓒ lot ⓓ very

5. Of the twins, Eman is the .... إدارة عزبة البرج ٢٠٢٢

ⓐ tall ⓑ tallest ⓒ much taller ⓓ taller

6. Laptops are becoming .... popular nowadays. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

ⓐ less and more ⓑ much and more ⓒ more and less ⓓ more and more

Exercise 2 Longman أسئلة موقع لونجمان

7. My brother enjoys quick thinking; he usually reacts .... all the other members of our family. LM

ⓐ more quick than ⓑ more quickly than ⓒ so quickly as ⓓ less quickly than

8. The Pharaohs' Golden Parade is .... majestic than any other. People enjoyed watching it all over the world. LM

ⓐ far more ⓑ lot ⓒ exactly as ⓓ less

9. Adel isn't as old as Hatim. Adel is really........... . LM

ⓐ young ⓑ older ⓒ youngest ⓓ old

10. My friend usually buys the same colour of clothes .... I do. LM

ⓐ like ⓑ as ⓒ exact ⓓ such as

11. Who is the .... of the two boys? LM

ⓐ tallest ⓑ taller ⓒ taller than ⓓ more taller

12. I will try .... to improve my fluency in English. LM

ⓐ my hard ⓑ my hardest ⓒ the hardest ⓓ hardly

13. The faster you drive, the .... it is. LM

ⓐ dangerous ⓑ more dangerous ⓒ most dangerous ⓓ least dangerous

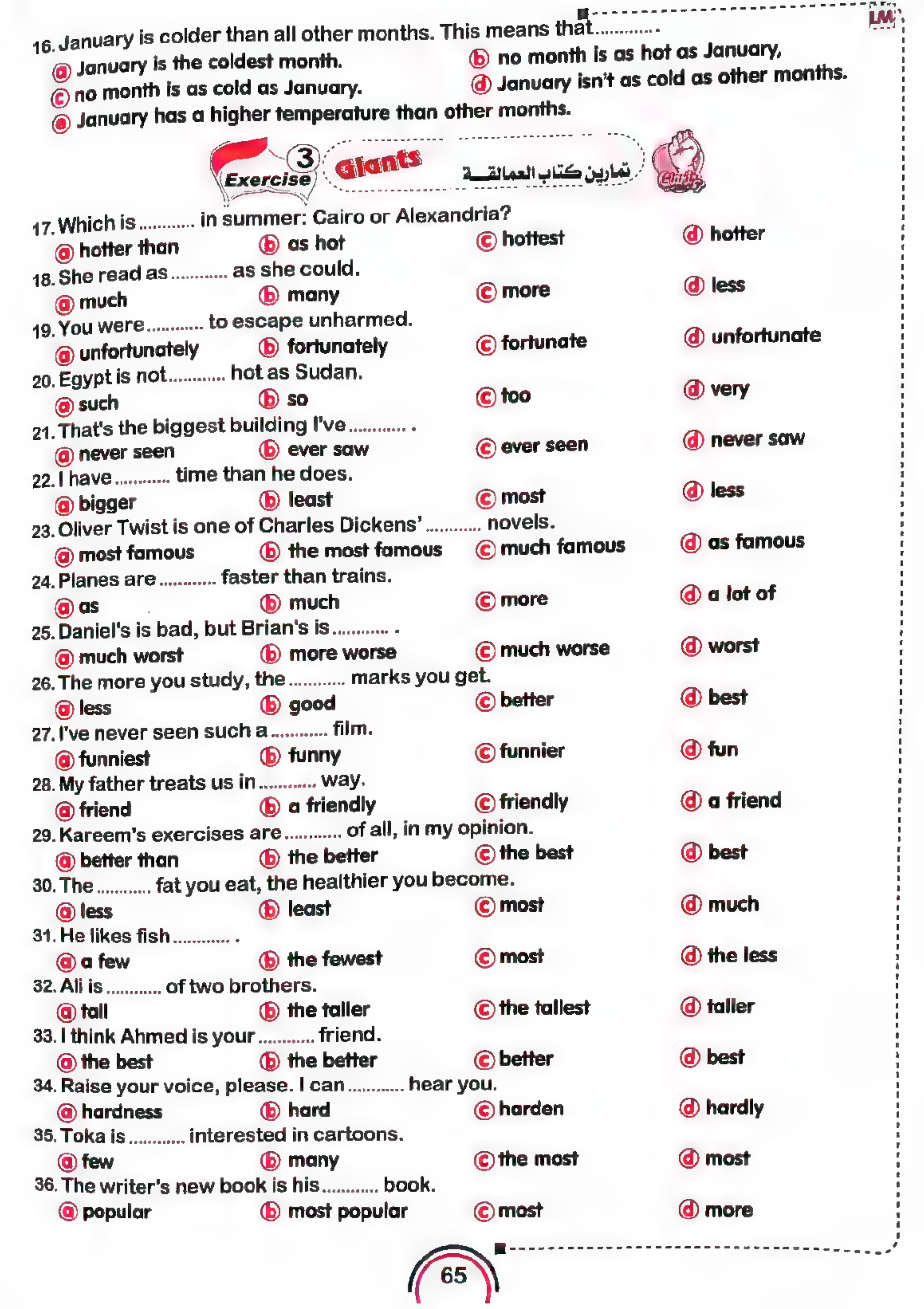
14. A plane is .... than a car. (Choose two) LM

ⓐ a lot faster ⓑ less faster ⓒ a bit slower ⓓ much faster ⓔ more faster

15. No one in the class is as short as Tamer. This means that .... (Choose two) LM

ⓐ Tamer is the tallest boy in the class.
ⓑ Tamer is the same age as all the boys in the class.
ⓒ all the boys in the class are shorter than Tamer.
ⓓ no one in the class is the same height as Tamer.





16. January is colder than all other months. This means that............
ⓐ January is the coldest month.
ⓑ no month is as hot as January.
ⓒ no month is as cold as January.
ⓓ January isn't as cold as other months.
ⓔ January has a higher temperature than other months.

Exercise 3 Giants تمارين كتاب العمالقة

17. Which is .... in summer: Cairo or Alexandria?
ⓐ hotter than ⓑ as hot ⓒ hottest ⓓ hotter

18. She read as .... as she could.
ⓐ much ⓑ many ⓒ more ⓓ less

19. You were .... to escape unharmed.
ⓐ unfortunately ⓑ fortunately ⓒ fortunate ⓓ unfortunate

20. Egypt is not .... hot as Sudan.
ⓐ such ⓑ so ⓒ too ⓓ very

21. That's the biggest building I've ....
ⓐ never seen ⓑ ever saw ⓒ ever seen ⓓ never saw

22. I have .... time than he does.
ⓐ bigger ⓑ least ⓒ most ⓓ less

23. Oliver Twist is one of Charles Dickens' .... novels.
ⓐ most famous ⓑ the most famous ⓒ much famous ⓓ as famous

24. Planes are .... faster than trains.
ⓐ as ⓑ much ⓒ more ⓓ a lot of

25. Daniel's is bad, but Brian's is ....
ⓐ much worst ⓑ more worse ⓒ much worse ⓓ worst

26. The more you study, the .... marks you get.
ⓐ less ⓑ good ⓒ better ⓓ best

27. I've never seen such a .... film.
ⓐ funniest ⓑ funny ⓒ funnier ⓓ fun

28. My father treats us in .... way.
ⓐ friend ⓑ a friendly ⓒ friendly ⓓ a friend

29. Kareem's exercises are .... of all, in my opinion.
ⓐ better than ⓑ the better ⓒ the best ⓓ best

30. The .... fat you eat, the healthier you become.
ⓐ less ⓑ least ⓒ most ⓓ much

31. He likes fish ....
ⓐ a few ⓑ the fewest ⓒ most ⓓ the less

32. Ali is .... of two brothers.
ⓐ tall ⓑ the taller ⓒ the tallest ⓓ taller

33. I think Ahmed is your .... friend.
ⓐ the best ⓑ the better ⓒ better ⓓ best

34. Raise your voice, please. I can .... hear you.
ⓐ hardness ⓑ hard ⓒ harden ⓓ hardly

35. Toka is .... interested in cartoons.
ⓐ few ⓑ many ⓒ the most ⓓ most

36. The writer's new book is his .... book.
ⓐ popular ⓑ most popular ⓒ most ⓓ more

37. The shirt wasn't the .... price as I had thought at first.
ⓐ as ⓑ same ⓒ most ⓓ more

38. He .... to find a job, but he had no luck.
ⓐ tried hard ⓑ tried hardly ⓒ hardly tried ⓓ hard tried

39. Ali is a fast runner. I can't run as fast as ....
ⓐ he ⓑ him ⓒ he is ⓓ her

40. You need to be .... tall to be a good basketball player.
ⓐ absolutely ⓑ extremely ⓒ completely ⓓ entirely

41. He bought .... car.
ⓐ fastest ⓑ fast ⓒ a faster ⓓ faster

42. In my opinion, fish tastes .... better than oysters.
ⓐ lots of ⓑ lot of ⓒ a lot ⓓ lot

43. Which is one of .... traditional dishes in the UK?
ⓐ less ⓑ more ⓒ the most ⓓ most

44. The .... you study, the higher marks you get.
ⓐ more ⓑ least ⓒ most ⓓ much

45. Is food in the UK .... or worse than it used to be?
ⓐ better ⓑ best ⓒ good ⓓ the best

46. I can't stand this person. He is ....
ⓐ boredom ⓑ bored ⓒ boring ⓓ boringly

47. She has been ill, but she certainly .... today.
ⓐ look best ⓑ looks better ⓒ looks best ⓓ is best

48. This pullover is too big. I want a .... one.
ⓐ most small ⓑ more small ⓒ smaller ⓓ smallest

49. My detergent washes much .... than that.
ⓐ white ⓑ more whiter ⓒ most white ⓓ whiter

50. My wife is .... younger than me.
ⓐ a little ⓑ less ⓒ more ⓓ few

51. Our Prophet Mohammed is .... unique character.
ⓐ more ⓑ most ⓒ an ⓓ a

52. Going by plane is .... more expensive than going by bus.
ⓐ a lot ⓑ a lot of ⓒ lots of ⓓ many

53. I love all my family, but I love my father .... of all.
ⓐ more ⓑ much ⓒ the most ⓓ most

54. Today is .... hotter than yesterday.
ⓐ a little ⓑ little ⓒ less ⓓ the least

55. Aya is the same .... as Diana.
ⓐ old ⓑ young ⓒ age ⓓ older

56. Drugs were found in the athlete's body after he had .... won the race.
ⓐ fairly ⓑ unfairly ⓒ fair ⓓ unfair

57. Who is the .... boy, Ahmed or Ali?
ⓐ old ⓑ oldest ⓒ older ⓓ as old as

58. Of all my roommates I like Nada ....
ⓐ good ⓑ the best ⓒ best ⓓ better

59. All complaints will be dealt with quickly and ....
ⓐ fur ⓑ fear ⓒ fair ⓓ fairly

60. The sooner he moves out, ... it will be for all of us.

ⓐ the best ⓑ good ⓒ the better ⓓ best

61. What a silly thing! She is .... older than I thought.
ⓐ fairly ⓑ quite ⓒ much ⓓ rather

62. He was offered the job because he was .... candidate.
ⓐ the best ⓑ good ⓒ the better ⓓ best

63. Which is the .... animal the lion or the elephant?
ⓐ higher ⓑ taller ⓒ tallest ⓓ highest

64. I have .... books than our friends.
ⓐ much ⓑ few ⓒ fewer ⓓ little

65. English is the .... subject.
ⓐ easier ⓑ easiest ⓒ more easy ⓓ most easy

66. Adel isn't as old as Hatim. Adel is ....
ⓐ younger ⓑ older ⓒ youngest ⓓ oldest

67. It is the .... nature documentary of the two I have.
ⓐ best ⓑ better ⓒ the better ⓓ the best

68. You didn't do as .... work as I did.
ⓐ much ⓑ least ⓒ less ⓓ more

69. The tree is .... than the building over there.
ⓐ more taller ⓑ very tall ⓒ a bit taller ⓓ the tallest

70. Why does he always come to see me at .... possible time?
ⓐ bad ⓑ the worst ⓒ worse ⓓ badly

71. Ola's hair isn't as long as it used to be. She used to have .... hair.
ⓐ a longer ⓑ longest ⓒ the longest ⓓ longer

72. This book is brilliant; it is .... than the last book he wrote!
ⓐ slightly worse ⓑ far better ⓒ almost better ⓓ not better

73. This is the .... test I've ever taken.
ⓐ hard ⓑ harder ⓒ less hard ⓓ hardest

74. Alexandria is the second .... city in Egypt.
ⓐ bigger ⓑ bigger than ⓒ the biggest ⓓ biggest

75. He is .... driver in the company.
ⓐ less careful ⓑ more careful ⓒ the most careful ⓓ careful





Exercise on Translation

1. لم يعد التعليم التقليدي مناسبا للأجيال الجديدة ومواكبا للتطور المستمر في جميع مجالات الحياة الحديثة. لذلك بدأت وزارة التربية والتعليم في النظام الحديث للتعليم وخاصة في المرحلة الثانوية.

الغربية ٢٠٢٢

ⓐ Classic education isn't any longer suitable for new generations and keeping pace with continuous development in all areas of life. Therefore, the Ministry of Education started the modern system of education, especially at the secondary level.

ⓑ Traditional education is no longer suitable for new generations and coping with the continuous development in all fields of modern life. Therefore, the Ministry of Education started the new system of education especially for the secondary stage.

ⓒ Traditional education isn't suitable to new grandchildren and keeping pace with continuous development in all parts of new life. Therefore, the Ministry of Education started the modern system of education, especially at the secondary grade.

ⓓ Education in traditional way is not suitable for new grandchildren and keeping go with continuous development in all ways of new life. Therefore, the Ministry of Education started the modern system of education, especially at the secondary grade.

2. يعرف الإنسان جيداً أن الحياة خليط من النجاح والفشل السعادة والحزن ولكن في كل الأحوال يجب أن تكون مليئة بالإنجازات.

إدارة إطسا ٢٠٢٢

ⓐ Man knows well that life is a mixture of success and failure, happiness and sadness but in all cases it should be filled with achievements.

ⓑ Man knows well that life is full of success and failure, happiness and sadness but in some cases it should be filled with achievements.

ⓒ The man knows well that life is a mixture of success and failure, happiness and sadness but in all cases it should be filled with achievements.

ⓓ A man knows well that life is a mixture of success and failure, happiness and sadness but in all cases it should be filled with achievements.

3. Although the internet became the most important means for knowledge terrorists use it to spread their evil beliefs. It helps them find young people to enlist them for their violent actions.

(أ) بالرغم من أن الإنترنت لم يصبح فقط أهم وسيلة المعرفة فإن الإرهابيين يستخدمونه لنشر أفكارهم الشريرة كما تساعدهم أيضا على الوصول للشباب واستهدافهم بأفعالهم الشريرة.

(ب) بالرغم من أن الإنترنت أصبح من أهم وسائل المعرفة فإن الإرهابيين يستخدمونه لنشر معتقداتهم الشريرة كما تساعدهم أيضا على الوصول للشباب وتجنيدهم لأفعالهم الشريرة.

(ج) على الرغم من أن الإنترنت أصبح أهم وسيلة للمعرفة فإن الإرهابيين يستخدمونه لنشر معتقداتهم الشريرة و يساعدهم في العثور على الشباب لتجنيدهم لأعمالهم العنيفة.

(د) على الرغم من أن الإنترنت أصبح فقط من أهم وسائل المعرفة إلا أن الإرهابيين لا يستخدمونه لنشر فكرهم الشريرة. وقد يساعدهم في العثور على الشباب لاستهدافهم بأعمالهم العنيفة.

4. Sport should be a major part of the school day. Sport is important because it helps to teach different skills to students like leadership, patience, teamwork, and social skills.

إدارة نشا ٢٠٢٢

(أ) كان يجب أن تكون الرياضة جزءاً رئيسياً من اليوم الدراسي؛ والرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم مهارات مختلفة للطلاب مثل القيادة والصبر وجهد الفريق والمهارات الاجتماعية.

(ب) يجب أن تكون الرياضة جزءاً رئيسياً من اليوم الدراسي؛ والرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم مهارات مختلفة للطلاب مثل القيادة والصبر والعمل الجماعي والمهارات الاجتماعية.

(ج) يجب أن تكون الرياضة جزءاً فرعياً من اليوم الدراسي؛ والرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم مهارات مختلفة للطلاب مثل القيادة والمثابرة والعمل الجماعي والمهارات الاجتماعية.

(د) يجب أن تكون الرياضة جزءاً رئيسياً من اليوم الدراسي؛ والرياضة مهمة لأنها تساعد على تعليم مواهب مختلفة للطلاب مثل التقييد والصبر والعمل الجماعي والمهارات الاجتماعية.

5. Countries try hard to preserve the environment. Man's activities have caused disasters as the global warming and the climate change, which threaten our lives.

إدارة العجمي ٢٠٢٢

(أ) تحاول الدول المحافظة على البيئة. فنشاط الرجل سبب الكوارث مثل الدفء العالمي وتغير المناخ الذي يهدد حياتنا.

(ب) تحاول الدول جاهدة المحافظة على البيئة. وقد تسبب أنشطة الإنسان الكوارث مثل الاحتباس الحراري وتغير المناخ الذي يهدد أن نعيش.

(ج) تحاول الدول جاهدة أن تحافظ على البيئة. وقد تسبب النشاط الإنساني في الكوارث مثل الاحتباس الحراري وتغير المناخ الذي يهدد حياتنا.

(د) تحاول الدول بصعوبة المحافظة على البيئة. وقد تسبب النشاط الإنساني في الحد من الاحتباس الحراري وتغير الطقس الذي يهدد حياتنا.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Did you know that our Earth has a special day? Every year on the 22nd of April, we celebrate Earth Day. On this day, we remind ourselves and others how important the Earth is to look after it. We have no other home.

Earth Day was the idea of the American Senator Gaylord Nelson who didn't want to see our Earth suffer. Rivers and seas were getting dirty, many of our plants and animals died out. Therefore, he decided to respond and create a special day to take care of Earth. He started by writing letters to schools, to inform students and teachers about his idea. He hoped that young people around the country would be positive. Fortunately, they did!

As a result, in 1970, twenty million people across America celebrated the first Earth Day. People all over the country made promises to look after the environment. Since then, Earth Day has been celebrated all over the world.

Today, on Earth Day people organise events such as concerts, tree-planting camps and collecting money. Children also help design and make things at school. Now all of us promise to try to turn everyday into Earth Day!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Earth Day was created because the Earth was ....
   (a) getting clean (b) improving (c) developing (d) getting polluted
2. "Both, died out" and .... are alike.
   (a) found (b) disappeared (c) arriving (d) appeared
3. What is the main idea of the passage?
   (a) Collecting money for charities.
   (b) Planting trees and cleaning our streets.
   (c) Giving parties and concerts celebrating the earth.
   (d) Taking our responsibility towards the environment.
4. What does the underlined word "Fortunately" mean?
   (a) Luck (b) Luckily (c) Lucky (d) Lock
5. What conclusion do you think is the best for the LAST paragraph?
   (a) None of us are keen on environmental issues.
   (b) None of us are interested in the planet.
   (c) Nearly all of us are ready to help the environment.
   (d) A few of us look after the environment.
6. Why do you think the earth is important?
   (a) Because it is rich in natural resources.
   (b) Because we only have one earth.
   (c) Because we can't live without oxygen.
   (d) Because living in space is much expensive.
7. What would happen if rivers became polluted?
   (a) We would catch fish easily.
   (b) We would lose rich soil.
   (c) We would poison ourselves by drinking polluted water.
   (d) We would pollute the earth.
8. Earth Day idea first appeared in ....
   (a) Asia (b) America (c) Africa (d) Europe

Write an Essay of about (180) words on the following:

"How do you think social media affects the lives of people nowadays?"

....

....

....



A Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I like pizza so much .It is so............ .
   ⓐ tasteful ⓑ taste ⓒ nasty ⓓ delicious
2. My sister likes new dresses so much. She is............ .
   ⓐ fashionable ⓑ fashion ⓒ old-fashioned ⓓ cushion
3. This man is not............ as Adel.
   ⓐ strong ⓑ as strong ⓒ stronger ⓓ the strongest
4. The following............ is taken from Shakespeare's play "Hamlet".
   ⓐ exact ⓑ extract ⓒ distract ⓓ attract
5. The team has been training hard in............ for the big game
   ⓐ prepare ⓑ preparatory ⓒ preparation ⓓ proportion
6. I asked Fady to clean the car and he did............
   ⓐ a well job ⓑ a good job ⓒ the job good ⓓ well the job
7. I can............ this questionnaire easily and quickly because all questions are easy.
   ⓐ do ⓑ make ⓒ take ⓓ give
8. Cabbage is one of the most important............ in making cabbage fingers.
   ⓐ elements ⓑ ingredients ⓒ factors ⓓ components
9. The warmer the weather is, the............ I feel.
   ⓐ good ⓑ better ⓒ best ⓓ more good
10. We should use............ time we have to discuss Adel's proposal.
    ⓐ the little of ⓑ little ⓒ the few ⓓ the little
11. Ahmed is............ runner in the team.
    ⓐ fast ⓑ faster ⓒ fastest ⓓ the fastest
12. The room is............ untidy.
    ⓐ fairly ⓑ rather ⓒ hardly ⓓ scarcely
13. This is his second............ successful film.
    ⓐ more ⓑ the most ⓒ the most ⓓ most
14. The more you exercise,............ you get.
    ⓐ the fittest ⓑ fitter ⓒ the fitter ⓓ more fitter
15. He is a very sociable student. He gets on............ all the school students and teachers.
    ⓐ for ⓑ at ⓒ with ⓓ by

B Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In Egypt, the tourism industry has come to hold a position of great importance lately. It is felt that it could help increase the national income. In some European countries, tourism has brought in millions of dollars yearly, although they lack the natural and historical attractions we have in Egypt. We could, for instance, establish tourist villages for children on the Red Sea. We could teach fishing, swimming, diving and sailing there. Another good idea would be a village in the New Valley for horse riding. And what about villages for people with health problems like rheumatism? The warm dry climate of Aswan and Helwan would help them get better. Our tourist today wants efficient and friendly service. He would probably prefer to try our samples of our local food rather than to eat the international meals which are served in some places. It must also be remembered that most tourists nowadays are seldom rich. Many of them are students or hardworking employees. So what is needed is not expensive hotels but clean comfortable places to sleep and eat in at reasonable prices. This, too, would encourage Egyptians to travel more and more around their lovely country.

16. The writer feels that Egypt has got .... the other countries.
ⓐ less attractions than
ⓑ the least attractions of
ⓒ the same attractions as
ⓓ more attractions than

17. According to the passage, if someone has pains in his muscles and joints, he should go to ....
ⓐ Europe
ⓑ Aswan
ⓒ The Red Sea
ⓓ The New Valley

18. The underlined pronoun it in the first paragraph refer to ....
ⓐ Egypt
ⓑ tourism
ⓒ monument
ⓓ other countries

19. The synonym of 'establish' is ....
ⓐ sit down
ⓑ set up
ⓒ demolish
ⓓ vanish

20. The best title for this passage is " .... in Egypt".
ⓐ Tourism
ⓑ Industry
ⓒ Farming
ⓓ National income

21. The word "boost" can replace " .... " in this passage.
ⓐ hold
ⓑ efficient
ⓒ expensive
ⓓ increase

22. Most tourists nowadays have .... income.
ⓐ high
ⓑ low
ⓒ average
ⓓ excellent

23. "Rheumatism" is a / an ....
ⓐ equipment
ⓑ historic attraction
ⓒ disease
ⓓ hotel

C Writing

24. A: Translate the following into Arabic.

تعانى العديد من الشعوب فى أفريقيا من المجاعة التى تقتل الآلاف منهم وخاصة الأطفال، لذا إنها لمسئولية الدول العظمى أن تساهم فى حل تلك المشكلة الخطيرة.

LM

ⓐ Many African nations suffer from famine that kills thousands of people, especially children. Therefore, it is the responsibility of the great nations to contribute to solving this critical problem.

ⓑ Many African nations suffer from famine that kills millions of people, especially children. Therefore, it is the responsibility of the great nations to contribute to solving this critical problem.

ⓒ Many African nations suffer from famine that kills thousands of people, especially children. Therefore, it is the responsible of the great nations to contribute to solving this critical problem.

ⓓ Much African nations suffers from famine that kills thousands of people, especially children. Therefore, it is the responsibility of the great nations to contribute to solving this critical problem.

25. B: Translate the following into English.

Russia and Ukraine are some of the largest producers of wheat in the world. So, experts believe that the Russian-Ukraine war has greatly affected food prices all over the world. LM

(أ) روسيا وأوكرانيا من أكبر منتجي القمح في العالم. ولكن يعتقد الخبراء أن الحرب الروسية الأوكرانية أثرت بشكل كبير على أسعار الغذاء في جميع أنحاء الأرض.

(ب) روسيا وأوكرانيا من أكبر منتجي القمح في العالم. لذلك، يعتقد الخبراء أن الحرب الروسية الأوكرانية سوف تؤثر بشكل كبير على أسعار الغذاء في جميع أنحاء العالم.

(ج) روسيا وأوكرانيا اكبر من منتجي القمح في العالم. لذلك، يعتقد الخبراء أن الحرب الروسية الأوكرانية أثرت بشكل كبير على أسعار الغذاء في جميع أنحاء العالم.

(د) روسيا وأوكرانيا من أكبر منتجي القمح في العالم. لذلك، يعتقد الخبراء أن الحرب الروسية الأوكرانية أثرت بشكل كبير على أسعار الغذاء في جميع أنحاء العالم.

26. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

"Fast food"





أزهر المنيا ٢٠٢٢

1) Complete the following dialogue: (2 Marks)

Hazem I have heard that you always revise at night, ❶ ....?
Emad Yes. That's right.
Hazem ❷ ....?
Emad One advantage is that it's much quieter at night.
Hazem ❸ ....?
Emad A negative side is that I ❹ ....

أزهر سوهاج ٢٠٢٢

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (5 Marks)

Internet addiction has become one of the serious problems especially among young people over the last few years. Spending too much time surfing websites or chatting with friends affects physical and mental health negatively. They spend their precious time doing unimportant things and as a result they neglect their duties. Students lose concentration on their study and become more likely to hate their lessons. Workers also don't concentrate on their jobs and make frequent and sometimes big mistakes. People who are addicted to the internet also lose their ability to communicate face to face with other people. They also get irritable when they lose their access to the internet.

A Answer the following questions:

1. When has the Internet addiction become a problem?
   ....
2. What happens to students when they become addicted to the internet?
   ....
3. When do people addicted to the internet become irritable?
   ....

B Choose the right answer:

4. Spending too much time surfing the internet affects health ....
   ⓐ positively ⓑ negatively ⓒ rarely ⓓ slightly
5. Workers addicted to the internet make .... mistakes.
   ⓐ few ⓑ minor ⓒ easy ⓓ frequent

3. A- Translate into Arabic: (1 Mark)

أزهر الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢

Hard work leads to success in life.

....
....

B-Translate into English: (1 Mark)

يجب أن نحافظ على نظافة البيئة.

....
....

مراجعة شهر أكتوبر على الوحدة الأولى والثانية

Choose two correct answers out of five options given:

1. The evidence was not really .... enough to let the prisoner free.
   ⓐ persuasive ⓑ detective ⓒ noble ⓓ reflective ⓔ convincing
2. The firefighters .... quickly when they heard the alarm.
   ⓐ pulled ⓑ responded ⓒ destroyed ⓓ reacted ⓔ infected
3. Mr. Salama asked his students to follow the rules properly. The antonyms of "follow" are ....
   ⓐ obey ⓑ rescue ⓒ disobey ⓓ break ⓔ resolve
4. Tennis is less popular than football all over the world. The synonyms of the word "popular" here are ....
   ⓐ special ⓑ common ⓒ private ⓓ personal ⓔ hacked
5. You mustn't do CPR unless the person is lying on their back on a flat surface such as the floor. We can replace the word "flat" by ....
   ⓐ plane ⓑ striped ⓒ straight ⓓ exact ⓔ especial
6. I have received .... e-mail from my friend John recently.
   ⓐ longer ⓑ the longer ⓒ the longest ⓓ long ⓔ a long
7. Our victory in 1973 was an unforgettable ....
   ⓐ event ⓑ eventual ⓒ eventually ⓓ incident ⓔ occurrence
8. We can .... our immune system by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables.
   ⓐ improve ⓑ reduce ⓒ boast ⓓ boost ⓔ paste
9. CPR is .... when an ill or injured person is not able to breathe.
   ⓐ made ⓑ done ⓒ gone ⓓ taken ⓔ performed
10. Our science teacher always supports us so much . "Support" here is an antonym for "..........." "...........".
    ⓐ assist ⓑ disappoint ⓒ assess ⓓ let ⓔ let down
11. Charities .... money for helping poor people.
    ⓐ raise ⓑ decrease ⓒ lose ⓓ copy ⓔ collect
12. When something isn't complicated. It is ....
    ⓐ easy ⓑ difficult ⓒ hard ⓓ simple ⓔ expensive
13. Students get .... when there are more than six options to choose from.
    ⓐ hungry ⓑ confused ⓒ confusing ⓓ tiring ⓔ distracted
14. The firefighters .... quickly when they heard the alarm.
    ⓐ pulled ⓑ responded ⓒ destroyed ⓓ reacted ⓔ infected
15. Vegetables can help protect babies .... infection.
    ⓐ for ⓑ against ⓒ in ⓓ out ⓔ from
16. It is not easy to be employable these days unless you .... your skills.
    ⓐ decrease ⓑ remove ⓒ improve ⓓ prove ⓔ develop
17. Mr. Ali asked his students to follow the rules properly. The antonym of "follow" are ....
    ⓐ obey ⓑ rescue ⓒ disobey ⓓ break ⓔ resolve
18. It's important to follow the instructions carefully for .... CPR.
    ⓐ performing ⓑ making ⓒ saving ⓓ doing ⓔ giving
19. Some employees were given the .... of retiring early.
    ⓐ optician ⓑ option ⓒ necessity ⓓ loss ⓔ choice

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20. He was an experienced player who was seeking to improve his............ .
ⓐ perforce ⓑ skull ⓒ perform ⓓ performance

21. She .... the present and tied it with ribbon.
ⓐ wrapped ⓑ roped ⓒ infected ⓓ injured

22. The word " boost " is an antonym to the word............ .
ⓐ support ⓑ strengthen ⓒ discourage ⓓ improve

23. A German company............ with a Swiss firm to develop the product.
ⓐ cooperative ⓑ collaborated ⓒ collaboration ⓓ cooperation

24. The family are struggling to .... on very little money.
ⓐ survival ⓑ life ⓒ survive ⓓ alive

25. This year a .... drought has ruined the crops.
ⓐ servant ⓑ severe ⓒ server ⓓ serve

26. We live close .... the railway line.
ⓐ out ⓑ off ⓒ about ⓓ to

27. The criminal was made .... up by the brave officer.
ⓐ gives ⓑ given ⓒ give ⓓ to give

28. I was so .... that I slept through the second half of the film.
ⓐ excited ⓑ bored ⓒ boring ⓓ exciting

29. We're all looking forward .... you again.
ⓐ of seeing ⓑ to seeing ⓒ to see ⓓ seeing

30. There's a............ in our family that we have a party on New Year's Eve.
ⓐ traditional ⓑ traditionally ⓒ routine ⓓ tradition

31. The dish is made to a traditional Italian ....
ⓐ recent ⓑ recipe ⓒ receive ⓓ receipt

32. The adjective "tasty" is similar in meaning to the adjective "............ ".
ⓐ delicious ⓑ awful ⓒ terrible ⓓ salty

33. Visitors to the country have been asked to fill in a detailed ....
ⓐ recipe ⓑ event ⓒ questionnaire ⓓ occasion

34. The two species are in fact .... different from one another.
ⓐ quick ⓑ quiet ⓒ quite ⓓ quit

35. They had a shared .... in the power of education.
ⓐ beliefs ⓑ believed ⓒ believer ⓓ belief

36. She always pays to use the best............ when cooking.
ⓐ elements ⓑ components ⓒ factors ⓓ ingredients

37. They .... a wonderful meal to more than fifty delegates.
ⓐ believed ⓑ served ⓒ employed ⓓ survived

38. The server is designed to store huge .... of data.
ⓐ amounts ⓑ mounts ⓒ moments ⓓ qualities

39. The doctor pressed tightly on the wound to stop the............ .
ⓐ breeding ⓑ leading ⓒ blading ⓓ bleeding

40. My father often .... together with his friends after work.
ⓐ goes ⓑ makes ⓒ gets ⓓ pretends

41. Our father used to invite us to .... on Fridays.
ⓐ make out ⓑ fall out ⓒ eat out ⓓ find out

42. The government took quick actions to .... the economy.
ⓐ stop ⓑ boost ⓒ remain ⓓ make

43. Our grandfather told us............ an interesting story.
ⓐ very ⓑ too ⓒ such ⓓ so

44. It took me a long time to .... him to do the right thing.
ⓐ persuade ⓑ have ⓒ make ⓓ let
45. I just found .... that he was cheating on the test.
ⓐ to ⓑ on ⓒ of ⓓ out
46. I can't decide .... who to invite.
ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ to ⓓ that
47. He .... right to punish you as you did badly in your exams.
ⓐ is ⓑ was ⓒ has ⓓ had
48. When did she become .... in literature?
ⓐ interested ⓑ keen ⓒ fond ⓓ worried
49. We know what .... the lake get polluted.
ⓐ gets ⓑ makes ⓒ causes ⓓ allows
50. We know what .... the lake to get polluted.
ⓐ lets ⓑ causes ⓒ makes ⓓ reasons
51. We had to .... lots of sweets for my sister's birthday party.
ⓐ prepare ⓑ compare ⓒ appear ⓓ disappear
52. The quantity of something is called........... .
ⓐ amount ⓑ mountain ⓒ mount ⓓ quality
53. A/An .... is part of the body made of different tissues that performs a particular task.
ⓐ column ⓑ organ ⓒ member ⓓ hurt
54. My son is hardworking, so he .... to win a prize.
ⓐ reserves ⓑ deserves ⓒ receives ⓓ supports
55. Transplantation of .... from living donors raises ethical issues.
ⓐ organs ⓑ oranges ⓒ members ⓓ originals
56. She was told to stay in bed to rest her .... back.
ⓐ jar ⓑ injure ⓒ injury ⓓ injured
57. The plant fibre has incredible strength and........... .
ⓐ trophy ⓑ collaboration ⓒ soft ⓓ resilience
58. The word "encourage" is similar in meaning to the word........... .
ⓐ insult ⓑ hinder ⓒ prevent ⓓ inspire
59. As a driver, you should be able to .... first aid in case of emergency.
ⓐ consume ⓑ build ⓒ perform ⓓ prove
60. Mr. Adel applies the latest .... in business management.
ⓐ pioneers ⓑ emergency ⓒ techniques ⓓ resilience
61. The charity .... money for helping poor people.
ⓐ raises ⓑ rescues ⓒ decreases ⓓ plays
62. Building more modern hotels is needed to .... tourism.
ⓐ combat ⓑ boost ⓒ fight ⓓ discourage
63. The immune system comes from the cells and .... that work together.
ⓐ organs ⓑ senses ⓒ attentions ⓓ minds
64. We usually get together on festivals, it's a ....
ⓐ traditional ⓑ tradition ⓒ old fashioned ⓓ modern
65. The immune system sends .... to find the virus that attacks your body.
ⓐ soils ⓑ cells ⓒ sales ⓓ seals
66. A person who is .... has an illness and could pass it to those around him.
ⓐ infection ⓑ infected ⓒ infectious ⓓ infectiously
67. What's her .... ? Is she a professor or just a doctor?
ⓐ headline ⓑ head ⓒ address ⓓ title
68. He got a lung .... which did not respond to treatment.
ⓐ perfection ⓑ infection ⓒ affection ⓓ injection

69. We're having a party to............ Rania's birthday.
ⓐ observe ⓑ calculate ⓒ have fun ⓓ celebrate
70. The .... who took part in the Olympics were tested for drugs.
ⓐ athletic ⓑ athletics ⓒ athletes ⓓ reporters
71. The baby boy .... on the floor and soon fell asleep.
ⓐ lain ⓑ lay ⓒ lied ⓓ said
72. We are going to .... after my brother's graduation.
ⓐ collaborate ⓑ celebrate ⓒ contribute ⓓ educate
73. .... is a synonym to very serious.
ⓐ Serve ⓑ Simple ⓒ Severe ⓓ Safe
74. .... , a dog bit me while I was walking.
ⓐ A fortunate ⓑ Fortunate ⓒ Fortunately ⓓ Unfortunately
75. If you're............ about anything, phone my office.
ⓐ confusing ⓑ confusion ⓒ confusingly ⓓ confused
76. The adjective "public" can be the opposite of the adjective "............".
ⓐ common ⓑ strange ⓒ available ⓓ personal
77. The museum's collection............ works of art from all around the world.
ⓐ consists ⓑ excludes ⓒ includes ⓓ contains
78. She admitted that she had .... a mistake.
ⓐ given ⓑ done ⓒ made ⓓ taken
79. Al Daifi is directly............ for the efficient running of the office.
ⓐ responsible ⓑ responsibility ⓒ respond ⓓ responsibilities
80. If you have an .... disease you really should stay home.
ⓐ infectious ⓑ infected ⓒ infection ⓓ infect
81. We are short of time. We .... take a taxi.
ⓐ can't ⓑ needn't ⓒ need ⓓ must
82. It's forbidden to park your car here. You .... park here.
ⓐ must ⓑ should ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ mustn't
83. I .... to go to Madrid last month, on a business trip.
ⓐ must ⓑ had ⓒ have ⓓ has
84. Why do you .... go to school on Saturday?
ⓐ has to ⓑ have to ⓒ must ⓓ have
85. I didn't .... ring her up as she did it herself.
ⓐ have to ⓑ could ⓒ must ⓓ had to
86. We will .... start early tomorrow morning.
ⓐ have to ⓑ must ⓒ had to ⓓ has to
87. Does Tom .... do military service in the U.K.?
ⓐ has to ⓑ have to ⓒ must ⓓ ought
88. Of the two girls Mona is the... ....
ⓐ young ⓑ youngest ⓒ younger ⓓ old
89. You .... talk so loudly in the school library. It is not allowed.
ⓐ must ⓑ mustn't ⓒ should ⓓ shouldn't
90. That hotel is .... building in the town.
ⓐ the oldest ⓑ older than ⓒ the oldest ⓓ elder
91. Ali is as tall as Nabil. They are the same............ .
ⓐ length ⓑ age ⓒ height ⓓ width
92. You mustn't take food in your room. It's ....
ⓐ not allowed ⓑ allowed ⓒ legal ⓓ necessary
93. You .... come to the market with me. I can go alone.
ⓐ doesn't have to ⓑ must ⓒ needn't ⓓ mustn't

94. Now that I've bought a car, I .... take the bus to work.
ⓐ needn't ⓑ must ⓒ mustn't ⓓ hadn't

95. She .... stay here. It's banned.
ⓐ has to ⓑ must ⓒ needs to ⓓ mustn't

96. We made a cake. You........... try it. It's lovely.
ⓐ must ⓑ have to ⓒ had to ⓓ need

97. Your boss .... to have been a little more understanding.
ⓐ ought ⓑ should ⓒ have ⓓ must

98. She .... take this medicine because she isn't ill.
ⓐ must ⓑ doesn't have to ⓒ had to ⓓ has to

99. You .... take photos here. It is a military area.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ must ⓒ don't have to ⓓ shouldn't

100. Planes are .... faster than trains.
ⓐ as ⓑ much ⓒ more ⓓ a lot of

101. Hani is the .... of the two brothers.
ⓐ young ⓑ younger ⓒ youngest ⓓ as young as

102. The younger you are, the .... freedom you have.
ⓐ most ⓑ best ⓒ more ⓓ much

103. I .... remember to email Ali today. It's his birthday.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ needn't ⓒ must ⓓ ought

104. You .... park there. It says " No Parking".
ⓐ needn't ⓑ don't need to ⓒ mustn't ⓓ don't have to

105. .... everybody here?
ⓐ Is ⓑ Are ⓒ Do ⓓ Does

106. The Nile is .... river in Africa.
ⓐ longer than ⓑ the longest ⓒ longer one ⓓ longest than

107. Aya is the same........... as Diana.
ⓐ old ⓑ age ⓒ young ⓓ older

108. Who is .... , Rawan or Amira?
ⓐ more younger ⓑ young ⓒ youngest ⓓ younger

109. That restaurant will be .... this one here.
ⓐ so good as ⓑ as good as ⓒ so good so ⓓ as good so

110. She has been ill, but she certainly .... today.
ⓐ look best ⓑ looks better ⓒ looks best ⓓ is best

111. The problem wasn't difficult. It was the .... in the exam.
ⓐ most easy ⓑ more easy ⓒ easiest ⓓ easier

112. The shirt wasn't the .... price as I had thought at first.
ⓐ same ⓑ as ⓒ most ⓓ more

113. My father treats us in .... way.
ⓐ friend ⓑ a friendly ⓒ friendly ⓓ a friend

114. A bicycle moves .... than a car.
ⓐ slowly ⓑ fast ⓒ very slow ⓓ more slowly

115. Drivers .... wear seatbelts or they will be fined.
ⓐ should ⓑ mustn't ⓒ have to ⓓ needn't

116. Ahmed is .... Ali. They got the same marks at their Arabic exam last week.
ⓐ cleverer than ⓑ as clever as ⓒ so clever as ⓓ clever

117. We .... to wear a uniform at school.
ⓐ should ⓑ must ⓒ have ⓓ can

118. They .... see us talking or they will suspect something.
ⓐ must ⓑ mustn't ⓒ have to ⓓ had to

119. Defending homeland is a .... for every Egyptian.
ⓐ must ⓑ mustn't ⓒ necessity ⓓ a and c

120. Ali isn't late for school; he .... hurry.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ don't have to ⓒ needn't ⓓ has to

121. Nada is .... lazier than her brother.
ⓐ least ⓑ less ⓒ much ⓓ more

122. The older she gets, the .... experienced she becomes.
ⓐ most ⓑ much ⓒ little ⓓ more

123. You .... tell Jana – she already knows.
ⓐ don't have ⓑ needn't ⓒ don't need ⓓ didn't had to

124. He thinks he's the world's .... man.
ⓐ strongest ⓑ the strongest ⓒ stronger ⓓ strong

125. I hope you'll stay........... next time.
ⓐ longer ⓑ longest ⓒ the longest ⓓ along

126. I 'm least happy when I .... work at weekends.
ⓐ must ⓑ had to ⓒ have to ⓓ has to

127. I .... my room yesterday; my sister had already tidied it.
ⓐ don't have to tidy ⓑ didn't have to tidy ⓒ had to tidy ⓓ must have tidied

128. Is it a .... to take this medicine?
ⓐ necessitate ⓑ necessarily ⓒ necessary ⓓ must

129. The more books she reads, ... ignorant she is.
ⓐ the more ⓑ the less ⓒ the most ⓓ the least

130. Oysters are .... other types of seafood.
ⓐ the rarest ⓑ rarer ⓒ rarer than ⓓ rare

131. My father often .... together with his friends after work.
ⓐ goes ⓑ makes ⓒ gets ⓓ pretends

132. Father used to invite us to .... on Fridays.
ⓐ make out ⓑ fall out ⓒ eat out ⓓ find out

133. Of the two girls Mona is the ....
ⓐ young ⓑ youngest ⓒ younger ⓓ old

134. The criminal was arrested on his .... at the airport to travel abroad.
ⓐ departing ⓑ arrival ⓒ disappearance ⓓ finding

135. King Lear decided to .... his kingdom into three parts.
ⓐ divide ⓑ give ⓒ sell ⓓ multiply

136. The younger you are, the .... freedom you have.
ⓐ most ⓑ best ⓒ more ⓓ much

137. We were .... to find out who won the game that we didn't watch on TV.
ⓐ detected ⓑ curious ⓒ exciting ⓓ proud

138. He was angry to wait .... an hour in the street.
ⓐ in ⓑ at ⓒ for ⓓ with

139. Intelligent students are .... the best ones at any school.
ⓐ quiet ⓑ really ⓒ by far ⓓ far

140. I asked you to .... the vase carefully on that place . Why did you drop it?
ⓐ fib ⓑ place ⓒ press ⓓ lie

141. Mohamed enjoys quick thinking, he usually reacts .... his classmates.
ⓐ much quicker than ⓑ more quicker than ⓒ much quickly than ⓓ more quickly than

142. By .... , the bride wears a white dress.
ⓐ celebration ⓑ celebrity ⓒ tradition ⓓ amount

143. You .... become an Olympic champion to do exercise.
ⓐ have to ⓑ don't have to ⓒ must ⓓ mustn't

144. You .... tell Aya - she already knows.
ⓐ don't have ⓑ needn't ⓒ don't need ⓓ didn't have to

145. Why don't we all .... together and go out for a drink?
ⓐ have ⓑ take ⓒ get ⓓ put

146. His good manners have made him .... to bad ideas.
ⓐ immune ⓑ available ⓒ influence ⓓ affected

Translate the following sentences.

١٤٧. عندما يعم السلام ينعم المجتمع براحة البال ويعمل الجميع من أجل تحقيق التقدم.
ⓐ When peace prevail, the society enjoy peace of mind and all people works for the sake of achieve progress.
ⓑ When peace prevails, the society enjoy peace of mind and all people work for the sake of achieving process.
ⓒ When piece prevails, the society enjoys peace of brain and all people work for the sake of achieving progress.
ⓓ When peace prevails, the society enjoys peace of mind and all people work for the sake of achieving progress.

١٤٨. يجب أن يكون لديك هدف وأن تعمل بجد لتحقيقه، فالناس الذين ليس لديهم أهداف غالبا لا ينجحون.
ⓐ You must have goal and work hard to achieve them. People who do not have goals often don't succeed.
ⓑ You must have a goal and work hard to achieving it. People who does not have goals often don't succeed.
ⓒ You must have a goal and work hard to achieve it. People who do not have goals often succeed.
ⓓ You must have a goal and work hard to achieve it. People who do not have goals don't often succeed.

١٤٩. لك الحق فى التعبير عن رأيك بحرية ولكن لا تستخدم العنف ضد معارضيك.
ⓐ You have right to express your opinions freely, but never use violence against those who oppose you.
ⓑ You have the right to express your opinion freely, but never use violence against those who oppose you.
ⓒ You have the right to express your opinion free, but never use violent against those who oppose you.
ⓓ You have the right to express your opinion freely, but never use violence against those who opposes you.

150. Egypt is the gift of the Nile and the birth place of civilization and it is rich in its great scientists and thinkers who have achieved great progress in all aspects of life.
(أ) مصر هبة النيل ومهد الحضارة وهى فقيرة بعلمائها العظام ومفكريها الذين حققوا تقدماً كبيراً فى شتى مجالات الحياة.
(ب) مصر هبة النيل ومهد الحضارة وهى غنية بعلمائها العظام ومفكريها الذين حققوا تقدماً قليلاً فى شتى مجالات الحياة.
(ج) مصر هبة النيل ومهد الحضارة وهى غنية بعلمائها العظام ومفكريها الذين حققوا تقدماً كبيراً فى شتى مجالات الحياة.
(د) مصر هبة النيل ومهد الحضارة وهى غنية بعلمائها العظام ومفكريها الذين حققوا تقدماً كبيراً فى شتى مجالات الكون.

151. The global economy has been greatly affected by the Corona pandemic. Many jobs that can be done from home have appeared and internet shopping has spread. إدارة إسنا ٢٠٢٢
(أ) لقد تأثر الاقتصاد العالمي تأثرا طفيفا بجائحة كورونا، فقد ظهرت العديد من الوظائف التي يمكن أن تؤدي من البيت وتقلص التسوق عبر الانترنت.
(ب) لقد تأثر الاقتصاد القومي تأثرا كبيرا بجائحة كورونا، فقد ظهرت العديد من الوظائف التي يمكن أن تؤدى من البيت وانتشر التسوق عبر الانترنت.
(ج) لقد تأثر الاقتصاد العالمي تأثرا كبيرا بجائحة كورونا، فقد ظهرت العديد من الوظائف التي يمكن أن تؤدي من البيت وانتشر التسوق عبر الانترنت.
(د) لقد تأثر الاقتصاد القومي تأثرا كبيرا بجائحة كورونا، فقد ظهرت العديد من الوظائف التي يمكن أن تؤدي من البيت وتقلص التسوق عبر الانترنت.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

John was a very rich and selfish boy. One day, he told his classmates that he was going to bring an enormous box of sweets. He wanted to make everybody jealous, but he was so greedy that he ate half of the sweets on his way to school.

"Never mind," he thought, "It's still more sweets than anyone else has!" But John was not careful with his belongings and by the time he got to school he had already lost the box of sweets. A girl called Sarah found the box of sweets. She knew that it must be the one that John had been talking about. None of the other children were rich enough to afford so many sweets. When she arrived at school, she returned the box to John. He was excited but saw an opportunity. He wanted to show everyone a full box, not a half-empty one.

John thanked Sarah but then immediately went to the teacher. "Mrs. Brown," said John, "I lost my box of sweets and Sarah found it, but half of the sweets have gone! She must have eaten them!" Mrs. Brown knew her students very well and was sure that polite and responsible Sarah had not eaten John's sweets. "How many sweets were in the box when you found it, Sarah?" she asked. "It was half full, Mrs. Brown."

"Are you sure, Sarah?" "Yes, Mrs. Brown," she replied.

"She's lying!" shouted John. "It was full!" he said.

"Are you sure, John?" asked Mrs. Brown. "Absolutely!" replied John.

"Well then," said Mrs. Brown, "The half-empty box of sweets can't be yours, John. If anyone finds a full box of sweets, then we will make sure it is returned to you."

152. The central idea of this passage can be that ....
   ⓐ teachers don't know everything
   ⓑ you should share
   ⓒ you shouldn't eat lots of sweets
   ⓓ you should be honest

153. .... ate half of the sweets.
   ⓐ John
   ⓑ Sarah
   ⓒ Mrs. Brown
   ⓓ John and Sarah

154. Which of the following sentences can summarise the end of the passage?
   ⓐ The teacher thought that both students were lying, so she kept the box of sweets for herself.
   ⓑ The teacher thought that both students were telling the truth, so she let them share the box of sweets.
   ⓒ The teacher knew that Sarah was lying, so she gave the box of sweets back to John.
   ⓓ The teacher knew that John was lying, so she didn't give him the box of sweets back.

155. How did Sarah know that the box of sweets definitely belonged to John?
   ⓐ Only John had enough money to buy such a large box of sweets.
   ⓑ Mrs. Brown said that the box of sweets belonged to John.
   ⓒ She saw John eating the sweets.
   ⓓ John told her it was his box of sweets.

156. The teacher didn't ask Sarah if she had eaten the sweets because she knew Sarah's.....
   ⓐ lies
   ⓑ personality
   ⓒ responsibility
   ⓓ guilt

157. According to the passage, John ....
   ⓐ returned the box of sweets to Mrs. Brown
   ⓑ accused Sarah of eating his sweets
   ⓒ pretended he hadn't lost his box of sweets
   ⓓ lied about Sarah losing the box of sweets

158. After John's experience, he might learn ....
   ⓐ not to be so greedy
   ⓑ to say "thank you" more
   ⓒ to make friends
   ⓓ to lose his things

159. Which sentence is true according to the passage?
   ⓐ John thought that the other students would judge him for eating half of the sweets
   ⓑ John wanted more sweets to eat
   ⓒ John wanted a full box of sweets to share with the other students
   ⓓ John didn't think that half a box of sweets would make the other students as jealous as a full box

Write an Essay of about (180) words of ONE on the following:

How to stay healthy - Eating around the world









The Future of food



Key Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
livestock (n)	ماشية	sustainable (adj)	مستدام	farm (n)	مزرعة
produce (n/v)	ينتج/ منتج زراعي	variety (n)	تنوع / تشكيلة / نوع	farmer (n)	فلاح
production (n)	إنتاج	source (n)	مصدر	farming (n)	الزراعة
innovation (n)	ابتكار / إبداع	rainforest (n)	غابة مطيرة	agriculture / cultivation	الزراعة
crop (n)	محصول	earth (n)	الأرض	electric (adj)	كهربائي (يعمل بالكهرباء)
solve (v)	يحل	chemical (adj)	مادة كيميائية	electrical	كهربائي (له علاقة بالكهرباء)
solution (n)	حل	percent (adv)	بالمائة	electricity (n)	كهرباء

Main Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
vegetarian (adj)	نباتي	create (v)	يخلق	proposal (n)	عرض
involve (v)	يتضمن / يقتضي / يتطلب	effect (n)	تأثير	separate (n/v)	يفصل / منفصل
remove (v)	يزيل	seriously (adv)	بجدية / بخطورة	cut down (v)	يقطع الأشجار
damage (n)	تلف	stuff (n)	أشياء / مواد	find out (v)	يعرف
cause (n/v)	يسبب / سبب	mention (v)	يذكر	deal with (v)	يتعامل مع
climate (n)	مناخ	persuade (v)	يقنع	instead of	بدلاً من
change (n/v)	تغير / يغير	extraordinary (adj)	استثنائي / خارق	guest (n)	ضيف
vehicle (n)	مركبة	grow (v)	يزرع / ينمو	charity (n)	مؤسسة خيرية
level (n)	مستوى	increase (n/v)	يزيد / زيادة	destroy (v)	يدمر
environment (n)	البيئة	rise (v)	تشرق / ترتفع / ينهض	investment (n)	استثمار
population (n)	التعداد السكاني	link (n/v)	رابط / يربط	almost (around-nearly)	تقريباً
space (n)	مساحة / فراغ / فضاء	keep (v)	يحفظ / يربي	capital (n)	عاصمة / رأس مال
organisation (n)	منظمة	researcher (n)	باحث	difference (n)	اختلاف
consume (v)	يستهلك	rain (n/v)	تمطر / مطر	kind (adj/n)	نوع / عطوف
consumption (n)	استهلاك	plan (n/v)	خطة / يخطط	disguise (v)	يتنكر
southern (adj)	جنوبي	continue (v)	يستمر	recently (adv)	حديثاً
speculate (v)	يتأمل	land (n/v)	أرض / يهبط	protect (v)	يحمي

Synonym & Antonym

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym العكس
sustainable	مستدام	continual - continuous	unendurable - unsustainable
link	رابط / يربط	contact - tie - connection	separation - disconnect
innovation	ابتكار / إبداع	creation - addition	copy - imitation
destroy	يدمر	smash - tear - demolish	establish - repair- construct
increase	يزيد / زيادة	improve - expand - rise	decrease - reduce - lessen
variety	تنوع	mixture - diversity - variousness	similarity - likeness

Prepositions

increase in	زيادة في	according to	طبقاً لـ	variety of	تنوع من
increase by	يزيد بمقدار	solution to	حل لـ	hope for	أمل لـ
link to	رابط لـ	persuade to	يقنع أن	look after	يعتني بـ
learn about	يتعلم عن	live on	يعيش على / يتغذى على	look for	يبحث عن

Expressions & Idioms

electric vehicles	مركبات كهربائية
sea level	مستوى سطح البحر
climate change	تغير المناخ
save energy	يوفر الطاقة
a negative effect on	تأثير سلبي على
how to solve	كيفية حل
the damage done to	التلف الذى لحق بـ
sustainable sources	مصادر مستدامة
tell the difference	يخبر بالفارق
sustainable farming	زراعة مستدامة
problem solving	حل المشكلة
help crops grow	يساعد في نمو المحاصيل
as a result	كنتيجة لذلك
technological solutions	الحلول التكنولوجية

Definitions

agriculture	الزراعة	the process of growing plants in sand, gravel, or liquid, with added nutrients but without soil
crop	محصول	a plant that's grown in large quantities, especially as food
innovation	ابتكار	the introduction of new things, ideas or ways of doing something
livestock	ماشية	the animals kept on a farm, for examples cows and sheep
production	إنتاج	the process of growing or making food, goods or materials
sustainable	مستدامة	involving the use of natural products in a way that doesn't harm the environment
variety	تنوع	several different things of the same thing
vehicle	مركبة	a machine usually with wheels and an engine, which is used for transporting people or goods on land, especially on roads
source	مصدر	a place, a person or thing that you get something from
rainforest	غابة مطيرة	a thick forest in tropical parts of the world that have a lot of rain
solution	حل	the answer to a problem
technology	التكنولوجيا	the use of science to create devices for everyday use

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة	organised	منظم
populate	يعمره السكان	population	السكان	populated	مسكون
advise	ينصح	advice	نصيحة	advisable	منصوح به
connect	يوصل	connection	اتصال / توصيل	connected	متصل
discuss	يناقش	discussion	مناقشة	discussable	قابل للنقاش
inform	يعلم / يخبر	information	معلومات	informative	إخباري
hope	يأمل	hope	الأمل	hopeful	متفائل
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر
grow	يكبر / ينمو	growth	النمو	growing	متنامي / متزايد
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	فعال / مؤثر
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفي
believe	يعتقد / يصدق	belief	إيمان / اعتقاد	believable	مقنع / واقعي



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

population	السكان	⊃	pollution	التلوث
reduce	يخفض	⊃	produce	ينتج
remember	يتذكر	⊃	remind	يذكر
staff	هيئة العاملين	⊃	stuff	أشياء / مواد
encourage	يشجع	⊃	discourage	يمنع / يعوق
teach	يُعلم / يُدرس	⊃	learn	يتعلم
rule	قاعدة / قانون / يحكم	⊃	role	دور
expect	يتوقع	⊃	except	ماعدا
hop	يقفز على قدم واحدة	⊃	hope	يأمل / يتمنى / أمل
quite	إلى حد ما	⊃	quiet	هادئ

rise, raise, arise & arouse

rise / rose / risen	تشرق / ترتفع	▸ Prices **rise** every day. ▸ The sun **rises** in the east.
raise / raised	يرفع / يربي / يجمع	▸ If you want to answer, **raise** your hand. ▸ My father likes to **raise** chicks.
arise	يظهر / ينشأ	▸ If any complications **arise**, let me know and I'll help.
arouse	يثير / يوقظ	▸ His strange behaviour **aroused** her suspicions.

vary, variety, various & variously

vary (v)	يتنوع / يختلف	▸ Prices **vary** widely from shop to shop.
variety (n)	تشكيلة	▸ He has done a **variety** of jobs.
various (adj.)	متنوع	▸ She gave **various** excuses for being late.
variously (adv.)	بطريقة متنوعة	▸ He shows his services **variously**.



cattle & livestock

cattle	ماشية (ابقار وعجول)	The farmer grazes **cattle** on this land in the summer months.
livestock	حيوانات المزرعة	We keep **livestock** on our farm.

remove, move & removal

remove	يزيل	The men came to **remove** the rubbish from the backyard.
move	يحرك / ينتقل	I'm so cold. I can't **move** my fingers.
removal	ازالة	The **removal** of this stain بقعة is impossible.

accept, expect & except

accept	يقبل	He **accepted** the invitation to stay with us.
expect	يتوقع	I **expect** he will fail.
except	ما عدا	The office is open every day **except** Sundays.

weather, climate & atmosphere

weather	الطقس: حالة الجو فى فترة قصيرة	What is the **weather** like?
climate	المناخ: حالة الجو فى فترة طويلة	The **climate** of Egypt is fine.
atmosphere	الغلاف الجوى: ما يحيط الأرض أو المكان	**Atmosphere** is the mixture of gases that surrounds the Earth.

Farming, agriculture & agricultural

farming	زراعة المحاصيل وتربية الحيوانات	Modern **farming** is giving way to the re-introduction of traditional methods.
agriculture	علم الزراعة / النشاط الزراعي	Tourism has replaced **agriculture** as the nation's main industry.
agricultural	زراعي	There are irrigation channels all over this flat **agricultural** land.

source & resource

source	مصدر / منبع	His main **source** of work had dried up, leaving him short of money.
resource	مورد / مرجع للمعلومات	The long war had drained the **resources** of countries.

- electricity كهرباء / - electrician كهربائى (شخص يعمل فى الكهرباء)

◈ We all should save **electricity** at our houses.

◈ I need an **electrician** to repair my **electric** cooker.

- electric كهربى (يعمل بالكهرباء)

heater / car / kettle / light / blanket / washer

◈ I bought an **electric** heater yesterday.

- electrical كهربى (له علاقة بالكهرباء) شخص / شيء

shop / engineer / goods / fuse / circuit / metre / fault / current

◈ The fire was caused by **electrical** fault.



- successful → ناجح / a success → عمل ناجح /بمثابة النجاح

◈ Mr Al Daifi is a successful teacher.
◈ His work is a success because he made a profit.

suggest + v. + ing →→ يقترح

suggest that + فاعل + should + inf. + مصدر →→ يقترح

◈ He suggested spending the evening on the Nile.
◈ Tom suggested that I (should) look for another job.

فاعل + would rather + مصدر + than + مصدر
فاعل + would rather + فاعل + فعل ماضى

◈ I'd rather watch TV.
◈ I'd rather watch TV than play games.
◈ I'd rather Ali watched TV.

فاعل + would prefer to + مصدر

فاعل + prefer + اسم or v + ing + to + ing or اسم

فاعل + 'd like to / 'd prefer to + مصدر / فاعل + مصدر + rather than + مصدر

◈ I'd prefer to watch TV.
◈ I prefer tea to coffee.
◈ I prefer watching TV to sleeping.
◈ I prefer watching TV.
◈ I would prefer to watch TV rather than sleep.

The population problem in Egypt



The population of Egypt is growing by nearly two percent a year. That means that there are more people living in its cities every six months. This is a problem in a country where 95% of its population lives on about 25% of its land. It is thought that the population of Egypt will be around 150 million by 2050.

So what are the solutions to these problems? One plan is to invest billions of pounds in a new capital city outside Cairo. This is one of the big projects that will help 700,000 young people who start looking for work each year.



Read two articles about the future of farming.

1) According to the United Nations, there will be almost 10 billion people in the world by 2050. As a result, we will have to increase our food production by about 70% percent. However, farmers do not have space to keep more livestock and grow more crops. Instead, they'll need to look for more sustainable solutions and this will involve producing a wider variety of food.

How would you feel about eating a burger that was grown in a laboratory? Scientists think that it could be more sustainable than keeping livestock.

Some of the people who have eaten these burgers say that they can't tell the difference between the new burgers and real meat.

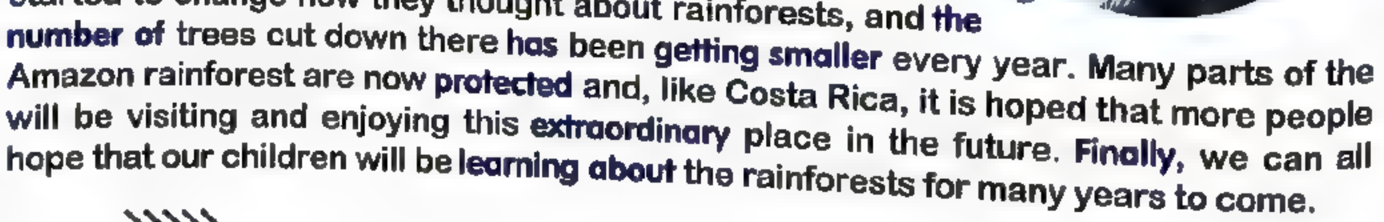
2) Researchers from the United Nations have found that some kinds of agriculture are seriously damaging the land. This is not sustainable. If farming continues to cause so much damage, there won't be enough land left for food production. In Europe, most of the damage is due to farmers using too many chemicals, so they will need to find new ways to help their crops grow. In southern Africa, the problem is that there is too much rain in the summer. In the future, we can expect that farmers in southern Africa will be using innovations in technology to remove water from the land and use it elsewhere.



Listening

The future of forests

The world has been losing millions of trees from the rainforests every year for a long time. Many trees get cut down so that we have wood to make furniture, and many more get cut down because people need the land to grow food. However, there may be hope for the future because countries around the world are changing the way we think about these important areas. Changes started a long time ago in Costa Rica. Around 60% of the rainforest in this small Central American Country was lost in the 1980s. But in the 1990s, the government started working with local farmers and persuaded them to look after the rainforests instead of cutting down more trees. This encouraged tourists to visit the country, and soon the local people stared to make more money from tourism than from cutting down trees.



It was a great success, but things got worse in other parts of the world, such as the Amazon rainforest, until 2004. Then many people and governments around the world started to change how they thought about rainforests, and the number of trees cut down there has been getting smaller every year. Many parts of the Amazon rainforest are now protected and, like Costa Rica, it is hoped that more people will be visiting and enjoying this extraordinary place in the future. Finally, we can all hope that our children will be learning about the rainforests for many years to come.







Interviewer	Hello everyone. In today's show I'll be talking to my guest, Dr Sarita Parker, who's an expert on the rainforests in Borneo. Welcome to the show, Dr Parker.
Dr Parker	It's great to be with you, John.
Interviewer	Now, we all think that we know what a rainforest is, but how would you describe it?
Dr Parker	A rainforest has a lot of trees and many different types of animals and plants live in it. And it's a place that's usually very hot and it rains a lot, too.
Interviewer	And what can you tell us about the rainforests in Borneo?
Dr Parker	Well, Borneo is a large island in South-East Asia and it has one of the oldest rainforests in the world. However, recently the island has become hotter and there has been less rain than usual. And scientists think that there will be even less rainfall on the island in the next few years.
Interviewer	Why is that?
Dr Parker	Unfortunately, some farmers are cutting down trees and starting fires so they can grow crops and keep livestock there. Now the rainforest is about thirty percent smaller today than it was forty years ago. And if there's less rainforest, there's less rain and the island will get even hotter, you see. So, we're very worried that farmers are going to continue to damage the rainforest over the next few decades. That would be terrible for the animals and plant life in the rainforest, and Borneo would heat up even more.
Interviewer	Do you think those farmers will keep cutting down so many trees in the future, or will they use more sustainable ways to grow crops and keep livestock?
Dr Parker	Well, it won't be easy. Of course, many farmers are just trying to feed their families, however, we hope that in a few years' time, more farmers will be using sustainable farming techniques and things will improve. They need information about how they can plant new trees and move crops around from one field to another each year. But farmers won't change until they understand why they need to change and they have everything they need to do that. My organisation will be running an education programme next month to help them.
Interviewer	Thank you very much for your time, Dr Parker.





Exercise 1 Key vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الرئيسية

1. We hope that in few years' time, more farmers will be using .... farming techniques. (الجيزة ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ well ⓑ sociable ⓒ invisible ⓓ sustainable

2. We have to increase our food .... to face overpopulation. (الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ infection ⓑ production ⓒ shortage ⓓ advantage

3. A lot of farmers keep .... for meat production. (LM)
ⓐ crops ⓑ seeds ⓒ stock ⓓ livestock

4. This young man is a/an ....; he isn't afraid to try something new. He introduces changes and new ideas. (LM)
ⓐ innovator ⓑ discoverer ⓒ explorer ⓓ surveyor

5. In the future, we can expect that farmers will be using .... in technology to remove too much rainwater from the land and use it elsewhere. (LM)
ⓐ cultivation ⓑ irrigation ⓒ motivations ⓓ innovations

6. Are you for or against using chemicals to help .... grow faster? (LM)
ⓐ products ⓑ goods ⓒ careers ⓓ crops

7. Scientists must look for more .... solutions to the food shortage problem. (إدارة إسنا ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ insupportable ⓑ traditional ⓒ sustainable ⓓ unavailable

8. We should produce a wider .... of foods to meet the needs of the increasing population. (LM)
ⓐ variety ⓑ collection ⓒ gathering ⓓ rarity

9. The Egyptian Knowledge Bank is a reliable .... of learning. (إدارة قتادة ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ source ⓑ resource ⓒ discourse ⓓ base

10. Due to rapid population growth, we will have to increase our food .... (LM)
ⓐ consumption ⓑ production ⓒ introduction ⓓ assumption

11. Most of the damage caused to the land is due to farmers using too many .... (LM)
ⓐ improvements ⓑ protectors ⓒ chemicals ⓓ fertilizers

12. .... is still the main source of income in rural areas: farmers sell their crops and vegetables to earn their living. (LM)
ⓐ Cultivation ⓑ Tourism ⓒ Industry ⓓ Economy

13. The farmer keeps a lot of .... such as goats and sheep.
ⓐ agriculture ⓑ crops ⓒ innovation ⓓ livestock

14. There is a wide .... of crops to grow in our land. (إدارة القوصية ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ variety ⓑ vary ⓒ various ⓓ variable

15. Some people use chemicals to .... stains from clothes. (LM)
ⓐ rise ⓑ remove ⓒ improve ⓓ add

16. The Nile is the main .... of fresh water in Egypt. (إدارة أبو حماد ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ organ ⓑ means ⓒ source ⓓ apply

17. We all believe that cycling is a totally .... form of transport. (إدارة زفتى ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ believable ⓑ noticeable ⓒ sustainable ⓓ solvable

18. Researchers have found out that some kinds of agriculture are .... the land and causing much harm. (LM)
ⓐ disappearing ⓑ protecting ⓒ keeping ⓓ damaging

19. Experts recommend doubling food .... to face the increasing population all over the world. (LM)
ⓐ infection ⓑ consumption ⓒ production ⓓ reduction

20. Are you for or against using chemicals to help .... grow faster?
ⓐ products ⓑ goods ⓒ foodstuffs ⓓ crops
21. There are no easy .... to this problem.
ⓐ solutions ⓑ solve ⓒ salutation ⓓ sanitation
22. If .... was given priority, the country would easily be able to feed itself.
ⓐ agriculture ⓑ culture ⓒ sustainable ⓓ rainforests
23. The heavy rains and flooding killed scores of ....
ⓐ battle ⓑ kettle ⓒ stock ⓓ livestock
24. Is the stove .... or gas?
ⓐ electrician ⓑ electric ⓒ electricity ⓓ electrical
25. We've just changed over from gas central heating to ....
ⓐ electricity ⓑ electric ⓒ electrical ⓓ electronic
26. Around 30% of Egyptians work in farming and ....
ⓐ culture ⓑ agriculture ⓒ agricultural ⓓ cultural
27. Technological .... means that we can now make seawater safe to drink.
ⓐ innovation ⓑ sustainable ⓒ crop ⓓ variety
28. This will help us to understand how to .... the problem.
ⓐ solo ⓑ solve ⓒ dissolve ⓓ solution
29. I read a wonderful article that suggests technical .... to future food problems. I think they will be very useful.
ⓐ objections ⓑ solutions ⓒ disappearance ⓓ disturbance

Exercise 2 Main vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الاساسية

30. The world is getting warmer and this is causing .... changes. LM
ⓐ atmosphere ⓑ climate ⓒ wanted ⓓ desirable
31. The film is really purposeful. It .... with some serious issues. LM
ⓐ adapts ⓑ accepts ⓒ deals ⓓ befriends
32. The exam will .... writing an essay. منازل ٢٠٢٣
ⓐ solve ⓑ involve ⓒ suspect ⓓ construct
33. One of the most important tasks for a farmer is to .... livestock. المنيا ٢٠٢٣
ⓐ rise ⓑ bring ⓒ keep ⓓ find
34. Some people blame television for the .... in crime.
ⓐ shortage ⓑ decrease ⓒ increase ⓓ reduce
35. We're not doing enough to .... the environment from pollution.
ⓐ protect ⓑ destroy ⓒ damage ⓓ ruin
36. Sitting over a computer all day can .... problems.
ⓐ give ⓑ do ⓒ cause ⓓ reason
37. .... these documents, you still owe us £2,000.
ⓐ Take to ⓑ According to ⓒ Referee to ⓓ Object to
38. The UN believes that agriculture always has a negative .... on the climate.
ⓐ affect ⓑ effectively ⓒ effective ⓓ effect
39. We should use less electricity and .... energy.
ⓐ save ⓑ saving ⓒ safe ⓓ safety
40. Many of the world's cities have .... of more than 5 million.
ⓐ popularity ⓑ populations ⓒ pollution ⓓ pollutes
41. .... now, did he really say that or are you just being silly?
ⓐ Seriously ⓑ Serious ⓒ Series ⓓ Serial

42. A large mirror in a room can .... the illusion of space.
ⓐ creativity ⓑ creative ⓒ create ⓓ creation

43. The water is filtered to .... any impurities.
ⓐ remove ⓑ removal ⓒ move ⓓ moving

44. I worry about the .... that violent films may have on children.
ⓐ affect ⓑ effect ⓒ effective ⓓ effectively

45. They use special .... to accelerate the growth of crops.
ⓐ chemical ⓑ chemistry ⓒ chemicals ⓓ chemist

46. The operation proved a complete ....
ⓐ successfully ⓑ success ⓒ succeed ⓓ successful

47. His school reports said that he is always ready to .... a challenge.
ⓐ expect ⓑ except ⓒ accept ⓓ concept

48. There are ....treatments for this complaint.
ⓐ vary ⓑ various ⓒ variety ⓓ very

Exercise 3 Synonyms & Antonyms المرادفات والمتضادات

49. .... is a synonym to creation.
ⓐ Continuous ⓑ Mixture ⓒ Connection ⓓ Innovation

50. Variety is a/an ....for diversity.
ⓐ opposite ⓑ short ⓒ antonym ⓓ synonym

51. We need to increase public awareness of the disease. Increase is a synonym for...........
ⓐ raise ⓑ decrease ⓒ lessen ⓓ reduce

52. "That sort of extreme diet is not sustainable over a long period." What does the word 'sustainable' mean in this sentence?
ⓐ developed ⓑ fixed ⓒ continuous ⓓ unsuitable

53. "He runs a supermarket." Another word for "runs" is ....
ⓐ races ⓑ speeds ⓒ manages ⓓ works

54. The manager involved him in his new staff. The antonym of the word "involved" in this sentence is ....
ⓐ excluded ⓑ included ⓒ added ⓓ recommended

Exercise 4 Choose two Answers اخـــتر إجابتـــين

55. The Russian-Ukrainian war has destroyed a lot of buildings. "Destroy" is opposite in meaning to " .... " and " .... "
ⓐ attack ⓑ check ⓒ build ⓓ eradicate ⓔ construct

56. Students are asked to think of ways to .... pollution.
ⓐ improve ⓑ shake ⓒ reduce ⓓ move ⓔ cut down

57. You should always behave politely with your friends. "Behave" is similar in meaning to " .... " and " ...."
ⓐ forget ⓑ act ⓒ abuse ⓓ deal ⓔ believe

58. We expect that people in .... Africa will be using modern technology in farming.
ⓐ the southern ⓑ southern ⓒ the north ⓓ the south of ⓔ the south

59. This isn't the original painting of The Mona Lisa; it is a .... one.
ⓐ cheap ⓑ real ⓒ forged ⓓ true ⓔ fake

60. I'd prefer .... TV rather than sleep.
ⓐ to watching ⓑ watching ⓒ watch ⓓ to watch

61. I'd rather .... with my friends.
ⓐ staying ⓑ stayed ⓒ stay ⓓ to stay

62. He prefers watching football .... playing it.
ⓐ to ⓑ than ⓒ rather than ⓓ too

63. I'd rather you .... early .
ⓐ slept ⓑ sleep ⓒ sleeping ⓓ sleeps

64. I'd rather go to the cinema .... watch TV.
ⓐ to ⓑ than ⓒ rather than ⓓ too

65. She felt fine .... for being a little tired.
ⓐ expect ⓑ except ⓒ accept ⓓ concept

66. He has a .... of different, brightly-coloured ties which he wears to work.
ⓐ vary ⓑ various ⓒ variety ⓓ variable

67. Existing methods of .... are expensive and inefficient.
ⓐ production ⓑ introduction ⓒ producer ⓓ productive

68. That sort of extreme diet is not .... over a long period.
ⓐ sustain ⓑ sustainable ⓒ unsustainable ⓓ comfortable

69. There's not much .... between the two products.
ⓐ differ ⓑ differently ⓒ difference ⓓ different

70. We add .... to make the antonym of the word "honest".
ⓐ ir ⓑ im ⓒ un ⓓ dis

71. We need to provide a convincing .... as to why the system should he changed.
ⓐ debate ⓑ argument ⓒ agreement ⓓ disagreement

72. .... are animals and birds kept on a farm.
ⓐ Livestock ⓑ cattle ⓒ crops ⓓ kettle

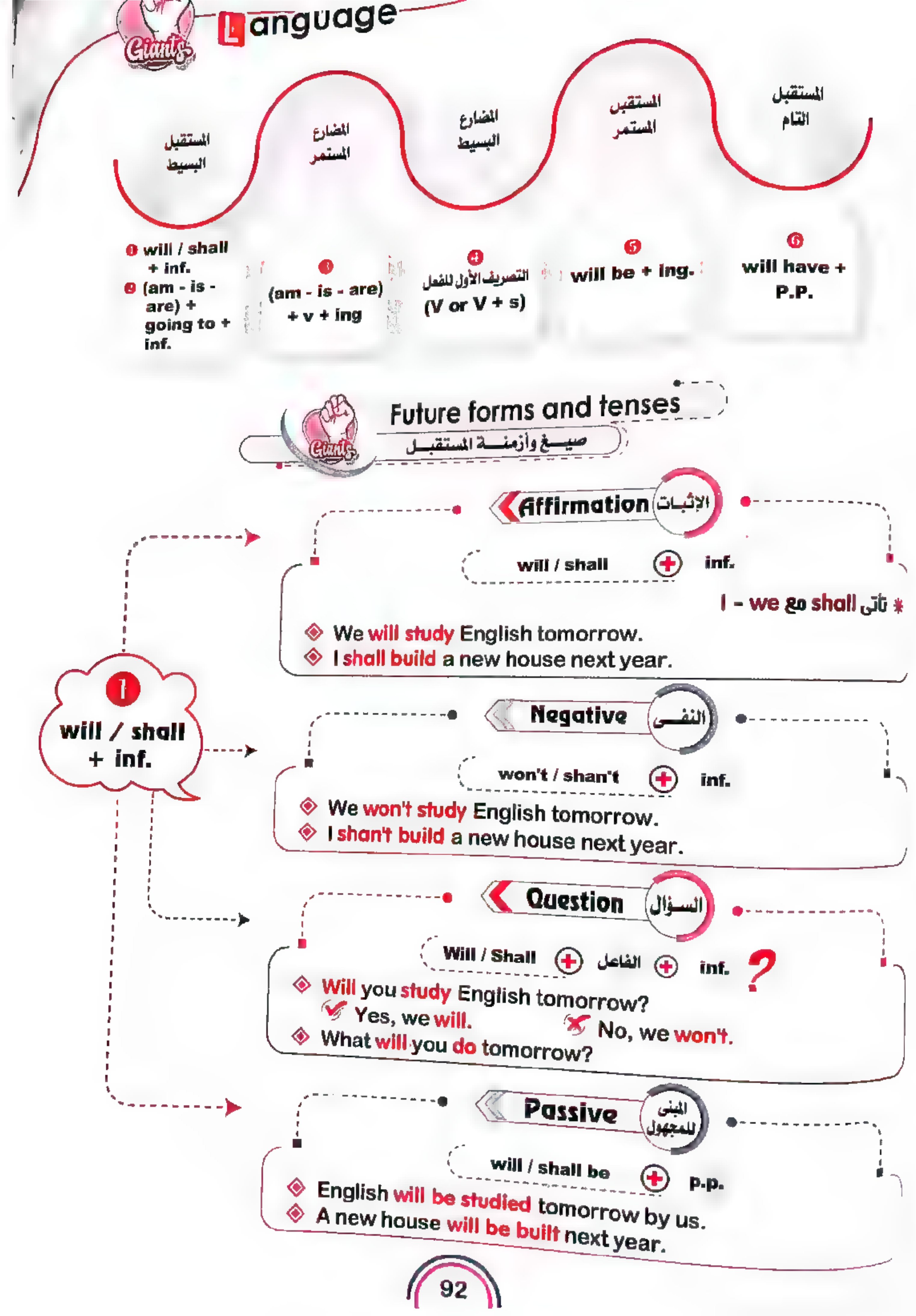
73. To lead a luxurious life, we ought to have a .... economic growth.
ⓐ sustain ⓑ sustainable ⓒ sustainability ⓓ unsustainable

74. The man I shared the room with .... was mad.
ⓐ unfortunately ⓑ unfortunate ⓒ fortunately ⓓ fortunate

75. Food .... went up after the company bought new equipment for its factory.
ⓐ productive ⓑ production ⓒ produce ⓓ protect

76. I didn't .... you in your new uniform.
ⓐ recognize ⓑ realize ⓒ conclude ⓓ acknowledge

77. I suppose .... to be a good mother.
ⓐ she ⓑ her ⓒ hers ⓓ herself



Language

المستقبل التام	المستقبل المستمر	المضارع البسيط	المضارع المستمر	المستقبل البسيط
❻ will have + P.P.	❺ will be + ing.	❹ التصريف الأول للفعل (V or V + s)	❸ (am - is - are) + v + ing	❶ will / shall + inf. ❷ (am - is - are) + going to + inf.

Future forms and tenses
صيغ وأزمنة المستقبل

❶ will / shall + inf.

Affirmation الإثبات

will / shall ⊕ inf.

* تأتى shall مع I - we

- We **will study** English tomorrow.
- I **shall build** a new house next year.

Negative النفى

won't / shan't ⊕ inf.

- We **won't study** English tomorrow.
- I **shan't build** a new house next year.

Question السؤال

Will / Shall ⊕ الفاعل ⊕ inf. ?

- **Will** you **study** English tomorrow?
  ✔ Yes, we **will**. ✘ No, we **won't**.
- What **will** you **do** tomorrow?

Passive المبنى للمجهول

will / shall be ⊕ p.p.

- English **will be studied** tomorrow by us.
- A new house **will be built** next year.



* وهى كلمات تستخدم مع زمن المستقبل البسيط ولاحظ أنها تأتى أول الجملة وآخرها مثل:

tomorrow	غداً	I hope it **won't** rain tomorrow.
next + مدة زمنية	القادم	Next week, we **shall** visit the museum.
in the future	في المستقبل	I **will** travel abroad in the future.
soon	قريباً	They **will** soon speak English well.
shortly	قريباً	Excuse me; I'**ll** be with you shortly.
in a few (months - weeks - days - hours - minutes .....)		I **will** visit my uncle in a few days. She **will** finish her study in a few months.

الاستخدامات Uses

❶ تنبؤات بدون دليل
❷ حقائق مستقبلية (العمر)
❸ القرارات السريعة
❹ العرض
❺ الوعد
❻ الطلب
❼ للتحذير
❽ للتهديد
❾ مع بعض الكلمات مثل:

- I **expect** Toka and Jana **will stay** for lunch.
- Next year, I **will be** 20 years old.
- Mona has **just** decided that she **will** leave.
- That bag looks heavy. I'**ll** help you with it.
- I promise I'**ll** buy you a mobile phone.
- **Will** you shut the window?
- Be careful or you **will** hurt yourself.
- Be quiet or I **will** punish you.

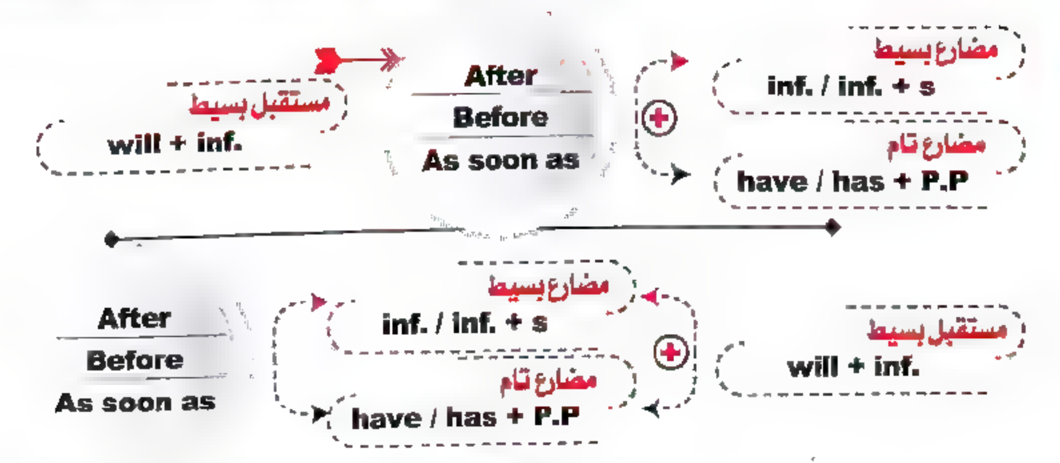
think, believe, expect, predict, hope, promise, sure, certainly, probably

- I **hope** I **will** see him tomorrow.
- I **promise** I **will** visit you tomorrow.
- I **expect** he **will** win the race
- I **think** it **will** rain.

❶ يستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع الجمل الشرطية **unless-if** في الحالة الأولى.

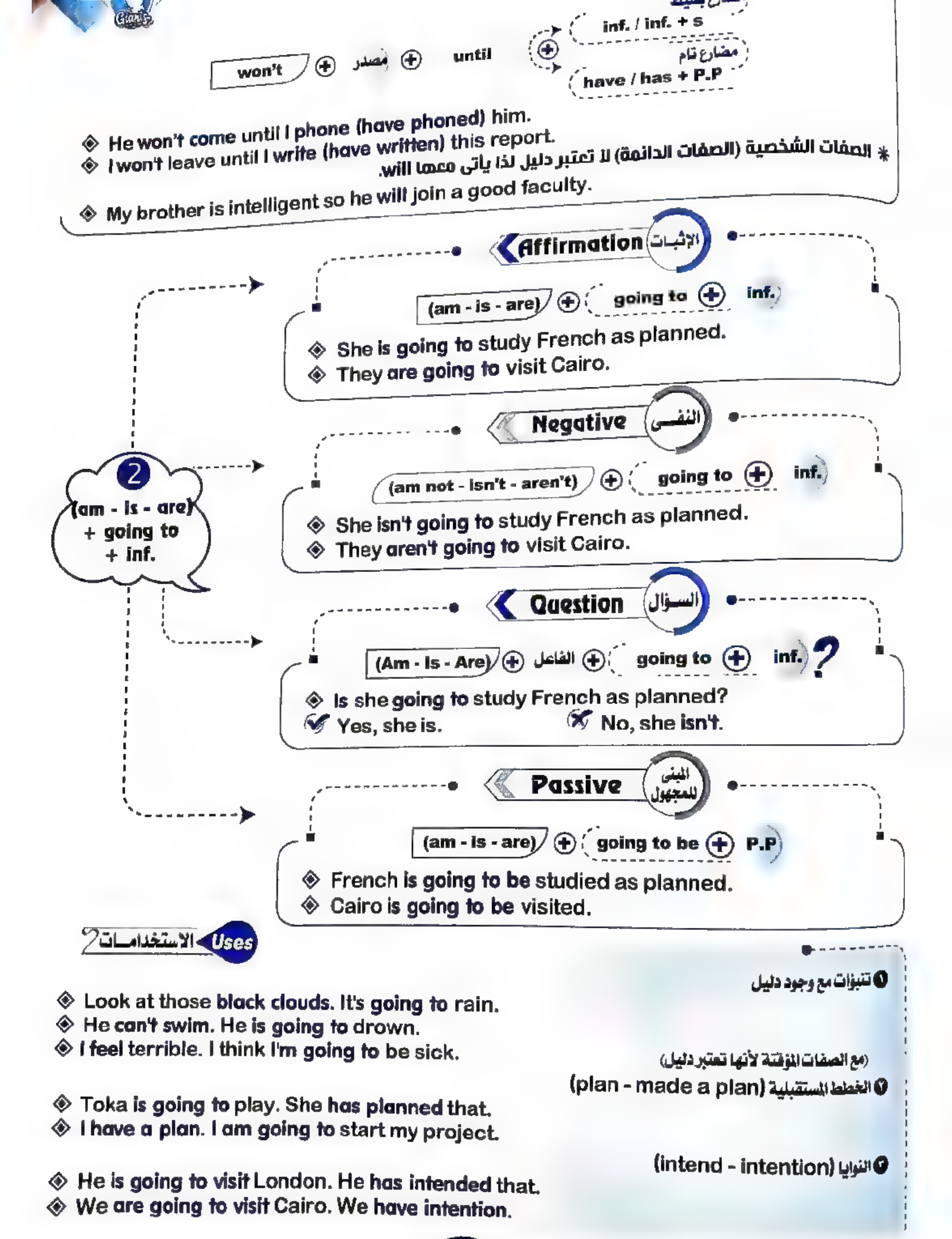
- If I drop this glass, it **will** break.
- Unless he studies hard, he **will** fail.

❷ يستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع الروابط في أزمنة المضارع (**after-before-when-until-as soon as....**).



- After I (do) **have done** my homework, I'**ll** go to bed.
- As soon as she **arrives** (**has arrived**) in London, she **will** call me.
- Before he **types** the reports, he **will** have dinner.
- When it **gets** warmer, the snow **will** start to melt.





until + مصدر + won't

until + (inf. / inf. + s مضارع بسيط) / (have / has + P.P مضارع تام)

◈ He won't come until I phone (have phoned) him.
◈ I won't leave until I write (have written) this report.

* الصفات الشخصية (الصفات الدائمة) لا تعتبر دليل لذا يأتى معها will.

◈ My brother is intelligent so he will join a good faculty.

2 (am - is - are) + going to + inf.

Affirmation الإثبات

(am - is - are) + going to + inf.

◈ She is going to study French as planned.
◈ They are going to visit Cairo.

Negative النفى

(am not - isn't - aren't) + going to + inf.

◈ She isn't going to study French as planned.
◈ They aren't going to visit Cairo.

Question السؤال

(Am - Is - Are) + الفاعل + going to + inf. ?

◈ Is she going to study French as planned?
✓ Yes, she is. ✗ No, she isn't.

Passive المبنى للمجهول

(am - is - are) + going to be + P.P

◈ French is going to be studied as planned.
◈ Cairo is going to be visited.

Uses الاستخدامات

❶ تنبؤات مع وجود دليل

◈ Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain.
◈ He can't swim. He is going to drown.
◈ I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick.

(مع الصفات المؤقتة لأنها تعتبر دليل)

❷ الخطط المستقبلية (plan - made a plan)

◈ Toka is going to play. She has planned that.
◈ I have a plan. I am going to start my project.

❸ النوايا (intend - intention)

◈ He is going to visit London. He has intended that.
◈ We are going to visit Cairo. We have intention.



❹ القرارات المسبقة: (decide- make a decision - made up .... mind)

- They **have decided** they **are going to** study.
- She **has made up** her **mind**. She **is going to** leave.
- **I've made** my **decision**. I **am going to** travel abroad.

❺ أشياء على وشك الحدوث

- **Watch out!** You're **going to** fall.
- Be careful! You **are going to** break it.

❶ بعض الكلمات الدالة على will إذا جاء دليل نستخدم **be going to**

think - believe - sure

- I think it **will** rain.
- It is cloudy. I think it **is going to** rain.

❷ الصفات الشخصية لا تعتبر دليل أما الصفات المؤقتة تعتبر دليل

- My brother is intelligent so he **will** join a good faculty.

Compare

- "Ali phoned while you were out." "OK. **I'll call** him back."
- "Ali phoned while you were out." "Yes, I know. I'm **going to call** him back."

❸ Present Continuous

(am - is - are) + V + ing.

Affirmation الإثبات

(am - is - are) + v + ing.

- She **is studying** French as arranged.
- They **are cooking** meals as prepared.

Negative النفي

(am not - isn't - aren't) + v + ing.

- She **isn't studying** French as arranged.
- They **aren't cooking** meals as prepared.

Question السؤال

(am - is - are) + الفاعل + v + ing ?

- **Is** she **studying** French as arranged?

✔ Yes, she is. ✘ No, she isn't.

Passive المبنى للمجهول

(am - is - are) + being + P.P

- French **is being studied** as arranged.
- Meals **are being cooked** as prepared.





❶ للأحداث المرتب لها مع الكلمات:

(arranged, booked, bought, made arrangements, prepared, all is okay)

- He is visiting his uncle. He has arranged.
- He is catching the 3 o'clock train. He has made arrangements.
- I am having dinner with Toka. I have booked a table.

❷ المناسبات الاجتماعية والأنشطة الرسمية من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد / سفر / زيارات / مواعيد شخصية / المسابقات.

- He's getting married next Friday.
- The school inspector is coming on Thursday.
- Our school is taking part in a competition next week.

❸ عدم القدرة على فعل شيء في المستقبل نتيجة الترتيب لفعل شيء.

- I can't meet you tomorrow as I am doing the shopping.
- She can't call you tonight as she is visiting her uncle.

4 Present Simple (inf. or inf. + s)

Affirmation الإثبات

التصريف الأول للفعل → s + V or V

- The English class starts at 7.
- My train arrives at 7 tomorrow.

Negative النفي

(doesn't - don't) + inf.

- My train doesn't arrive at 7 tomorrow.
- The English class never starts at 7.

Question السؤال

(Does - Do) + الفاعل + inf. ?

- Does the train arrive at 7 o'clock?
  ✓ Yes, it does. ✗ No, it doesn't

Passive المبنى للمجهول

(am - is - are) + P.P

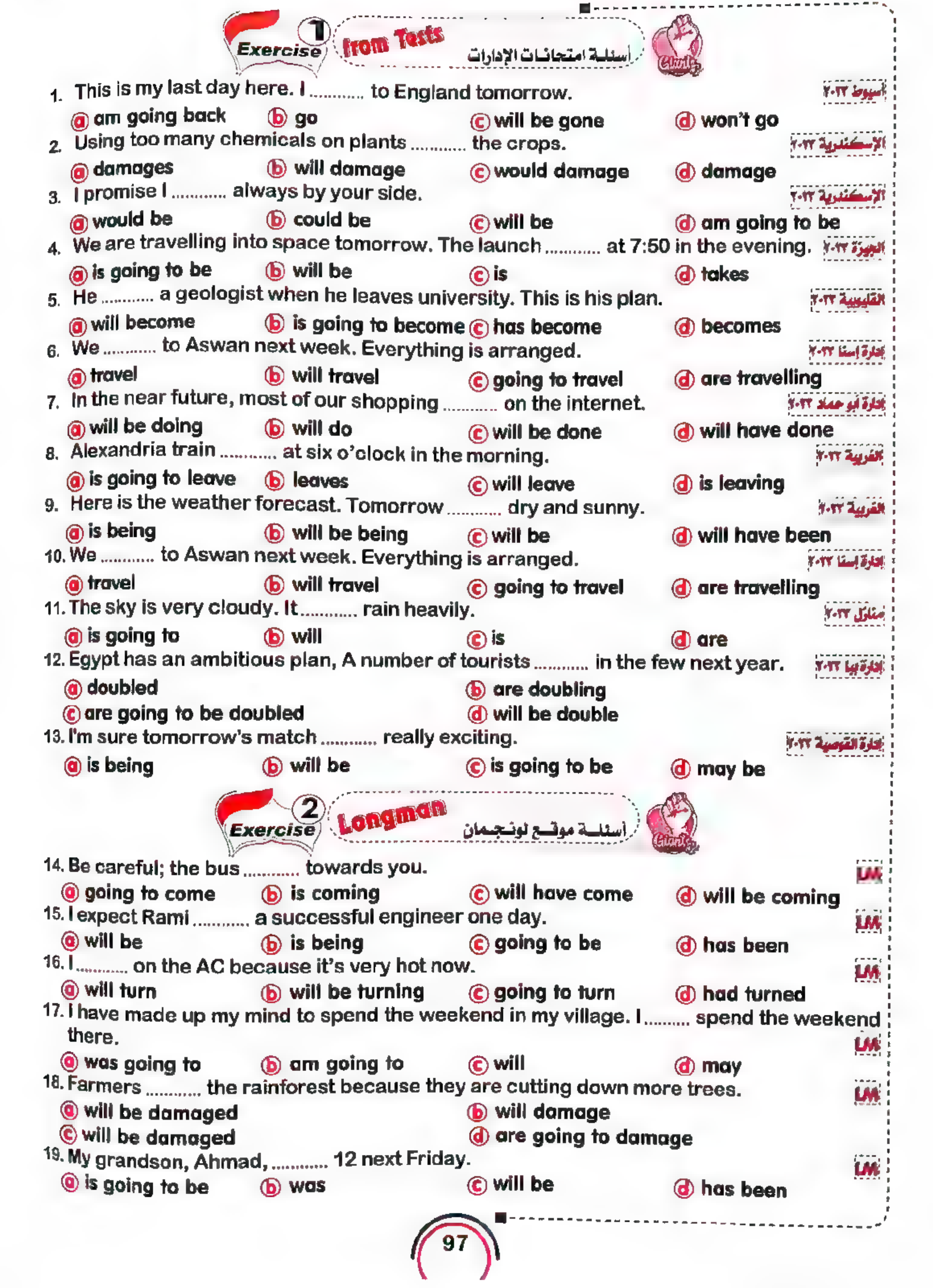
- French is studied at 7 o' clock.
- Meals are cooked every day.

الاستخدامات Uses

* حدث في المستقبل طبقاً لجدول أو تقويم (مواصلات / فتح وغلق / بداية ونهاية / دراسة / سينما / مسرح)

- The plane takes off at 9 a.m.
- Our lesson starts at 12 p.m.





Exercise 1 from Tests أسئلة امتحانات الإدارات

1. This is my last day here. I .... to England tomorrow. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ am going back ⓑ go ⓒ will be gone ⓓ won't go
2. Using too many chemicals on plants .... the crops. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ damages ⓑ will damage ⓒ would damage ⓓ damage
3. I promise I .... always by your side. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ would be ⓑ could be ⓒ will be ⓓ am going to be
4. We are travelling into space tomorrow. The launch .... at 7:50 in the evening. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ is going to be ⓑ will be ⓒ is ⓓ takes
5. He .... a geologist when he leaves university. This is his plan. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ will become ⓑ is going to become ⓒ has become ⓓ becomes
6. We .... to Aswan next week. Everything is arranged. إدارة إسنا ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ travel ⓑ will travel ⓒ going to travel ⓓ are travelling
7. In the near future, most of our shopping .... on the internet. إدارة أبو حماد ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ will be doing ⓑ will do ⓒ will be done ⓓ will have done
8. Alexandria train .... at six o'clock in the morning. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ is going to leave ⓑ leaves ⓒ will leave ⓓ is leaving
9. Here is the weather forecast. Tomorrow .... dry and sunny. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ is being ⓑ will be being ⓒ will be ⓓ will have been
10. We .... to Aswan next week. Everything is arranged. إدارة إسنا ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ travel ⓑ will travel ⓒ going to travel ⓓ are travelling
11. The sky is very cloudy. It .... rain heavily. منازل ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ is going to ⓑ will ⓒ is ⓓ are
12. Egypt has an ambitious plan, A number of tourists .... in the few next year. إدارة إيتاي ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ doubled ⓑ are doubling
    ⓒ are going to be doubled ⓓ will be double
13. I'm sure tomorrow's match .... really exciting. إدارة القوصية ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ is being ⓑ will be ⓒ is going to be ⓓ may be

Exercise 2 Longman أسئلة موقع لونجمان

14. Be careful; the bus .... towards you. LM
    ⓐ going to come ⓑ is coming ⓒ will have come ⓓ will be coming
15. I expect Rami .... a successful engineer one day. LM
    ⓐ will be ⓑ is being ⓒ going to be ⓓ has been
16. I .... on the AC because it's very hot now. LM
    ⓐ will turn ⓑ will be turning ⓒ going to turn ⓓ had turned
17. I have made up my mind to spend the weekend in my village. I .... spend the weekend there. LM
    ⓐ was going to ⓑ am going to ⓒ will ⓓ may
18. Farmers .... the rainforest because they are cutting down more trees. LM
    ⓐ will be damaged ⓑ will damage
    ⓒ will be damaged ⓓ are going to damage
19. My grandson, Ahmad, ... 12 next Friday. LM
    ⓐ is going to be ⓑ was ⓒ will be ⓓ has been

20. I .... the weekend in my village as planned.
ⓐ will have spent ⓑ am spending ⓒ am going to spend ⓓ will spend

21. If you come late again, I .... you in and you will miss the lesson.
ⓐ am going to let ⓑ won't be letting ⓒ will let ⓓ won't let

22. What do you intend to do this evening? - I .... to the theatre
ⓐ am going to go ⓑ will have gone ⓒ going to go ⓓ will go

23. Hagar .... to England, isn't she?
ⓐ will travel ⓑ had to travel ⓒ is travelling ⓓ isn't travelling

24. The amount of farmland in our area .... because people are building more houses there.
ⓐ have to decrease ⓑ is going to increase ⓒ is going to decrease ⓓ have to increase

25. The bag is heavy. - Don't worry, I .... it for you.
ⓐ can't carry ⓑ will have carried ⓒ am going to carry ⓓ will carry

26. We .... the office till we have done all our work.
ⓐ have left ⓑ had to leave ⓒ didn't leave ⓓ won't leave

27. Please, contact me later; I .... a meeting now.
ⓐ am attending ⓑ going to attend ⓒ had ⓓ will be attended

28. I am sure Adel .... for his great achievements.
ⓐ going to be rewarded ⓑ will be rewarded
ⓒ is going to be rewarded ⓓ is going to reward

29. We prepared everything for my sister's wedding; we .... a party tomorrow.
ⓐ are giving ⓑ shouldn't have given
ⓒ will be given ⓓ are going to give

30. I think our national football team .... the match.
ⓐ is going to win ⓑ will be won ⓒ will win ⓓ will be winning

31. Perhaps he .... a new car next month. Who knows?
ⓐ may buy ⓑ will buy ⓒ is going to buy ⓓ may be buying

32. Atef and Sahar .... married next Thursday. Preparations are in full swing.
ⓐ have got ⓑ going to get ⓒ will get ⓓ are getting

33. I'm sure this bag is very heavy; I .... you lift it.
ⓐ will help ⓑ going to help ⓒ am helping ⓓ will be helped

34. Let's hurry; the museum .... at 6 p.m.
ⓐ will close ⓑ was closed ⓒ closes ⓓ will be closing

Exercise 3 Giants تمارين كتاب العمالقة

35. A: I am going out. Do you want to come with me? B: Why not? I .... my jacket.
ⓐ get ⓑ am getting ⓒ am going to get ⓓ will get

36. A: What .... at the weekend? B: I intend to visit my friends in the village.
ⓐ are you going to do ⓑ did you do ⓒ you will do ⓓ you are doing

37. I have made up my mind to spend the weekend in my village; I .... spend the weekend there.
ⓐ am going to ⓑ will ⓒ was going to ⓓ may

38. I expect Rami .... a successful engineer one day.
ⓐ will be ⓑ are ⓒ going to be ⓓ have been

39. Farmers .... the rainforest because they are cutting down more trees.
ⓐ will be damaged ⓑ will damage
ⓒ going to damage ⓓ are going to damage

40. What .... when you go to university? - I intend to study engineering.
ⓐ did you study ⓑ will you study
ⓒ are you going to study ⓓ do you study

41. We have agreed where and when to meet; we .... at the club tonight as arranged.
ⓐ are going to meet ⓑ will meet ⓒ meet ⓓ are meeting

42. I think we .... the match.
ⓐ are going to win ⓑ are winning ⓒ win ⓓ will win

43. Hassan got full marks; he .... the faculty he likes.
ⓐ is going to join ⓑ joins ⓒ joined ⓓ going to join

44. The sky is clear. I think it ....
ⓐ is going to rain ⓑ will rain ⓒ isn't going to rain ⓓ won't rain

45. I .... to Sharm El Sheikh as planned.
ⓐ am going to go ⓑ am going ⓒ will go ⓓ go

46. I don't know how to log into the internet. - It's easy. I .... you now, don't worry.
ⓐ am going to show ⓑ won't show ⓒ will show ⓓ going to show

47. Who do you think .... the final match?
ⓐ would win ⓑ had won ⓒ will win ⓓ is going to win

48. Be careful, the bus .... you: it is very near.
ⓐ isn't going to hit ⓑ will hit ⓒ had hit ⓓ is going to hit

49. I .... 16 next week. Are you going to come to my birthday party?
ⓐ am being ⓑ will be ⓒ am going to be ⓓ was

50. He is clever. I think he .... high marks.
ⓐ is getting ⓑ gets ⓒ will get ⓓ is going to get

51. In the future, I think we .... electric cars.
ⓐ will drive ⓑ be driving ⓒ drive ⓓ are driving

52. They .... to build a new hospital in the city next year.
ⓐ will ⓑ going ⓒ are going ⓓ will be

53. The branch of tree is shaking, it ....
ⓐ falls ⓑ will fall ⓒ is falling ⓓ is going to fall

54. Do you think people .... holidays in space one day?
ⓐ will have ⓑ going to have ⓒ are having ⓓ will be having

55. Will you .... the bus to school next week?
ⓐ be take ⓑ be taken ⓒ take ⓓ taken

56. Watch out! You .... yourself.
ⓐ will have cut ⓑ are going to cut ⓒ are cutting ⓓ will cut

57. Take a coat to London next week because it .... cold.
ⓐ be ⓑ going to be ⓒ is going to be ⓓ would be

58. Don't be late for the bus because it .... wait for you.
ⓐ will ⓑ aren't going to ⓒ won't ⓓ don't will

59. I am sure I .... this mountain soon.
ⓐ will be climbing ⓑ am going to climb ⓒ will climb ⓓ am climbing

60. Tidy your room or I .... let you go to club.
ⓐ wouldn't ⓑ won't ⓒ couldn't ⓓ mustn't

61. Don't pick up the phone. I .... it.
ⓐ answer ⓑ am answering
ⓒ would answer ⓓ am going to answer

62. Look, this glass is cracked. It ....
ⓐ is going to break ⓑ is breaking ⓒ will break ⓓ will be breaking

63. Don't touch that dog. It .... bite you.
ⓐ is ⓑ would ⓒ is going to ⓓ is being

64. How old are you? I .... 16 on Saturday.
ⓐ am being ⓑ is going to be ⓒ will be ⓓ am

65. He is driving at breakneck speed. He .... an accident.
ⓐ is going to have ⓑ will have ⓒ has ⓓ is having

66. I'm determined. I .... and succeed. You will see.
ⓐ am trying ⓑ shall try ⓒ do try ⓓ try

67. In the future, most of our work .... by machines.
ⓐ will be doing ⓑ has been done ⓒ will be done ⓓ will do

68. I .... out tomorrow. I haven't decided yet.
ⓐ am going ⓑ will go ⓒ will be going ⓓ am going to go

69. After I have studied, I .... TV.
ⓐ going to watch ⓑ watch ⓒ will watch ⓓ watches

70. I .... there for you. Don't worry.
ⓐ am being ⓑ am going to be ⓒ will have been ⓓ will be

71. .... to Canada tomorrow? -Yes, I have got the ticket and the visa.
ⓐ Do you travel
ⓑ Are you traveling
ⓒ You will travel
ⓓ Are you going to travel

72. We have already made all the preparations. We.....our sister's wedding party tomorrow.
ⓐ are giving ⓑ will give ⓒ are going to give ⓓ gave

73. Tomorrow I .... a football match with my friend. I have phoned him.
ⓐ will watch ⓑ am watching ⓒ will be watched ⓓ watch

74. The play .... at seven every evening.
ⓐ will begin ⓑ is going to begin ⓒ begins ⓓ is beginning

75. We .... a party next Saturday. Would you like to come?
ⓐ would have ⓑ are having ⓒ were having ⓓ have

76. The school inspector .... on Thursday.
ⓐ will come ⓑ is coming ⓒ is going to come ⓓ come

77. Her wedding party .... held next Sunday.
ⓐ is being ⓑ will be ⓒ is going to be ⓓ will have

78. I can't meet you tomorrow. I .... my homework.
ⓐ do ⓑ will do ⓒ am doing ⓓ have done

79. What time .... your plane take off?
ⓐ does ⓑ would ⓒ will ⓓ is

80. Seif and I .... the final match at the stadium tomorrow. I wonder if you could join us.
ⓐ will watch ⓑ are watching ⓒ are going to watch ⓓ watch

81. The train to Aswan, ... at 7:30, will be late for an hour.
ⓐ leaves ⓑ leaving ⓒ is going to leave ⓓ will leave

82. We made all the arrangements; we .... a wedding party.
ⓐ are going to give ⓑ give ⓒ will give ⓓ are giving

83. According to the timetable, the next bus .... at 10 a.m.
ⓐ will move ⓑ moves ⓒ is going to move ⓓ is moving

84. I hope .... an army officer when I grow up.
ⓐ to be ⓑ will be ⓒ being ⓓ would be

85. I've enrolled on an English course. It .... on Sunday of next week.
ⓐ will start ⓑ is starting ⓒ is going to start ⓓ starts







The Future of food



Key Vocabulary

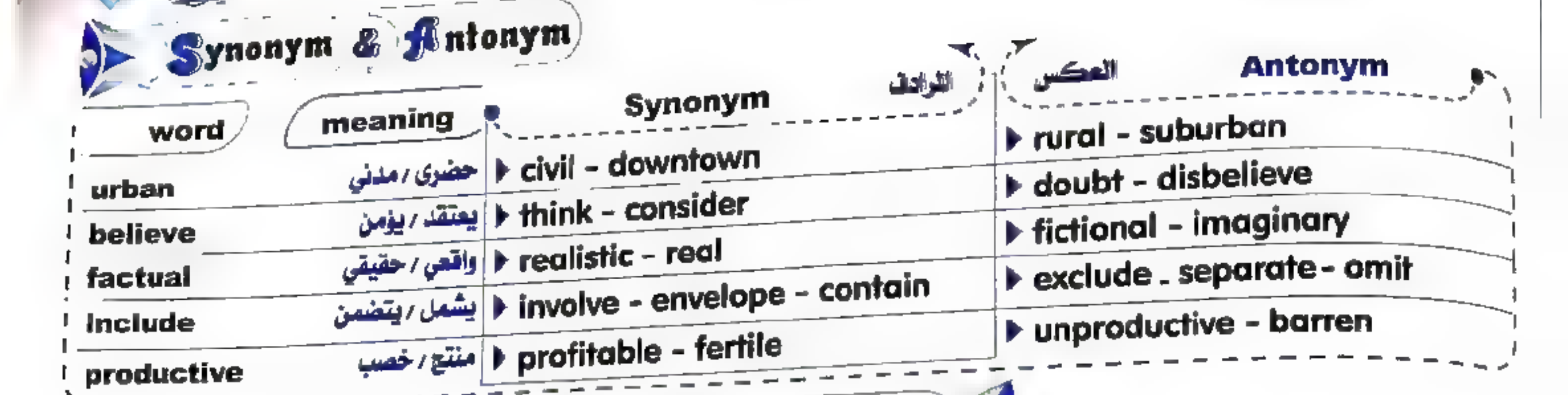
algae (n)	طحالب	seaweed (n)	عشب البحر	argue (v)	يجادل
hydroponics (n)	الزراعة المائية	reclamation (n)	استصلاح	argument (n)	جدال
urban (adj)	حضري	summarise (v)	يلخص	conclude (v)	يستنتج / يختم
rural (adj)	ريفي	summary (n)	ملخص	conclusion (n)	استنتاج / خاتمة
evidence (n)	دليل	topic (n)	موضوع	introduction (n)	مقدمة

Main Vocabulary

include (v)	يشمل / يتضمن	indoor (adj)	داخلي	essay (n)	مقال
recycle (v)	يعيد استخدام الشيء	outdoor (adj)	خارجي	phrase (n)	عبارة
notice (v)	يلاحظ	available (adj)	متاح	therefore	لذلك
soil (n)	التربة	original (adv)	أصلي	productive (adj)	منتج / خصب
weed (n)	عشب	specific (adj)	محدد	description (n)	وصف
rainfall (n)	سقوط مطر	continent (n)	قارة	island (n)	جزيرة
heat (v/n)	حرارة / يسخن	breathe (v)	يتنفس	ocean (n)	محيط
gap (n)	فجوة	several	عديد	decade (n)	عقد
behave (v)	يتصرف	desert (v/n)	صحراء / يهجر	replace (v)	يستبدل
encourage (v)	يشجع	light (n)	ضوء / خفيف	explain (v)	يشرح / يفسر
giant (adj)	عملاق	furniture (n)	أثاث	feed (v)	يطعم
chance (n)	فرصة	title (n)	عنوان / لقب	main (adj)	رئيسي / أساسي
local (adj)	محلي	fact (n)	حقيقة	traditional (adj)	تقليدي
efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	in fact	في الواقع	surface (n)	سطح
enrich (v)	يثري / يخصب	factual (adj)	واقعي / حقيقي	control (v)	يتحكم
co-operation (n)	التعاون	guide (v)	يرشد / يوجه	flow (n)	تدفق / تيار
predict (v)	يتنبأ	surprisingly (adv)	بشكل مدهش	insects (n)	حشرات
prediction (n)	التنبؤ / نبوءة	housing (n)	الإسكان	fashion (n)	موضة

King Lear

disguise (v)	يتنكر	give away (v)	يتخلى عن	attack (v)	يهاجم
servant (n)	خادم	guilty (adj)	مذنب	fool (n)	أحمق
knight (n)	فارس	faithful (adj)	مخلص	port (n)	ميناء
have a taste of her own medicine	تجني نتيجة عملها	cart (n)	عربة	profit (n)	ربح
		follow (v)	يتبع	soldiers (n)	جنود
		wise (adj)	حكيم	beggar (n)	متسول



Synonym & Antonym

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym العكس
urban	حضرى / مدنى	civil - downtown	rural - suburban
believe	يعتقد / يؤمن	think - consider	doubt - disbelieve
factual	واقعى / حقيقى	realistic - real	fictional - imaginary
include	يشمل / يتضمن	involve - envelope - contain	exclude - separate - omit
productive	منتج / خصب	profitable - fertile	unproductive - barren

Prepositions

to conclude	فى الختام	heal up	يلتئم	go up	يزداد
argue for	يجادل من اجل	based on	قائم على	increase in	زيادة فى
good for	مفيد لـ	heat .... up	يسخن	available for	متاح لـ
grow up	يكبر	lose up to	يفقد ما يصل الى	opinion on (about)	رأى فى
instead of	بدلاً من	due to	بسبب / نتيجة لـ	cut down	يقطع الأشجار

Expressions & Idioms

in the case of	في حال
in my view	من وجهة نظري
start by + ing	يبدأ بـ
start with + اسم	يبدأ بـ
fill in the gaps	يملأ الفراغات
tell the difference	يميز / يوضح الفارق
chemical weapons	أسلحة كيماوية
negative effect on	تأثير سلبي على
positive effect on	تأثير ايجابى على
over the next decades	فى العقود القادمة

Definitions

hydroponics	الزراعة المائية	the process of growing plants in water or sand rather than soil
urban	حضري	relating to, or characteristic of a town or city
algae	طحالب	very simple, usually small plants that grow in or near water and do not have ordinary leaves or roots
weed	عشب	any wild plant which grows in an unwanted place



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

weed	عشب	wood	خشب
urban	حضري	rural	ريفي
health	صحة	healthy	صحي
reason for	سبب لـ	cause of	سبب لـ
instead	بدلاً	instead of	بدلا من
frightening	مخيف (مصدر)	frightened	خائف (متأثر)
outdoor...	بالخارج (يأتى بعدها اسم)	outdoors	خارجياً / فى مكان مفتوح (تأتى آخر الجملة)



soil, land, earth & ground

soil	تربة زراعية	▸ We can grow plants here. It is a fertile **soil**.
land	اليابسة / أرض	▸ The sailor could reach the **land**.
earth	الأرض (كوكب)	▸ The spaceship returned to the **earth**.
ground	أرض / أرضية علمية	▸ I sat down on the **ground**.

everyday & every day

everyday (adj.) تستخدم كلمة واحدة بمعنى يومي وهي صفة.	▸ The problems of **everyday** life have no end.
every day (adv.) تستخدم كلمتان منفصلتان بمعنى كل يوم وهي حال.	▸ He watches TV **every day**.

win, beat, gain & earn

win	يفوز / يكسب (كأس / مباراة / .....)	▸ AL Ahly will **win** the cup. I hope so. ▸ He **won** a prize in a competition (for literature).
beat	يهزم /يتغلب على (شخص أو فريق)	▸ Egypt could **beat** France.
gain	يكتسب / يحصل على شيء معنوي مفيد (خبرة / معرفة / معلومات / شهرة) وتشير إلى زيادة في الوزن والسرعة والكمية	▸ You **gained** much information from the meeting. ▸ Aya **gained** 3 kilos in weight last month. ▸ The plane **gained** speed to take off.
earn	يكسب (قوت / رزق) مقابل عمل	▸ People work hard to **earn** money.

Collocations

do

account	يقوم بأعمال الحسابات
the same	يقوم بنفس الشيء
exercise	يقوم بعمل تدريبات
a sport	يمارس رياضة
work	يقوم بعمل
well in the test	يؤدى بشكل جيد فى الاختبار

get

regular work	يحصل على عمل منتظم
a call	تصله مكالمة
the balance right	يحصل على التوازن بشكل صحيح

make

notes	يدون ملاحظات
a mistake	يرتكب خطأ
a timetable	يعمل جدول

take

turns	يتناوب الأدوار
a break	يأخذ قسطاً من الراحة
on a project	يقوم بمشروع

ask

for help	يطلب المساعدة
for advice	يطلب النصيحة
for a reason	يسأل عن مبرر





Hydroponics

With the population of the world predicted to grow to around 10 billion by 2050, one problem we will have is finding enough land for food production. A possible solution to this problem is using something called hydroponics.

Hydroponics is a way to grow plants without using any soil. Instead, farmers grow the plants in special water which contains all the food that plants need to grow. This is a big help for farmers living in areas with poor soil. Hydroponics uses a lot less space than traditional farming and surprisingly, it also uses less water because any water that the plants do not use is reused. There are also fewer problems with insects. Almost any plant can grow using hydroponics and many plants produce more fruit and leaves this way.

Some people argue that hydroponics is not very good for large farms because they need expensive computers to control the flow of water, light, etc. to the plants, but others argue that it could offer the best solution to future problems. Many scientists think that in the future, we will be using hydroponics to grow food even in places where nothing grows now, such as deserts, Antarctica or even space.

Remember when you write a summary:

- Think about the main idea of the article
- Use the most important words and phrases from the article
- Link the ideas with phrases such as first, after that, finally
- Check the summary is clear and that you have included all the main ideas

Is algae the future of food?

We will need to find sustainable sources of food in the future because there will be more people to feed and many places will be too hot and dry for agriculture. So, why don't we think about farms in the sea?

Algae are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. They are eaten by everything from the smallest fish to giant whales. Some kinds of algae are called seaweed, and this is a very popular food in China and Japan.

Algae is very healthy and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating it in the future. They hope that farmers won't need to damage the environment, because they will be growing our food in the ocean. In fact, scientists think that growing algae will help to clean the sea and improve the air that we breathe. But will you want to eat it? Well, you might not even notice. Scientists are already using seaweed to replace salt in bread and some other foods to make it much healthier.



The future of farming

This essay will focus on the future of agriculture

First, I will explain the reason why agriculture needs to change. After that, we will look at several ways that agriculture could change. Finally, I will give my opinion on what farmers should do to prepare for the future.

The Earth's surface is heating up and soon there will be less land that farmers can use. In the case of Africa, the continent could lose up to 18 percent of its farm land in the next fifty years. 'As a result, farmers will need to farm their land even more efficiently.

Due to the fact that there will be less land available for agriculture in the future, farmers will need to grow a greater variety of crops. Evidence suggests that keeping livestock will not be sustainable and we may start the production of new sources of food, like algae, instead. In my view, farmers should see this as a chance to try new things and to start using new technology, such as robots, on their farms. They should start doing this immediately so they're prepared for the future.

To conclude, agriculture is clearly going to change a lot over the next few decades and farmers will need to change the way they farm, too.

Urban farming

This essay will focus on something my uncle is planning to do to help food production: something called urban farming.

My uncle lives in London and first, I will explain what urban farming is and why he wants to do it with a group of his friends. Urban farming is growing food in our cities. Of course, cities are not usually good for farming due to the fact that there is so little green space, but he says they will be using flat roofs, gardens and open spaces to grow what they can.

In the case of London, people already grow a lot of flowers in their gardens, but next year, the group of friends will be planting more fruit and vegetables in any open spaces they can use. At the end of the year, they will be eating fresh fruit and vegetables from these spaces.

In my view, urban farming is a great idea. It will help my uncle and his friends to save money in the shops, and it might also help them to earn money. They hope they will be selling some of the produce to local restaurants and markets.

To conclude, urban farming is an interesting idea. All the evidence suggests that it could help us grow our own food in the future, even in cities without much outdoor space.



Exercise 1 Key vocabulary تمرين على المفردات الرئيسية

1. Growing plants in water or in sand, rather than in soil is known as .... (إدارة العجمى ٢٠٢٣)
ⓐ hydroelectric ⓑ hydrochloric ⓒ hydroponics ⓓ hydrogen
2. At the end of the 17th century, England was still ......, depending mainly on agriculture. (الغربية ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ rural ⓑ urban ⓒ space ⓓ spicy
3. He .... his views in his article. (الشرقية ٢٠٢٣)
ⓐ globalized ⓑ summarized ⓒ realized ⓓ recognized
4. You mustn't .... with your parents when they try to give you advice. (LM)
ⓐ argue ⓑ deal ⓒ cooperate ⓓ urge
5. The criminal tried to .... himself so the police wouldn't recognize him. (قنا ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ encourage ⓑ disguise ⓒ behave ⓓ forget
6. New York City has a unusual demonstration farm of ....
ⓐ statistics ⓑ economics ⓒ hydroponics ⓓ hibernation
7. Algae are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. Some kinds of algae are called ....
ⓐ seabed ⓑ seaweed ⓒ sea life ⓓ seashell
8. I think .... life is better than rural life as you can enjoy all facilities there.
ⓐ urban ⓑ farm ⓒ village ⓓ countryside
9. We believe that we will depend on .... as a new source of food from the sea.
ⓐ chicken ⓑ wheat ⓒ algae ⓓ meat
10. The police believe he is the thief, but all the .... suggests otherwise.
ⓐ improve ⓑ evident ⓒ victim ⓒ evidence
11. A\An .... is a very simple plant without steam that grows near or in water.
ⓐ yield ⓑ crop ⓒ algae ⓓ hydroponic
12. .... is a type of plant that grows in the sea and can be used as food.
ⓐ seafood ⓑ seaweed ⓒ corals ⓓ whales
13. The police have found no .... of a terrorist link with the murder.
ⓐ evidence ⓑ evident ⓒ victim ⓓ innocent

Exercise 2 Main vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الاساسية

14. Scientists think that growing algae will help clean the sea and improve the air we breathe because algae .... a lot of oxygen. (LM)
ⓐ do ⓑ take ⓒ make ⓓ inhale
15. The teacher is angry with Gamal because he has .... badly with his colleagues. (LM)
ⓐ behaved ⓑ believed ⓒ relieved ⓓ told
16. .... employees should be rewarded or promoted. (LM)
ⓐ Sufficient ⓑ Efficient ⓒ Ordinary ⓓ Primary
17. Farmers need to increase their crops and use new techniques .... (القليوبية ٢٠٢٣)
ⓐ good ⓑ efficient ⓒ hardly ⓓ efficiently
18. Some people eat indoors, others prefer eating in .... restaurants. (القليوبية ٢٠٢٣)
ⓐ outdoors ⓑ outdoor ⓒ indoor ⓓ indoors

19. Hatim had gained weight and grown a thick beard; I couldn't .... him. LM
ⓐ realise ⓑ recognise ⓒ show ⓓ learn

20. My uncle usually encourages his sons to read different books to enrich their culture. "Encourages" here shows .... LM
ⓐ order ⓑ request ⓒ negative advice ⓓ positive advice

21. Can you .... the difference between the two pictures? They are nearly the same! LM
ⓐ hide ⓑ tell ⓒ appear ⓓ think

22. Al Daifi was so absorbed in his book, he didn't even .... me come in.
ⓐ know ⓑ give ⓒ notice ⓓ note

23. There is always a .... between generations due to the different ways of thinking.
ⓐ gap ⓑ gab ⓒ grab ⓓ grip

24. I promised to .... the plate that I'd dropped.
ⓐ place ⓑ displace ⓒ replace ⓓ replacement

25. The new teaching methods .... children to think for themselves.
ⓐ hinder ⓑ encourage ⓒ discourage ⓓ prevent

26. Tales are told about an island inhabited by a race of .... , as tall as houses.
ⓐ small ⓑ short ⓒ giants ⓓ tiny

27. He carefully nosed his lorry into the small ....
ⓐ map ⓑ lap ⓒ gap ⓓ tap

28. Local authorities have to learn to make use of resources ....
ⓐ self-efficient ⓑ efficiency ⓒ efficient ⓓ efficiently

29. The explosion .... the bridge, but the substructure remained intact.
ⓐ repaired ⓑ protected ⓒ damaged ⓓ produced

Exercise 3 Synonyms & Antonyms المرادفات والمتضادات

30. She kept telling herself that nothing was wrong. Keep in this sentence means ....
ⓐ raise ⓑ continue to do ⓒ stay ⓓ save

31. Include is a/an .... for involve.
ⓐ opposite ⓑ short ⓒ antonym ⓓ synonym

32. .... is a synonym to consider.
ⓐ Thank ⓑ Believe ⓒ Doubt ⓓ Disbelieve

33. I always keep a copy of any official or important letters that I send off. Keep in this sentence means ....
ⓐ continue doing ⓑ continue to have ⓒ stay ⓓ save

34. The bill includes tax and service. The antonym of 'include' is ....
ⓐ involve ⓑ exclude ⓒ consist ⓓ contain

35. The word "encourage" is similar in meaning to the word ....
ⓐ insult ⓑ hinder ⓒ prevent ⓓ inspire

36. A lot of farmers keep cattle on their farms. Keep in this sentence means ....
ⓐ raise ⓑ continue to have ⓒ stay ⓓ save

37. Pollution has reached high levels in some urban areas. Urban is a synonym for ....
ⓐ continent ⓑ rural ⓒ the country ⓓ civil

38. He wanted a job that would allow him to keep his family in comfort. Keep in this sentence means ....
ⓐ raise ⓑ continue to have ⓒ stay ⓓ save

39. Can we depend on hydroponics instead .... the traditional way of farming?
ⓐ for ⓑ on ⓒ off ⓓ of
40. The media focus .... politicians' private lives inevitably switches the attention away from the real issues.
ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ of
41. Due .... wet leaves on the line, this train will arrive an hour late.
ⓐ to ⓑ of ⓒ from ⓓ on
42. The bush grows well in a sandy ....
ⓐ ground ⓑ floor ⓒ soil ⓓ location
43. I'm trying to cut .... on caffeine.
ⓐ down ⓑ out ⓒ up ⓓ off
44. You should .... a proper revision plan before final exams.
ⓐ repair ⓑ sit ⓒ make ⓓ do
45. Success in life is based .... hard work and cooperation.
ⓐ on ⓑ in ⓒ at ⓓ from
46. Football is an outdoor game but basketball is played ....
ⓐ indoor ⓑ outdoor ⓒ outdoors ⓓ indoors
47. I hate .... especially flies and mosquitoes.
ⓐ animals ⓑ insects ⓒ birds ⓓ livestock
48. It's a good idea to visit the zoo when they're .... the animals.
ⓐ killing ⓑ having ⓒ eating ⓓ feeding
49. We offer our guests a wide range of .... activities.
ⓐ doors ⓑ outdoor ⓒ outdoors ⓓ indoors
50. This .... of the park has been specially designated for children.
ⓐ area ⓑ earth ⓒ ear ⓓ state
51. She eats an unbelievable .... of food.
ⓐ quality ⓑ amount ⓒ mount ⓓ mountain
52. The opportunity to travel is one of the .... attractions of this job.
ⓐ men ⓑ remain ⓒ main ⓓ mean
53. He's bought me a smart new camera to .... my old one.
ⓐ replacement ⓑ palace ⓒ place ⓓ replace
54. The hotel has a .... discount rate for newlyweds.
ⓐ social ⓑ special ⓒ spicy ⓓ specially
55. He's established himself as a dependable .... of information.
ⓐ resource ⓑ sauce ⓒ resort ⓓ saving
56. Children make up a large proportion of the world's ....
ⓐ pollution ⓑ population ⓒ expression ⓓ evacuation
57. What time do you usually .... to your office?
ⓐ reach ⓑ get ⓒ stay ⓓ arrive
58. Stop eating a lot of fats and carbohydrates or you will .... more weight.
ⓐ miss ⓑ lose ⓒ gain ⓓ earn
59. The plane took off and quickly started to .... height.
ⓐ lose ⓑ gain ⓒ beat ⓓ earn

60. Most professional footballers .... a lot of money.
ⓐ grow ⓑ earn ⓒ beat ⓓ overcome

61. My children, Omar and Salma, have both .... good results in the final exam.
ⓐ deceived ⓑ achieved ⓒ removed ⓓ succeeded

62. Luckily, the local people started to .... money from tourism.
ⓐ make ⓑ do ⓒ gain ⓓ beat

63. Most big cities are .... quickly which results in serious problems.
ⓐ planting ⓑ growing ⓒ making ⓓ revealing

64. He studied medicine at Cairo university and .... as a doctor.
ⓐ applied ⓑ supplied ⓒ qualified ⓓ tried

65. Potatoes grown using .... may be harmful for our health.
ⓐ chemicals ⓑ manure ⓒ nature ⓓ silt

Exercise 6 King Lear تمارين على الملك لير

66. The burglar has .... himself in different clothes so that no one could recognize him.
ⓐ disappeared ⓑ hurried ⓒ disguised ⓓ guessed

67. Our brave armed forces are able to .... our country against any enemy at any time.
ⓐ respect ⓑ attack ⓒ suspect ⓓ protect

68. The old man's daughter is very cruel to him, so he hopes that she will have a taste of her own .... in the future. إدارة إسنا ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ medicine ⓑ discipline ⓒ disguise ⓓ material

69. Having made sure that I'm not .... , the judge set me free. LM
ⓐ guilt ⓑ innocence ⓒ innocent ⓓ guilty

70. I feel really .... about forgetting my wife's birthday again. She must get upset. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ shy ⓑ guilty ⓒ innocent ⓓ proud

71. The criminal .... himself in different clothes so that no one could recognise him. LM
ⓐ disappeared ⓑ showed ⓒ disguised ⓓ guessed



Future Continuous

will be + V + ing

Affirmation الإثبات

will + be + v + ing

- She will be studying French at 7 tomorrow.
- They will be cooking meals from 8 to 9 tomorrow.

Negative النفي

won't + be + v + ing

- She won't be studying French at 7 tomorrow.
- They won't be cooking meals from 8 to 9 tomorrow.

Question السؤال

Will + فاعل + be + ing ?

- Will she be studying French at 7 tomorrow?
  - Yes, she will.
  - No, she won't.

Passive المبنى للمجهول

مفعول + will + be + P.P.

- French will be studied at 7 tomorrow.
- Meals will be cooked from 8 to 9 tomorrow.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

at .... tomorrow	from .... to	between .... and ....
at .... next	This time next	tomorrow morning ....

Uses الاستخدامات

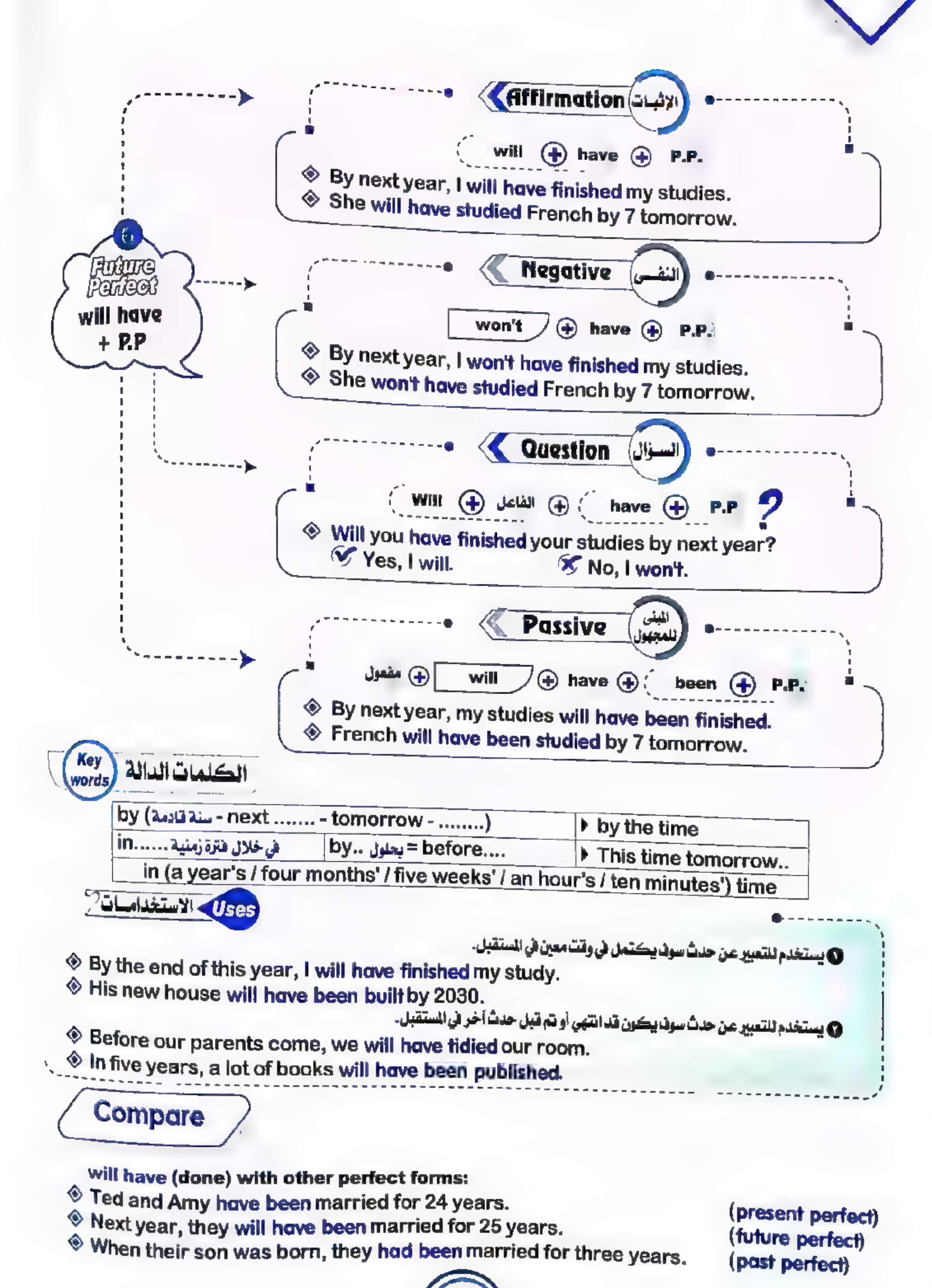
1. يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمراً في نقطة معينة في المستقبل.

- At 10 tomorrow, he will be in his office, he will be working.
- This time tomorrow I will be sitting in the cinema. I will be watching a movie.
- At this time tomorrow, the engine will be repaired.
- In the future. I'll be playing tennis from 7 to 9 p.m.
- Don't phone between 7 and 8. We'll be having dinner.

2. للحديث عن أحداث ما تم ترتيبها وتخطيطها في المستقبل.

- At 9.30 next Tuesday, we will be attending her wedding party.





6 Future Perfect
will have + P.P

Affirmation الإثبات

will + have + P.P.

- By next year, I **will have finished** my studies.
- She **will have studied** French by 7 tomorrow.

Negative النفـي

won't + have + P.P.

- By next year, I **won't have finished** my studies.
- She **won't have studied** French by 7 tomorrow.

Question السؤال

Will + الفاعل + have + P.P ?

- **Will** you **have finished** your studies by next year?
  - ✓ Yes, I will. ✗ No, I won't.

Passive المبنى للمجهول

مفعول + will + have + been + P.P.

- By next year, my studies **will have been finished.**
- French **will have been studied** by 7 tomorrow.

Key words الكلمات الدالة

by (سنة قادمة - next .... - tomorrow - ....)		▸ by the time
in...... في خلال فترة زمنية	by.. بحلول = before....	▸ This time tomorrow..
in (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes') time		

Uses الاستخدامات

❶ يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكتمل في وقت معين في المستقبل.

- By the end of this year, I **will have finished** my study.
- His new house **will have been built** by 2030.

❷ يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى أو تم قبل حدث آخر في المستقبل.

- Before our parents come, we **will have tidied** our room.
- In five years, a lot of books **will have been published.**

Compare

will have (done) with other perfect forms:

- Ted and Amy **have been** married for 24 years. (present perfect)
- Next year, they **will have been** married for 25 years. (future perfect)
- When their son was born, they **had been** married for three years. (past perfect)

ممكن تحاول تفهم وتكتب سبب الاختيار

1. After Ali (had finished - has finished) his work, he will call us.
2. She won't leave until she (has had - had had - has been) her money.
3. It is cloudy. I think it (will - is going to) rain.
4. It is cloudy. I (won't - am not going to) go out.
5. The shop (will be opening - opens) from 9 until 6 tomorrow.
6. I think our lesson (starts - will start) at 6 o'clock.
7. She is very clever. She (will - is going to) get full marks.
8. He is very tired. He (will - is going to) see a doctor.
9. The President (will visit - is going to visit - is visiting) Aswan tomorrow.
10. I expect we (shall - are going to) win the cup.
11. After (has call - had called - calling) her, I will tell you what happened.
12. This novel (will be published - will publish - will be come out) soon.
13. I have just decided that I (am going to - will) buy this dress.
14. The water is boiling. I (will - am going to) turn off the cooker.
15. I can't meet you tomorrow as I (will revise - will be revising) my lessons.



Exercise 1 from Tests أسئلة امتحانات الإدارات

1. Ramiz .... for his final exam from 9 to 12 o'clock tomorrow. Don't ring him at that time.
   ⓐ will have revised ⓑ will be revised ⓒ will be revising ⓓ will revise
2. Our family .... to Cairo this time tomorrow, so I can't meet you.
   ⓐ travels ⓑ will be traveling ⓒ is going to travel ⓓ will have travelled
3. From 6:00 to 8:00 tomorrow, I .... the final match on TV.
   ⓐ will watch ⓑ watch ⓒ will be watching ⓓ will have watched
4. Don't phone me at 10 o'clock because I .... then.
   ⓐ will sleep ⓑ slept ⓒ am going to sleep ⓓ will be sleeping





Exercise 2 Longman أسئلة موقع لونجمان

5. Mohamed is very kind. That's why .... (choose two answers)
   ⓐ I expect him to help me.
   ⓑ I expect he would help me.
   ⓒ I expect he will help me.
   ⓓ I expect he won't help me.
   ⓔ I expected that he will help me.
6. Don't worry, everything is OK. (choose two answers)
   ⓐ We aren't going to give a party tomorrow.
   ⓑ We have finished all arrangements for the party.
   ⓒ We hope to give a party tomorrow.
   ⓓ We will have given a party tomorrow.
   ⓔ We are giving a party tomorrow.
7. More people .... electric cars, and therefore we will cut down on pollution.
   ⓐ were using ⓑ had to use ⓒ going to use ⓓ will be using
8. Don't expect him to come this evening; he .... an important meeting.
   ⓐ going to attend ⓑ will be attended ⓒ will be attending ⓓ had attended



9. I can't go to the cinema with you this evening because I .... for my brother's wedding. LM

ⓐ will prepare ⓑ will be preparing ⓒ had to prepare ⓓ going to prepare

10. My brother will go to the park when he .... his homework. LM

ⓐ finishes ⓑ had finished ⓒ finish ⓓ will finish

11. If you exceed the speed limit, you .... a fine. LM

ⓐ will be paid ⓑ will have to pay ⓒ will be paying ⓓ must have paid

12. What .... from 6 to 8 next evening? LM

ⓐ will you do ⓑ were you doing ⓒ will you be doing ⓓ have you done

13. All next year, scientists .... on decreasing global warming. LM

ⓐ are going to work ⓑ will be working ⓒ will work ⓓ will have worked

14. Shall we eat out tomorrow? This question shows .... LM

ⓐ suggestion ⓑ future fact ⓒ order ⓓ expectation

15. The sky is clear. I think it .... LM

ⓐ is going to rain ⓑ isn't going to rain ⓒ will be raining ⓓ can't rain

16. I promise .... you as soon as I finish working on this project. LM

ⓐ to visit ⓑ will visit ⓒ visiting ⓓ would visit

17. Mr Awny promised that efficient workers .... the following month. LM

ⓐ will be promoted ⓑ will promote ⓒ would be promoted ⓓ would promote

18. I don't think our players .... the match, will they? LM

ⓐ aren't winning ⓑ won't win ⓒ are going to win ⓓ will win

19. I wish I .... a better job with a higher salary. LM

ⓐ could get ⓑ will get ⓒ to get ⓓ am getting

20. One of the following sentences is structurally INCORRECT: LM

ⓐ Yasser will be revising for the exam all this evening.
ⓑ I am going to spend the week end in Alexandria as intended.
ⓒ The first lesson will start at 8 a.m. as usual.
ⓓ Don't worry, I will help you solve this problem.

21. One of the following sentences is structurally CORRECT: LM

ⓐ Hurry up or you will be missing the train.
ⓑ The boy is going to be punished because of his bad behaviour.
ⓒ As soon as he will travel to London, he will send us an email.
ⓓ I expect we are going to solve the housing problem.

22. In a week's time, I .... by the beach. LM

ⓐ was relaxing ⓑ will be relaxing ⓒ will relax ⓓ going to relax

23. He is going to visit us next week. This means that .... next week .

ⓐ he has arranged to visit us ⓑ he has planned to visit us
ⓒ he has prepared to visit us ⓓ he has thought of visiting us

24. He is visiting us next week. This means that .... next week .

ⓐ he has arranged to visit us ⓑ he has planned to visit us
ⓒ he has decided to visit us ⓓ he has promised to visit us

25. I can't play tennis with you this evening as I .... an urgent task for several hours. LM

ⓐ will be doing ⓑ had to do ⓒ should have done ⓓ will do

Exercise 3 Giants تمارين كتاب المسابقة

26. I can't meet you tonight because I .... my brother at the airport.

ⓐ had met ⓑ am meeting ⓒ will meet ⓓ going to meet

27. All next year, scientists .... on an effective vaccine against COVID-19.
ⓐ have worked ⓑ will be working ⓒ will work ⓓ will have worked

28. Our class .... working in the laboratory all this afternoon.
ⓐ will ⓑ are going to ⓒ will be ⓓ be

29. There's a train .... at six o'clock tomorrow. I hope I will catch it.
ⓐ will leave ⓑ leaves ⓒ is going to leave ⓓ leaving

30. In 2030, I .... a teacher for 20 years.
ⓐ will be ⓑ am going to be ⓒ have been ⓓ will have been

31. In next week's radio programme, we .... to a famous scientist.
ⓐ talk ⓑ will be talking ⓒ talking ⓓ have talked

32. In a few years' time, I think that all my friends .... at university!
ⓐ will studying ⓑ going to study ⓒ is studying ⓓ will be studying

33. I can't come to the sports club next week because I .... to Aswan.
ⓐ will travel ⓑ will be travelling ⓒ will travelling ⓓ will be traveled

34. They .... a new factory in this area by the end of 2030.
ⓐ will have built ⓑ will be building ⓒ will build ⓓ are building

35. I won't be able to talk to you all the day tomorrow because I .... my homework.
ⓐ would be doing ⓑ will have done ⓒ will be doing ⓓ may do

36. This time next year, I .... at university.
ⓐ will study ⓑ will be studied ⓒ will be studying ⓓ will have studied

37. He .... sick for six days tomorrow.
ⓐ will be ⓑ are going to be ⓒ is ⓓ will have been

38. By 2040, we hope that oil .... replaced by clean energy.
ⓐ will have ⓑ will have been ⓒ will be ⓓ would have been

39. At the end of this month, they .... in their house for one year.
ⓐ are being ⓑ are going to be ⓒ will have been ⓓ will be

40. Next month, I .... for the company for six years.
ⓐ will have worked ⓑ will be working ⓒ am going to work ⓓ will work

41. Mother .... the housework between 10 a.m. and 2 p.m. tomorrow.
ⓐ is doing ⓑ will have done ⓒ will be doing ⓓ will be

42. At five o'clock tomorrow, she .... on a train to Alex.
ⓐ will be travelling ⓑ will have travelled ⓒ going to travel ⓓ travels

43. A lot of people are waiting for the museum to open. It .... busy there today!
ⓐ is being ⓑ was ⓒ is going to be ⓓ has been

44. In four years' time, she .... her education.
ⓐ will be finished ⓑ will finish
ⓒ will have finished ⓓ will have been finished

45. A new bridge .... here by the government by the end of this year.
ⓐ will build ⓑ will be building ⓒ will have been built ⓓ will have built

46. Mr Ali has an appointment with a dentist. He .... a doctor next Monday.
ⓐ see ⓑ is seeing ⓒ saw ⓓ will see

47. Watch out! The car .... you!
ⓐ is going to hit ⓑ is hitting ⓒ hits ⓓ will hit

48. By next May, I .... a new house.
ⓐ will build ⓑ am going to build ⓒ will have built ⓓ will be building

49. By five o'clock tonight, I .... all my homework.
ⓐ finish ⓑ am finishing ⓒ will finish ⓓ 'll have finished

50. The year 2025 .... the four-hundredth anniversary of the founding of the university.

ⓐ is being ⓑ will have been ⓒ will be ⓓ is going to be

51. The cup is on the edge of the table. It .... fall.

ⓐ is going to ⓑ will ⓒ shall ⓓ being

52. .... me a favour, please?

ⓐ Will you do ⓑ Are you doing

ⓒ Do you do ⓓ Are you going to do

53. I can't meet you this evening. I .... the shopping.

ⓐ have done ⓑ do ⓒ am doing ⓓ may do

54. At ten o'clock tomorrow, Mr Ahmed .... on a train to Beni Suef!

ⓐ travel ⓑ will have travelled ⓒ going to travel ⓓ will be travelling

55. Don't be late. The bus .... at exactly ten o'clock!

ⓐ leaves ⓑ going to leave ⓒ has left ⓓ left

56. Mr Al Daifi .... married next Sunday.

ⓐ will get ⓑ will have got ⓒ is getting ⓓ is going to get

57. Perhaps I .... him next week.

ⓐ will see ⓑ am seeing ⓒ am going to see ⓓ see

58. She .... to England next Monday. Everything is arranged.

ⓐ is flying ⓑ flies ⓒ fly ⓓ would fly

59. It's arranged. We .... to Alex this summer.

ⓐ will go ⓑ go ⓒ are going ⓓ may go

60. Don't phone me at 8.00 a.m. I .... the kids to school.

ⓐ may drive ⓑ driving ⓒ drive ⓓ will be driving

61. I've decided that I .... her on Sunday

ⓐ meet ⓑ 'm going to meet ⓒ 'll meet ⓓ would meet

62. Some scientists believe that more people .... seaweed in the future.

ⓐ eat ⓑ will eating ⓒ will be eating ⓓ are eating

63. If you come first this month, you .... a prize.

ⓐ will give ⓑ are going to give ⓒ can give ⓓ will be given

64. You'll be late for your train- I .... you to the station if you like.

ⓐ am driving ⓑ will be driving ⓒ will drive ⓓ will have driven

65. Give the money back or we .... call the police.

ⓐ are going to ⓑ will ⓒ would ⓓ were going to

66. I predict that Ahmed .... a part- time job during the next summer holiday.

ⓐ shall find ⓑ is finding ⓒ will find ⓓ finds

67. By this time next month, the builders .... the house.

ⓐ will complete ⓑ will be completing

ⓒ will have completed ⓓ will have been completing

68. At this time next Friday, we .... to New York.

ⓐ will being fly ⓑ 'll being flying ⓒ will be flying ⓓ flying

69. She has already decided. She .... her old flat.

ⓐ is going to sell ⓑ is going to be sold ⓒ will have sold ⓓ will sell





١. تقوم الحكومة بتنفيذ العديد من المشروعات القومية العملاقة في كل أنحاء البلاد. وتهدف هذه المشروعات إلى توفير فرص عمل للمواطنين وزيادة الناتج المحلي والقضاء على البطالة.

المنيا ٢٠٢٢

ⓐ The government carries out a lot of small national projects all over the country. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for citizens, double the national production and eliminate unemployment.

ⓑ The government carries out a lot of giant national projects all over the world. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for citizens, increase the national production and eliminate unemployment.

ⓒ The government carries out a lot of big national projects all over the country. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for foreigners, increase the national production and eliminate employment.

ⓓ The government carries out a lot of giant national projects all over the country. These projects aim to provide job opportunities for citizens, increase the national production and eliminate unemployment.

٢. المعرفة قوة، وهي ما يميز البشر عن غيرهم من المخلوقات، فالإنسان هو المخلوق الوحيد القادر على الإبداع والاختراع، مما يزيد أفق المعرفة.

إدارة فاقوس ٢٠٢٢

ⓐ Knowledge is energy and it distinguished humans from other creatures. The man is the only creature who is able to create and invent which increases the horizon of knowledge.

ⓑ Knowledge is power and it resembles humans from other creatures. Man is the only creature who is able to create and invent which increases the horizon of knowledge

ⓒ Knowledge is power and it distinguishes humans from other creatures. Man is the only creature who is able to create and invent which increases the horizon of knowledge.

ⓓ Knowledge is energy and it distinguishes humans from other creatures. Man is the only creature who is able to recreate and invent which increases the horizon of knowledge

٣. يَجِبُ أَنْ نُشَجِّعَ الشَّبَابَ عَلَى الْقِيَامِ بِعَمَلٍ تَطَوُّعِيٍّ حَتَّى يَتَمَكَّنُوا مِنَ الْمُشَارَكَةِ فِي حَلِّ مَشَاكِلِ الْمُجْتَمَعِ وَمُسَاعَدَةِ الْمُحْتَاجِينَ

ⓐ We must encourage young people to engage in teenage work so that they can participate in solving social problems and helping those in need.

ⓑ We must encourage young people to engage in volunteer work so that they can participate in solving sociable problems and helping those in need.

ⓒ We must encourage young people to engage in volunteer work so that they can participate in solving social problems and helping those in need.

ⓓ We must discourage young people to engage in volunteer work so that they can participate in solving social problems and helping those in need..

4. Leaders of major countries must develop a plan to distribute food products to the world's population to ensure that everyone has access to food, especially in countries stricken by famine and drought.

(أ) قادة المدن الكبرى يجب أن يقوموا بوضع خطة لتوزيع منتجات الغذاء على سكان العالم لضمان حصول الجميع على الطعام، خاصة في الدول المنكوبة بالمجاعة والجفاف.

(ب) قادة الدول الكبرى يجب أن يقوموا بوضع خطة لتوزيع منتجات الغذاء على سكان العالم لضمان عدم حصول الجميع على الطعام، خاصة في الدول المنكوبة بالمجاعة والجفاف.

(ج) قادة الدول الكبرى يجب أن يقوموا بوضع خطة لتوزيع منتجات الغذاء على سكان العالم لضمان حصول الجميع على الطعام، خاصة في الدول المنكوبة بالمجاعة والفيضان.

(د) قادة الدول الكبرى يجب أن يقوموا بوضع خطة لتوزيع منتجات الغذاء على سكان العالم لضمان حصول الجميع على الطعام، خاصة في الدول المنكوبة بالمجاعة والجفاف.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many people have jobs that are not very interesting, but a lot of people have to work at night, and this is very difficult. When everybody else is getting ready to go out, they have to go to work, and this puts a lot of psychological stress on them. It is also not very healthy because the human body is designed to be active in the day and to rest in the dark. If this cycle is <u>reversed</u>, it can have a bad effect on a person's health. So, why do people do night shift? Nowadays many business have to offer a 24 hour service, like hotels, delivery companies, some supermarkets open all night and all day, call centres and hospitals. It is true that some people only need a few hours sleep at night but the majority need eight hours. Humans are most active in the middle of the day, and the time when they are least able to concentrate and be efficient is between 2am and 4 am. This is the worst time to drive, or to do anything that needs concentration. The body finds it very difficult to adapt to the opposite cycle. Things are not likely to get better in the future because more and more business are working 24 hour cycles to keep in step with our 24 hour society.

1. The main idea of this passage is about ....
   - ⓐ giving an advice about working late.
   - ⓑ helping people change their way of life.
   - ⓒ describing the importance of work.
   - ⓓ how working at night can be harmful.
2. The writer's opinion about night shifts is that ....
   - ⓐ it is easier than working during the day.
   - ⓑ there is a variety of them.
   - ⓒ you get better working conditions.
   - ⓓ many people refuse to work at night.
3. According to the passage, we know that ....
   - ⓐ it's difficult to change your sleeping needs.
   - ⓑ people tend to sleep only between 2 am and 4 am.
   - ⓒ people sleep better in the early morning.
   - ⓓ everybody needs the same amount of sleep.
4. About the future, the writer mentioned that ....
   - ⓐ fewer people will work during the day.
   - ⓑ some jobs will always be done at night.
   - ⓒ nobody will work at night.
   - ⓓ many people will stop working during the day.
5. The best title of the passage is "........... ".
   - ⓐ 24 hours sleep cycles!
   - ⓑ Society is changing but our bodies are not!
   - ⓒ A good night's sleep can change your life!
   - ⓓ A worker that sleeps more, works more!
6. The underlined word "reversed" can be replaced with ....
   - ⓐ balanced
   - ⓑ different
   - ⓒ overturned
   - ⓓ opposed
7. The writer thinks that the majority of people need .... hours of sleep.
   - ⓐ 8
   - ⓑ 24
   - ⓒ 16
   - ⓓ 2
8. People who have to work night shifts struggle with ....
   - ⓐ the quality of sleep
   - ⓑ more sleeping time
   - ⓒ emotional stress
   - ⓓ psychological stress

Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

"How we can take care of ourselves"

....

....

....





A Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourism is the most important .... of our national income.
   ⓐ source ⓑ sorts ⓒ original ⓓ sauce
2. I haven't seen my cousin for five years. I'm sure she ....
   ⓐ grow ⓑ will have grown ⓒ will be grown ⓓ is growing
3. The increase in .... hinders our progress and our development.
   ⓐ agriculture ⓑ industry ⓒ population ⓓ innovation
4. The earthquake has .... a lot of damage to the houses in the area.
   ⓐ done ⓑ made ⓒ given ⓓ brought
5. I can't see you tomorrow. I .... my cousin.
   ⓐ am meeting ⓑ meet ⓒ am going to meet ⓓ will meet
6. .... tennis after school today?
   ⓐ Are you playing ⓑ Do you play ⓒ Shall you play ⓓ Do you go to play
7. He drives at breakneck speed. He .... an accident.
   ⓐ has ⓑ will have ⓒ is going to have ⓓ is having
8. She has decided that she .... English.
   ⓐ is studying ⓑ is going to study ⓒ studies ⓓ will be studying
9. He .... from their remarks that they were not in favour of the plan.
   ⓐ included ⓑ concluded ⓒ conclusion ⓓ induced
10. My uncle keeps .... on his farm, such as sheep and goats.
    ⓐ insects ⓑ birds ⓒ fish ⓓ livestock
11. I've bought the tickets. I .... the film on the cinema.
    ⓐ will see ⓑ see ⓒ am seeing ⓓ am going to see
12. Hello, Ahmed, I .... to the airport in a minute.
    ⓐ go ⓑ am going ⓒ have gone ⓓ would have gone
13. Look where you are going. You .... into a hole.
    ⓐ will step ⓑ will be stepped ⓒ step ⓓ are going to step
14. I'm saving up. I .... a car.
    ⓐ will have bought ⓑ am going to buy ⓒ am buying ⓓ will be buying
15. There's no .... that he is guilty and committed the crime.
    ⓐ guidance ⓑ evidence ⓒ support ⓓ suppose

B Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

As the world population continues to grow and climate change makes it more difficult to produce food in the traditional way, scientists are developing new ways of growing plants efficiently. One of these ways is growing plants without soil. Although this may sound like a modern process, it is not new technology. Ancient Egyptians writings describe how plants were grown in water and early examples include the famous gardens of Babylon and floating gardens built by the Aztec in Mexico. In traditional farming, soil protects the roots of plants, but scientists have shown that plants don't need soil to grow as long as <u>they</u> can get nutrients from somewhere, they will grow successfully. To grow plants without soil, a special fertilizer is added to water, the plants take this in through their roots.

Recently, this technology has developed very quickly. It is common in northern Europe where it is used to grow food crops. Vegetables have been grown in submarines and astronauts have produced food in space using this technology. Many people think that growing plants in water could help to solve the world's food problems. As cities become larger, there is less land for agriculture. Countries with little land for growing crops could produce more of their food without soil. This way can also be used in poor soils such as deserts and in areas near the sea where is salty water is damaging the soil. Perhaps soon there will be no areas in the world where food can be produced.

16. The best title for this passage is ....
ⓐ floating gardens ⓑ food shortage ⓒ traditional forming ⓓ planting without soil

17. There must be a .... to grow plants in water.
ⓐ vitamin ⓑ medicine ⓒ food ⓓ fertilizer

18. Growing plants in water can be used in areas with .... soil.
ⓐ rich ⓑ poor ⓒ strong ⓓ excellent

19. Scientists are .... to solve the world's food problems.
ⓐ imagining ⓑ helping ⓒ urging ⓓ questioning

20. As cities become larger, there is .... land for agriculture.
ⓐ few ⓑ many ⓒ much ⓓ less

21. In traditional farming, soil .... the roots of plants.
ⓐ protects ⓑ covers ⓒ damages ⓓ feeds

22. Ancient Egyptian writings describe .... plants were grown in water
ⓐ when ⓑ who ⓒ how ⓓ where

23. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....
ⓐ plants ⓑ scientists ⓒ roots ⓓ cities

C Writing

24. A: Translate the following into Arabic.

علينا ترشيد إستهلاكنا من البترول والاعتماد على مصادر الطاقة المتجددة في مختلف المجالات، وهذا سوف يقلل من الاحتباس الحراري الذي يؤدي إلى تغير المناخ المؤثر على حياتنا.

UM

ⓐ We must delete our consumption of oil and rely on renewable energy sources in a few fields, and this will reduce global warming, which leads to climate change affecting our lives.
ⓑ We must rationalize our production of oil and rely on renewable energy sources in various fields, and this will prevent global warming, which leads to climate change that affects our lives .
ⓒ We must rationalize our consumption of oil and rely on renewable energy sources in various fields, and this will reduce global warming, which leads to climate change that affects our lives.
ⓓ We must rationalize our consumption of oil and rely on renewable resources in various fields, and this will reduce global warming, which adds to climate change affecting our lives.

25. B: Translate the following into English.

Presidential initiatives, such as the Solidarity and Dignity and Decent life initiatives, are expected to significantly contribute improving the quality of life of Egyptians everywhere, especially in rural areas.

إدارة فاقوس ٢٠٢٢

(أ) من المتوقع أن تساهم المبادرات الرئاسية ، مثل مبادرة تكافل وكرامة وحياة كريمة، بشكل عظيم في تحسين نوعية حياة المصريين في كل مكان. وخاصة في المناطق الريفية.
(ب) من المتوقع أن تساهم المبادرات الوزارية ، مثل مبادرة لتكافل اجتماعي وحياة كريمة، بشكل كبير في تحسين نوعية حياة المصريين في كل مكان. وخاصة في المناطق الريفية.
(ج) من المتوقع أن تساهم المبادرات الرئاسية، مثل مبادرة تكافل ,وكرامة وحياة جديدة، بشكل عظيم في تحسين نوعية حياة المصريين في كل مكان. وخاصة في المناطق النائية.
(د) من المتوقع أن تساهم المبادرات الرئاسية، مثل مبادرة تكافل ,وكرامة وحياة كريمة، بشكل كبير في تحسين أحوال المصريين في كل مكان. وخاصة في المناطق الشعبية.

26. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

The future of food

أزهر دمياط ٢٠٢٢

1) Complete the following dialogue: (2 Marks)

Huda Have you heard from Ola? ...., what's wrong with her?
Lamia ❶ ....
Huda ❷ ....?
Lamia ❸ ....
Huda She is in hospital with a broken leg.
Lamia ❹ ....?
Huda We can visit her tomorrow.

أزهر الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (5 Marks)

Hydroponics is a way to grow plants without using any soil. Instead, farmers grow the plants in special water which contains all the food that plants need to grow. This is a big help for farmers living in areas with poor soil. Hydroponics uses a lot less space than traditional farming and it also uses less water. There are also fewer problems with insects. Many scientists think that in the future, we will be using hydroponics to grow food.

A Answer the following questions:

1. How farmers can use less soil?
....

2. Why is hydroponics important?
....

3. Give a suitable title to the passage?
....

B Choose the correct answer:

4. Hydroponics uses .... space for farming.
ⓐ a lot ⓑ no ⓒ many ⓓ less

5. A .... to this problem is using hydroponics.
ⓐ solve ⓑ solution ⓒ solves ⓓ soil

أزهر القليوبية ٢٠٢٢

3. A- Translate into Arabic: (1 Mark)

Young people are able to share in doing voluntary work in different fields.
....
....

B-Translate into English: (1 Mark)

علمني والدى درساً عظيماً أن النجاح يحتاج إلى العمل الجاد.

....
....





Changing English



Key Vocabulary

abbreviate (v)	يختصر	emoji (n)	رمز تعبيري / إشعار	necessitate (v)	يستلزم / يتطلب
abbreviation (n)	اختصار	tone (n)	نغمة الصوت / نبرة الصوت	necessary (adj)	ضروري
acronym	اختصار الكلمات بالحروف الأولى	misunderstand (v)	يسئ فهم	necessity (n)	الضرورة
frown (v/n)	يقطب جبينه / يكشر / تكشيرة	formal (adj)	رسمي	necessarily (adv)	بالضرورة / حتما
innovator (n)	مبتكر	informal (adj)	غير رسمي	request (v/n)	طلب / يطلب
linguist (n)	خبير لغة	positive (adj)	إيجابي	response (n)	استجابة / رد
linguistics (n)	علم اللغويات	negative (adj)	سلبي	actually (adv)	في الواقع

Main Vocabulary

require (v)	يتطلب	facial (adj)	وجهي	notice (v/n)	يلاحظ / ملاحظة
message (v/n)	رسالة / يراسل	expression (n)	تعبير	appear (v)	يظهر
messaging (n)	المراسلة	teenager (n)	مراهق	disappear (v)	يختفي
admit (v)	يقر بـ / يعترف بـ	face-to-face	وجهاً لوجه	advantages (n)	مزايا
communicate (v)	يتواصل	chat (v/n)	دردشة / يدردش	disadvantages (n)	عيوب
communication (n)	التواصل	deal (v)	يتعامل / يتناول	joke (v)	يمزح / نكتة
suitable (adj)	مناسب	laugh (v)	يضحك / ضحكة	aware (adj)	على علم / واعي
introduce (v)	يقدم / يطرح	laughter (n)	الضحك	immediate (adj)	فوري
author (n)	مؤلف	movement (n)	حركة	confused (adj)	مرتبك
positively (adv)	بشكل إيجابي	side (n)	جانب	confusing (adj)	مربك
apply	يتقدم بطلب / ينطبق	warn (v)	يحذر	interest (v/n)	اهتمام / رغبة / يثير الاهتمام
blog (n)	مدونة	everyday (adj)	يومي	later (adv)	فيما بعد
conversation (n)	محادثة	upset (adj)	منزعج / متضايق	mark (n/v)	درجة / علامة / يعلم
arrangement (n)	ترتيب	encourage (v)	يشجع	research (v/n)	يقوم ببحث / بحث
basic (adj)	أساسي	discourage (v)	يثبط العزيمة	punctuation (n)	علامات الترقيم
basically (adv)	أساسا	eventually (adv)	في النهاية	advice (n)	نصيحة
inform (v)	يخبر	worried (adj)	قلق	advise (v)	ينصح

Synonym & Antonym

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	المعكس Antonym
appear	يظهر	come out - develop - occur	disappear - withdraw
formal	رسمي	official - licensed	informal - unofficial
necessary	ضروري	essential - vital	unnecessary - minor
frown	يقطب / يعبس / يكشر	disapprove - disagree	approve - agree
basic	أساسي	main - chief	unimportant - secondary
interest	اهتمام / تشويق / مراعاة	concern - attentiveness	boredom
admit	يعترف	agree - confess	deny - reject



Abbreviations

* لاحظ أهم الاختصارات لكلمة أو لعبارة:

kind		words	meaning
abbreviation	2moro	Tomorrow	غداً
	thx	Thank you	شكراً لك
	gr8	Great!	عظيم!
	plz	Please	لو سمحت / من فضلك
acronym	idk	I don't know	لا اعرف
	ASAP	As soon as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن
	LOL	Laugh out loud	يضحك بصوت عالٍ
	cu l8r	See you later	أراك لاحقاً

Prepositions

come / go back	يعود إلى
come from	يأتي من
worried about	قلق بشأن
thank for	يشكر على
chat with	يدردش مع
advise... to	ينصح ... أن
encourage... to	يشجع ... أن
tell... to	يخبر ... أن
warn... to	يحذر ... أن
order... to	يأمر ... أن

apply for	يتقدم إلى
change into	يغير إلى
reply to	يرد على
speak to	يتحدث إلى
refer to	يشير إلى

* لاحظ ما يأتي:

advise... not to	ينصح ... ألا
encourage... not to	يشجع ... ألا
tell... not to	يخبر ... ألا
warn... not to	يحذر ... ألا
order... not to	يأمر ... ألا

Expressions & Idioms

facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه
as soon as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن
language innovator	مجدد في اللغة
text messages	رسائل نصية
stay in touch with	يبقى على اتصال بـ
lose touch with	يفقد الاتصال مع
negative side	الجانب السلبي
laugh out loud	يضحك بصوت عالي
be aware of	يكون على وعي بـ
face-to-face	وجهاً لوجه
pros and cons	مزايا وعيوب
merits and demerits	مزايا وعيوب
advantages and disadvantages	مزايا وعيوب
come down to	ينزل إلى / يأتي إلى
get it wrong	يسيء الفهم
see you later	أراك فيما بعد
get upset	ينزعج
discourage from	يعوق من / يثبط العزيمة من
deal with	يتعامل مع
wait for	ينتظر



Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
create	يخلق / يبتكر	creation	خلق / إبداع	creative	مبدع
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع
advise	ينصح	advice	نصيحة	advisable	منصوح به
connect	يوصل	connection	توصيل	connected	متصل
communicate	يتواصل	communication	تواصل	communicative	صريح/غير متحفظ
pronounce	ينطق	pronunciation	النطق	pronounceable	منطوق
inform	يعلم / يخبر	information	معلومات	informative	إخباري
worry	يقلق	worry	القلق	worrying	مزعج
				worried	قلق

Definitions

Word	Meaning	Definition
abbreviation	اختصار	a short form of a word or expression
emoji	إشعار	images with certain expressions used on messaging
formal	رسمي	official; following an agreed or official way of doing things
frown	يكشر / يعبس	to have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy
innovator	مبتكر	a person who introduce new things
joke	نكتة	something that you say or do to make people laugh
linguist	خبير لغة	a person who knows several foreign languages well
messaging	مراسلة	not to send a text message to somebody
misunderstand	يسئ فهم	not understand properly
not necessarily	ليس بالضرورة	a response to something that has been said that may not be true or correct
response	استجابة	a spoken or written answer
tone	نبرة الصوت	the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking







Notice the Difference

abbreviation	اختصار لحروف الأولى من كلمة أو تعبير	acronym	اختصار الحروف الأولى لمجموعة من الكلمات
suit	يلائم / يناسب / بدلة	suitable	مناسب / ملائم
basic	أساسي	base	قاعدة
prefix	بادئة	suffix	لاحقة
necessity	الضرورة	necessary	ضروري
linguist	خبير لغة	linguistics	علم اللغويات
warn	يحذر	warm	دافئ
encourage... to + inf.	يشجع على	discourage.... from + V + ing	يمنع من / يعوق
advice	نصيحة	advise	ينصح

later & latter

later	فيما بعد / في وقت لاحق	I will tell you later not now.
latter = the second	(الشيء او الشخص) المذكور ثانيا	I have two sons Hazem and Adham. The latter is a doctor.

contact, communicate & connect

contact	يتصل (تليفونيا ....) / اتصال	I will contact you later.
communicate	يتواصل	I communicate with my friends on the internet.
connect	يوصل (شيء / بسلك)	Can I connect my printer to your computer?

include, including, consist of, enclose & contain

include	يشمل / يتضمن	The list includes fruits and vegetables.
including	مشتملة على	There were ten injured people including three children and two women.
consist of	يتكون من	The cake consists of flour, sugar and eggs.
contain	يحتوي على	The CD contains music and pictures.
enclose	يرفق شيء مع شيء / يحيط	I sent him a letter and enclosed my photo in it.

like & as

like	مثل / يشبه	He behaves like a lion.
as + job	كـ + وظيفة	He works as a teacher.
such as = for example	مثل	Things such as paper and plastic can be recycled.
as = because	لأن	Toka didn't come to school as she was ill.
as = while / when	بينما	I saw Toka as I was getting off the bus.
as = though / although	بالرغم من	Hard as Jana studied, she failed.



as .... as

as...(adj. / adv) .. as المساواة في الصفات	▶ Jana is as smart as Toka.
as well as بالإضافة إلى (اسم / ing)	▶ As well as writing novels, she writes poems.
as soon as بمجرد أن	▶ As soon as I had studied English, I slept.
as long as = if طالما	▶ As long as I study well, I will pass.

confused & confusing

* نستخدم الصفات المنتهية بـ ing مع العاقل والغير العاقل للوصف وللتعبير عن المؤثر edy للمتأثر (عاقل)

confused مرتبك	▶ Speak to him slowly as he gets confused easily.
confusing مربك	▶ Because the questions were confusing, many students failed the exams.

require, enquire & acquire

require: need يتطلب	▶ What does this mission require?
enquire: ask about يستفسر	▶ I'd like to enquire about available tours.
acquire: get يحصل على / يكتسب	▶ She acquired her degree while living in London.

base, basis & basic

base قاعدة / مكان إقامة	▶ It is easy to fasten the monitor onto the base.
basis (bases) أساس (أسس)	▶ There is no legal basis for his claims.
basic أساسي / رئيسي	▶ The basic problem is very simple.

interested, keen, fond & enthusiastic

be interested in مهتم بـ	▶ He is interested in playing football.
be keen on متحمس لـ	▶ He is keen on playing football.
be fond of مغرم بـ	▶ He is fond of playing football.
be enthusiastic about متحمس لـ	▶ He is enthusiastic about playing football.

interview, appointment, conference & meeting

interview مقابلة شخصية: (للوظيفة) / مقابلة (تليفزيونية / صحفية)	▶ I had an interview for a job with a publishing firm.
appointment موعد / ميعاد	▶ I'd like to make an appointment with Doctor Ahmed, please.
conference مؤتمر	▶ We attended the International Peace Conference.
meeting اجتماع	▶ I've got a meeting with Ali this morning.







Text messaging

Plz read this article **ASAP** It's **gr8**. Hope **u** like it!

For any readers who can't understand the language of text messaging, the translation is: Please read this article as soon as possible. It's great. I hope you like it. In text messages, abbreviations, emojis and numbers are all used to make communication quicker. The language of text messages doesn't require correct spelling, or difficult grammar and punctuation. Messaging language is appearing in everyday English more often. When people write emails, many of them use a lot of abbreviations and emojis.

Some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!!!

So, is messaging language damaging English? Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't suitable in formal emails. And now teachers are worried that some teenagers are no longer able to speak or write using English correctly. However, some linguists suggest that the people who use messaging language are actually language innovators, introducing new ideas into English. They argue that messaging language is quick, short and communicates a lot in a small space. Whether or not you like messaging language, English is continuing to change. Perhaps it would be a good idea to learn some of the basic abbreviations so you can enjoy talking to your friends with fun, short message!

Text messages

Hi Hamdi, I had so much fun this morning! laugh out loud (LOL). I was on TV, talking about tech, and I warned people not to open any strange emails. It was great! (gr8). They asked me to go back next week! I'll see you later (c u l8r) and I will tell you all about it.

Khalid



Hey Nadia, thanks (thx) for your help! I'm so glad you advised me to change the photos on my blog. I don't know (idk) what I was thinking! My dad warned me not to post personal information, but I didn't think about the photos. I'll change them as soon as possible (ASAP).

Judy

Yasser, why didn't you tell me that you can't find my book? I asked you to look after it. Can you please (plz) look for it again and bring it to school tomorrow?

Medhat



Presenter Hello everyone, thanks for joining me today on Afternoon Talktime. And today we are talking about messaging. My guest today is Dr Magda Morsy. She is the author of the book "A Guide to Messaging" which encourages us to use messaging positively. Welcome to the programme, Dr Magda.

Dr Magda Thank you. It's lovely to be here.

Presenter So, many parents are worried about their children and messaging. I myself have a 15-year-old daughter and we had an example of a messaging problem just yesterday when she came down to dinner very upset. She couldn't stop crying. Eventually she admitted that she was upset because of her friend. They were messaging and having fun, but then my daughter, Talia had written LOL - laugh out loud - in response to a photo her friend Mona, had posted of herself. Talia thought it was a funny photo. She waited for an hour, but Mona didn't reply. Talia couldn't understand what the problem was and was worried that Mona was upset with her.

Dr Magda This is a good example of why we need to be aware of the advantages and disadvantages of messaging, and how it can very easily make us worried and upset if we get it wrong.

Presenter Because messaging is different to speaking face-to-face, isn't it?

Dr Magda Exactly! Sometimes face-to-face communication can be confusing, it's easy to feel the other person isn't listening for example, or isn't interested in what you are saying, but messaging can be much more confusing. And this is basically because you can't see the other person's face - is he or she smiling or frowning? And you can't hear their voice - are they angry? Are they making a joke. Are they feeling sad? And you can't see their body movements. When we speak to someone face-to-face; we notice all these things; facial expressions, body movements and the tone of what they are saying. When we message, we have to guess a lot of these things. This means we can often misunderstand what the other person is trying to communicate.

Presenter So, that's the negative side of messaging. Is there a positive side?

Dr Magda Yes, of course. Messaging is great for staying in touch with friends, but remember that messaging is designed to be short so don't expect to have long conversations, and don't get upset when you get one word or even an abbreviation or acronym as a response to your message.

Presenter So, what should my daughter, Talia, have done yesterday evening?

Dr Magda Well, first of all, she shouldn't have got upset so quickly. Just because you don't get an immediate reply does not necessarily mean that the person is not interested in chatting with you. People are busy and they have got other things to do. So, she shouldn't have sat in her room for an hour looking at her phone and waiting for Mona to reply. She should have put her phone down and done something else and checked her phone later. And of course, if she was really worried, she could have called and spoken to Mona. She could have messaged and said 'Can I call you?'

Presenter So, I think Dr Magda is telling us to remember that sometimes more traditional communication is important.

Dr Magda I am! Absolutely. Messaging is one form of communication not the only form of communication.

Presenter Great - thank you, Dr Magda Morsy. Next on the programme.



1. .... are used to express emotions in electronic messages. (إدارة إسنا ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ Keys ⓑ Abbreviations ⓒ Emojis ⓓ Symbols

2. The .... to our advertisement has been somewhat disappointing. (إدارة زفتى ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ response ⓑ reply ⓒ replay ⓓ respond

3. Mrs. Donia .... at her children, who were getting mud all over their clothes.
ⓐ rewarded ⓑ frowned ⓒ introduced ⓓ smiled

4. I told him I'd meet him here, but he is stupid. He .... and went straight to the club.
ⓐ understood ⓑ remembered ⓒ reminded ⓓ misunderstood

5. This young man is a/an .... ; he isn't afraid to try something new. He introduces changes and new ideas. (LM)
ⓐ explorer ⓑ discoverer ⓒ innovator ⓓ surveyor

6. Some .... believe that using messaging languages could harm English and other languages. (LM)
ⓐ linguists ⓑ archaeologists ⓒ biologists ⓓ geologists

7. A/An .... is someone who is good at foreign languages. (LM)
ⓐ socialist ⓑ archaeologist ⓒ artist ⓓ linguist

8. A .... is the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking. (LM البلينا)
ⓐ tan ⓑ tune ⓒ ton ⓓ tone

9. Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't suitable for...........emails. (LM)
ⓐ formal ⓑ informal ⓒ foreign ⓓ fluent

10. She........... ; there was an expression on her face that showed she was not pleased. (LM)
ⓐ agreed ⓑ breathed ⓒ frowned ⓓ smiled

11. Messaging language doesn't require .... rules of writing. (LM)
ⓐ formal ⓑ informal ⓒ former ⓓ comfortable

12. W.H.O. is the .... for 'World Health Organization'.
ⓐ sign ⓑ symbol ⓒ emoji ⓓ acronym

13. His loss to the game doesn't .... mean he didn't train well. His opponent was just lucky. (إدارة العجمى ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ necessarily ⓑ negatively ⓒ necessity ⓓ necessary

14. Why do you think young people use .... language in their chats?
ⓐ foreign ⓑ informal ⓒ former ⓓ formal

15. What are the negative .... of using mass media?
ⓐ effects ⓑ advantages ⓒ infections ⓓ benefits

16. Our geography teacher never smiles and has a permanent ....
ⓐ frown ⓑ emoji ⓒ tone ⓓ laugh

17. ASAP is a/an .... of 'as soon as possible'.
ⓐ sentence ⓑ word ⓒ acronym ⓓ punctuation

18. "LOL" is a/an .... for "laugh out loud".
ⓐ innovation ⓑ imagination ⓒ production ⓓ abbreviation

19. I understood he was thinking carefully and the .... of his voice was very positive.
ⓐ tuna ⓑ tone ⓒ sound ⓓ ton

20. He said I should have read the essay questions more carefully because I .... it.
ⓐ misunderstood ⓑ misunderstand ⓒ understood ⓓ understand

21. Please use the .... 'cm' for 'centimetres', without any full stop after it.
ⓐ application ⓑ introduction ⓒ abbreviation ⓓ ending

22. Did you know that "CUl8er" is the .... for "see you later"?
ⓐ informal ⓑ acronym ⓒ emoji ⓓ abbreviation

23. We shouldn't have used .... in a formal essay.
ⓐ punctuation ⓑ words ⓒ sentences ⓓ emojis

24. In the world of technology, an .... is someone who can create new devices.
ⓐ invite ⓑ invention ⓒ invent ⓓ innovator

25. What are you .... about now? What have I done?
ⓐ frowning ⓑ flowing ⓒ browning ⓓ drowning

Exercise 2 Main vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الاساسية

26. I am going to .... for a job as an accountant.
ⓐ modify ⓑ supply ⓒ apply ⓓ imply

27. .... is great to stay in touch with friends. إدارة القومية ٢٠٢٣
ⓐ Abbreviation ⓑ Messaging ⓒ Frowning ⓓ Smiling

28. The language of text messages doesn't .... correct spelling. LM
ⓐ inquire ⓑ acquire ⓒ require ⓓ enquire

29. Emoj is are used in .... messaging. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣
ⓐ text ⓑ voice ⓒ video ⓓ spoken

30. Maher .... that he had made that mistake; he said he had accidently committed it. LM
ⓐ minded ⓑ refused ⓒ admitted ⓓ denied

31. .... with my friends is really important because we discuss serious issues. LM
ⓐ Separation ⓑ Communication ⓒ Disagreement ⓓ Improvement

32. Facial .... is very essential part of non-verbal communications. منارل ٢٠٢٣
ⓐ depression ⓑ suspicion ⓒ expression ⓓ definition

33. I am going to .... for a job as an accountant. LM
ⓐ modify ⓑ supply ⓒ apply ⓓ imply

34. Are you speaking seriously? - No, I'm just .... a joke. LM
ⓐ thinking ⓑ appearing ⓒ doing ⓓ making

35. All citizens should be .... of the challenges our country faces. إدارة نقادة ٢٠٢٣
ⓐ awake ⓑ asleep ⓒ negative ⓓ aware

36. Nowadays, mass media helps us .... with each other easily. LM
ⓐ connect ⓑ communicate ⓒ join ⓓ link

37. We'll .... a survey to find out what people like and dislike about TV shows. LM
ⓐ make ⓑ exclude ⓒ ignore ⓓ conduct

38. Her parents always .... Maya to sing. They like singing.
ⓐ warn ⓑ deny ⓒ encourage ⓓ say

39. Omar .... me to help him. It was a polite request, so I agreed.
ⓐ warned ⓑ advised ⓒ encouraged ⓓ asked

40. Rami .... Imad not to go out. It was good advice because it rained.
ⓐ warned ⓑ admitted ⓒ encouraged ⓓ asked

41. In the written test, you'll be marked down for poor spelling and ....
ⓐ speaking ⓑ pronunciation ⓒ punctuation ⓓ proportion

42. Ali .... what the teacher said and did the wrong homework last night.
ⓐ misunderstood ⓑ deceived ⓒ ruined ⓓ fell out with

43. Mr Sakr .... me to study. It was good advice because I passed my exam.
ⓐ warned ⓑ advised ⓒ told ⓓ asked

44. His father .... Ali to go home, so he left immediately.
ⓐ warned ⓑ made ⓒ encourage ⓓ said

45. They joked and .... as they looked at the photos.
ⓐ laughed ⓑ cried ⓒ saddened ⓓ coughed

46. I'm a bit .... about the arrangements for tonight - what time are we meeting?
ⓐ confused ⓑ confusing ⓒ confessed ⓓ confusion

47. The election returns produced a .... picture of gains and losses.
ⓐ confused ⓑ confusing ⓒ confessed ⓓ confusion

Exercise 3 Synonyms & Antonyms المرادفات والمتضادات

48. My grandfather encourages me to read different books to enrich my culture. Encourages here shows ....
ⓐ order ⓑ request ⓒ negative advice ⓓ positive advice

49. Basic is a/an .... for main.
ⓐ opposite ⓑ synonym ⓒ antonym ⓓ short

50. The teacher frowned and drew her red pen firmly across the page. Frown is a synonym for ....
ⓐ except ⓑ agree ⓒ approve ⓓ disapprove

51. .... is a synonym for official.
ⓐ Formal ⓑ Form ⓒ Informal ⓓ Inform

52. "There's a matter of some concern that I have to discuss with you." What does the word 'concern' mean in this sentence?
ⓐ essential ⓑ unimportant ⓒ boredom ⓓ interest

53. "Fresh fruit and vegetables form an essential part of a healthy diet." The adjective 'essential' in this sentence is antonymous with ....
ⓐ lack of necessity ⓑ necessity ⓒ unnecessary ⓓ necessary

Exercise 4 Choose two Answers اختـــر إجابتيـــن

54. Messaging language is used in .... communications. LM
ⓐ everyday ⓑ every day ⓒ daily ⓓ weekly ⓔ main

55. Our farm lacks even basic equipment. "Basic" is similar in meaning to "..........." and "..........." . LM
ⓐ safe ⓑ necessary ⓒ minor ⓓ vital ⓔ expensive

56. Do you agree that messaging language .... English? LM
ⓐ spoils ⓑ modifies ⓒ agrees ⓓ dislikes ⓔ damages

57. She admitted that she had broken the window by mistake. "Admit" is opposite in meaning to "..........." and "..........." . LM
ⓐ believe ⓑ agree ⓒ deny ⓓ confess ⓔ reject

58. Finally, the young man .... that he had damaged his neighbour's car by mistake. LM
ⓐ defied ⓑ confessed ⓒ denied ⓓ admitted ⓔ told

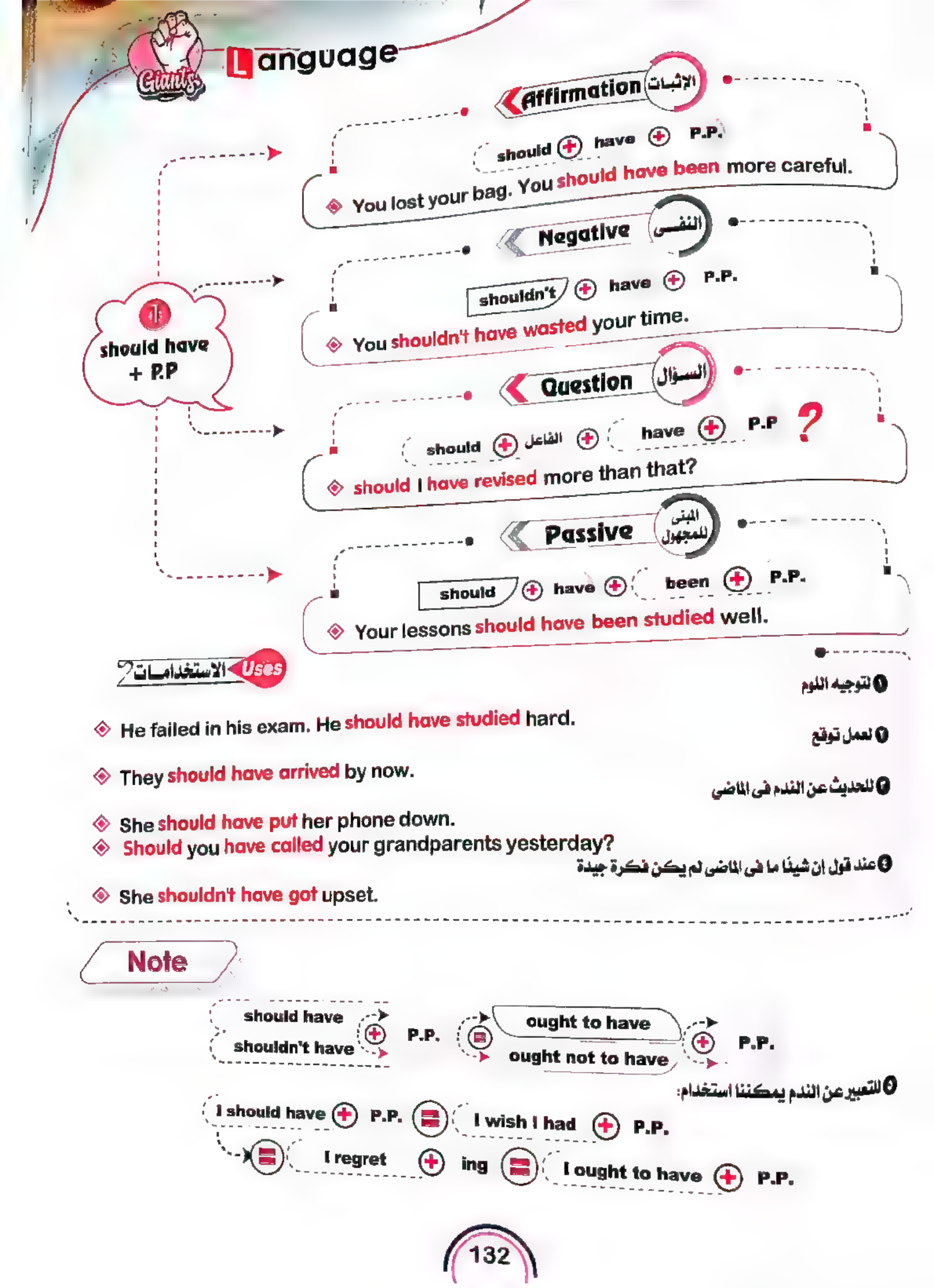
59. All over the world, most people strive to buy their basic needs. "Basic" is opposite in meaning to "..........." and "..........." LM
ⓐ expensive ⓑ secondary ⓒ cheap ⓓ unnecessary ⓔ important

60. Don't worry; the police are going to take .... measures. LM
ⓐ urgent ⓑ slow ⓒ immediate ⓓ quick ⓔ late

61. I decided to sell my car later. "Later" here is opposite in meaning to ".........." and ".........." . LM
ⓐ immediately ⓑ once ⓒ cheap ⓓ soon ⓔ latter

62. Her ………… reply broke his heart.
ⓐ negative ⓑ positively ⓒ positive ⓓ negatively
63. Students are ………… to undertake simple experiments.
ⓐ aimed ⓑ required ⓒ acquired ⓓ inquired
64. My teacher said that wasn't ………… the reason I got a low mark.
ⓐ necessarily ⓑ necessity ⓒ necessitate ⓓ necessary
65. The sun ………… behind heavy clouds.
ⓐ appeared ⓑ disappeared ⓒ repaired ⓓ despaired
66. Robins mostly ………… in the winter and commonly seen every day.
ⓐ appear ⓑ repair ⓒ despair ⓓ disappear
67. The cinema is ………… used.
ⓐ no longer ⓑ any longer ⓒ any more ⓓ no long
68. I have to ………… you that there's a degree of danger involved in this.
ⓐ warn ⓑ worm ⓒ warm ⓓ wrath
69. We need to consider the merits and ………… of the plan.
ⓐ averages ⓑ merits ⓒ demerits ⓓ advantages
70. I didn't mean to ………… her - it was just a bit of fun.
ⓐ upset ⓑ set up ⓒ up set ⓓ set
71. They lack ………… foodstuffs, such as bread and milk.
ⓐ basis ⓑ base ⓒ basic ⓓ pass
72. In the word 'slowly', 'ly' is a ………… .
ⓐ suffix ⓑ fax ⓒ prefix ⓓ fix
73. She was born in the ………… half of the eighteenth century.
ⓐ late ⓑ latest ⓒ later ⓓ latter
74. The price of the computer ………… $500 worth of free software.
ⓐ contains ⓑ concludes ⓒ encloses ⓓ includes
75. He exerts great efforts. They all think his work is ………… .
ⓐ amaze ⓑ amazing ⓒ amazed ⓓ amazingly
76. Anyone ………… in joining the club should contact us at the address below.
ⓐ interested ⓑ is interested ⓒ are interested ⓓ interest
77. The coach was never good at ………… with the players.
ⓐ communicating ⓑ contacting ⓒ connecting ⓓ contenting
78. The printer is ………… to the computer.
ⓐ communicated ⓑ contacted ⓒ connected ⓓ contract
79. I finally made ………… with her in Paris.
ⓐ communicate ⓑ contact ⓒ connect ⓓ contract





Language

1 should have + P.P

Affirmation (الإثبات)

should + have + P.P.

- You lost your bag. You **should have been** more careful.

Negative (النفى)

shouldn't + have + P.P.

- You **shouldn't have wasted** your time.

Question (السؤال)

should + الفاعل + have + P.P ?

- **should** I **have revised** more than that?

Passive (المبنى للمجهول)

should + have + been + P.P.

- Your lessons **should have been studied** well.

Uses الاستخدامات

❶ لتوجيه اللوم

- He failed in his exam. He **should have studied** hard.

❷ لعمل توقع

- They **should have arrived** by now.

❸ للحديث عن الندم فى الماضى

- She **should have put** her phone down.
- **Should** you **have called** your grandparents yesterday?

❹ عند قول إن شيئا ما فى الماضى لم يكن فكرة جيدة

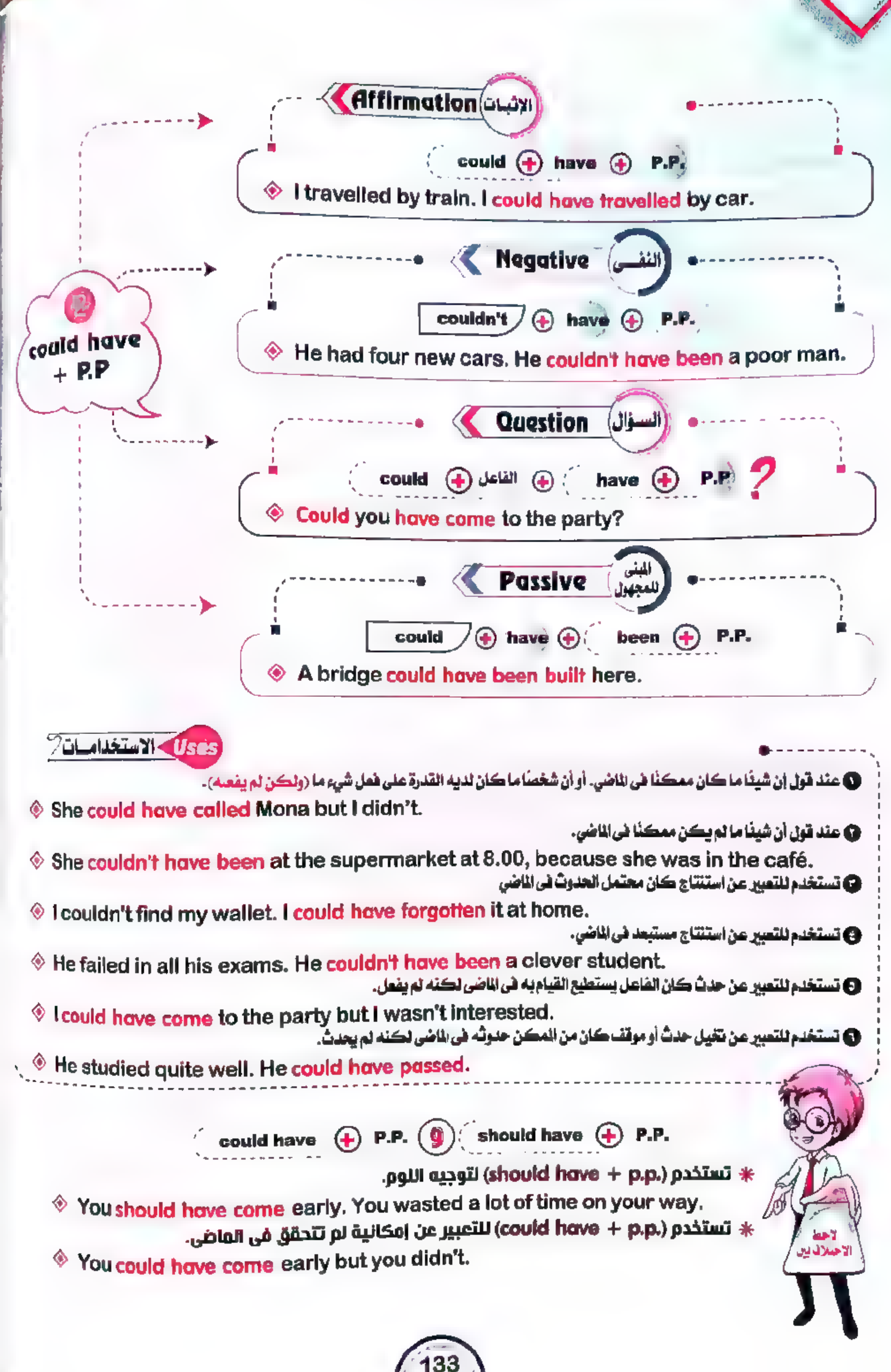
- She **shouldn't have got** upset.

Note

should have / shouldn't have + P.P. = ought to have / ought not to have + P.P.

❺ للتعبير عن الندم يمكننا استخدام:

I should have + P.P. = I wish I had + P.P.
= I regret + ing = I ought to have + P.P.



could have + P.P

Affirmation الإثبات

could + have + P.P.

- I travelled by train. I **could have travelled** by car.

Negative النفي

couldn't + have + P.P.

- He had four new cars. He **couldn't have been** a poor man.

Question السؤال

could + الفاعل + have + P.P ?

- **Could** you **have come** to the party?

Passive المبني للمجهول

could + have + been + P.P.

- A bridge **could have been built** here.

Uses الاستخدامات

❶ عند قول إن شيئًا ما كان ممكنًا في الماضي. أو أن شخصًا ما كان لديه القدرة على فعل شيء ما (ولكن لم يفعله).

- She **could have called** Mona but I didn't.

❷ عند قول أن شيئًا ما لم يكن ممكنًا في الماضي.

- She **couldn't have been** at the supermarket at 8.00, because she was in the café.

❸ تستخدم للتعبير عن استنتاج كان محتمل الحدوث في الماضي

- I couldn't find my wallet. I **could have forgotten** it at home.

❹ تستخدم للتعبير عن استنتاج مستبعد في الماضي.

- He failed in all his exams. He **couldn't have been** a clever student.

❺ تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث كان الفاعل يستطيع القيام به في الماضي لكنه لم يفعل.

- I **could have come** to the party but I wasn't interested.

❻ تستخدم للتعبير عن تخيل حدث أو موقف كان من الممكن حدوثه في الماضي لكنه لم يحدث.

- He studied quite well. He **could have passed**.

could have + P.P. (9) should have + P.P.

* تستخدم (should have + p.p.) لتوجيه اللوم.

- You **should have come** early. You wasted a lot of time on your way.

* تستخدم (could have + p.p.) للتعبير عن إمكانية لم تتحقق في الماضي.

- You **could have come** early but you didn't.

could ⊕ inf. ⑨ should ⊕ inf.

* تستخدم (should + inf.= ought to + inf.) في النصيحة و لتقديم اقتراحات وعمل توصيات.

◈ Children **shouldn't** take candy from strangers.
◈ What **should** I wear?
◈ You really **ought to** quit smoking.
◈ She **shouldn't** waste her time in final exams.

* تستخدم (could + inf.= (was-were) able to = managed to = succeeded in) للتعبير عن المقدرة في الماضي:

◈ I **could** sing but I **couldn't** swim.
◈ I **managed to** pass all my exams but I **wasn't able to** join the college I wanted.

Exercise 1 from Tests أسئلة امتحانات الإدارات

1. My mum .... cleaned the room, so my father was angry. It was dirty. (إدارة فاقوس ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ shouldn't have ⓑ should have ⓒ may have ⓓ couldn't have

2. I had 5,000 pounds. I .... a gold ring, but I decided to buy a new mobile. (الجيزة ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ should buy ⓑ could have bought ⓒ could buy ⓓ must have bought

3. The results were completely wrong. She .... have planned the experiment more carefully. (أسيوط ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ must ⓑ might ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ should

4. We .... go for a picnic. – Good idea! (إدارة نقادة ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ should ⓑ could ⓒ must ⓓ have to

5. I .... have eaten so much chocolate! I regret doing that. (إدارة زفتى ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ couldn't ⓑ could ⓒ should ⓓ shouldn't

6. I didn't know there was a meeting today. You .... me. (الغربية ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ needn't have told ⓑ should tell ⓒ should have told ⓓ had to tell

7. I .... gone to bed earlier last night. I'm really tired today. (إدارة إسنا ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ might have ⓑ shouldn't have ⓒ should have ⓓ must have

8. Ali .... wasted a lot of time playing video games. It was bad. (منازل ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ should ⓑ shouldn't ⓒ should have ⓓ shouldn't have

9. I .... a face mask in such a dusty weather, I have caught a virus. (القاهرة ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ should have been worn ⓑ should have wear
ⓒ should wear ⓓ should have worn

10. He went to work by taxi, he .... by bus. (إدارة القومية ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ may go ⓑ could have gone ⓒ must have gone ⓓ shall go

Exercise 2 Longman أسئلة موقع لونجمان

11. She .... Ayman in the hospital yesterday because he was ill. He was sad that she didn't visit him. (LM)
ⓐ should have visited ⓑ has visited ⓒ had to visit ⓓ must have visited

12. I should have obeyed my mother. This sentence shows .... (LM)
ⓐ suggestion ⓑ positive advice ⓒ regret ⓓ possibility

13. What .... yesterday to avoid making that bad mistake? I feel sorry now! (LM)
ⓐ did I have to do ⓑ should I have done ⓒ should I do ⓓ must I have done

14. Rami .... in the club last night; he was busy working in his office. (LM)
ⓐ should have been ⓑ could have been ⓒ couldn't have been ⓓ mustn't have been

15. You seem tired. I think you........... enough sleep last night.
ⓐ should have
ⓑ should have had
ⓒ must have had
ⓓ shouldn't have had

16. I wish I had been more careful with the homework. This means that I .... more careful with the homework.
ⓐ regret not being
ⓑ regret not to be
ⓒ I didn't have to be
ⓓ shouldn't have been

17. Adel didn't go to school yesterday; he .... sick. Who knows?
ⓐ must have been
ⓑ had to be
ⓒ should have been
ⓓ might have been

18. I .... my old car; it was practical and economical.
ⓐ regret to sell
ⓑ regret selling
ⓒ hope to sell
ⓓ had to sell

19. I travelled by train. I .... by car, but I felt too tired to drive.
ⓐ had to travel
ⓑ could have travelled
ⓒ might have travelled
ⓓ have to travel

20. We .... meat when we went to the market; it was possible, but we preferred to buy fish.
ⓐ shouldn't have bought
ⓑ could have bought
ⓒ needn't buy
ⓓ couldn't have bought

21. My car broke down; it .... before we started the trip.
ⓐ should have checked
ⓑ needn't have checked
ⓒ had to be checked
ⓓ should have been checked

22. I missed the first lecture; I .... up late last night.
ⓐ should have stayed
ⓑ could have stayed
ⓒ shouldn't have stayed
ⓓ needn't stay

23. We .... the weekend in Alexandria, but we preferred to be with our old friends in the village.
ⓐ had to spend
ⓑ could have spent
ⓒ shouldn't have spent
ⓓ must have spent

24. I .... my paragraph well; it was full of mistakes.
ⓐ should have
ⓑ shouldn't check
ⓒ should check checked
ⓓ shouldn't have checked

25. I'm so sorry; I .... have visited you, but I .... too busy.
ⓐ shouldn't / am
ⓑ ought to / wasn't
ⓒ should / was
ⓓ ought / was

26. I think you could visit the Cairo Museum tomorrow. It's really fantastic. This shows ....
ⓐ past ability
ⓑ suggestion
ⓒ order
ⓓ certainty

27. What .... to avoid having such bad exam results? Unfortunately, it is too late now!
ⓐ will have to do
ⓑ must he have
ⓒ did he have to do done
ⓓ should he have done

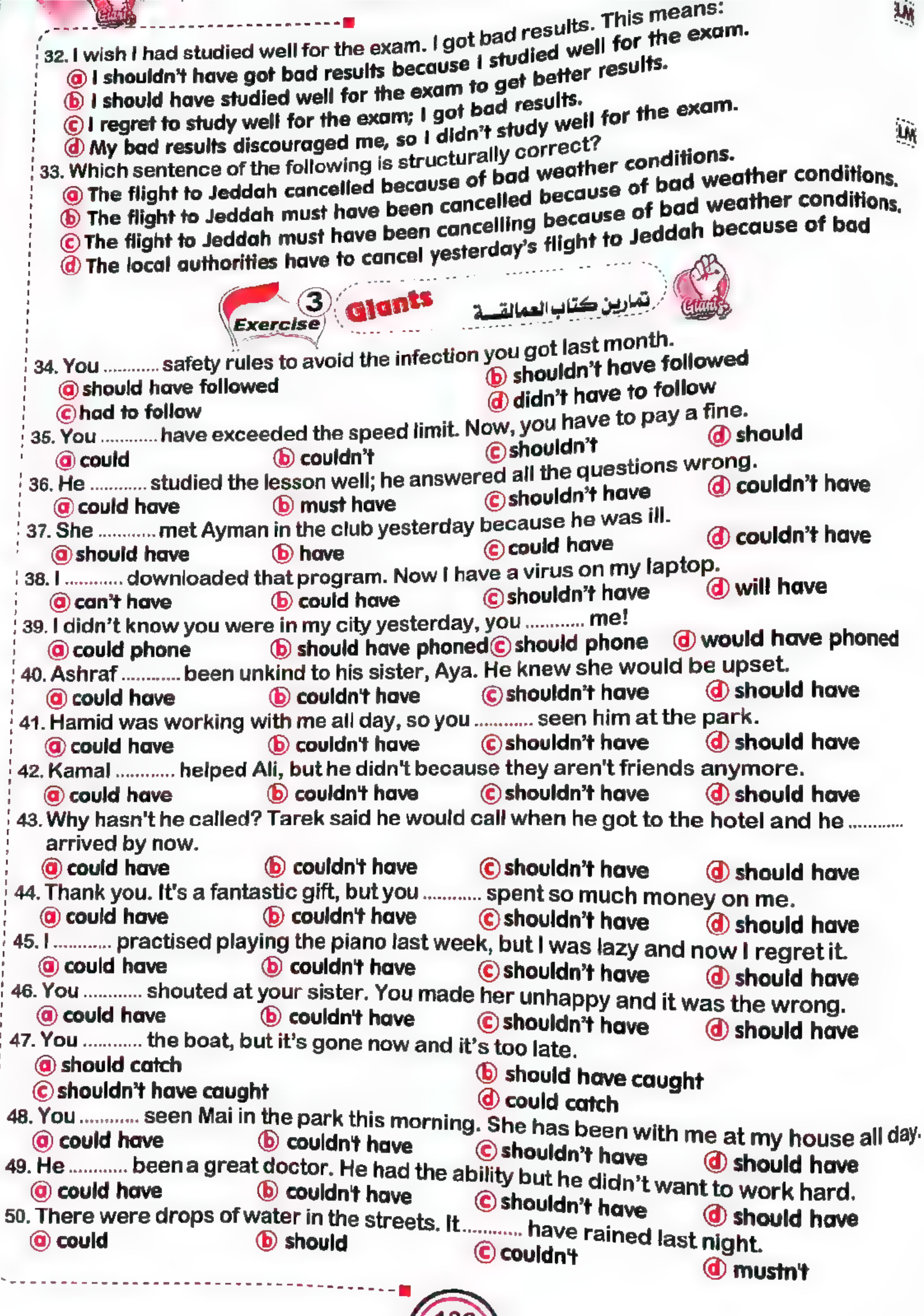
28. The French team played well, but the Tunisian team .... We are all very proud of the Arab teams.
ⓐ isn't able to win
ⓑ should have been won
ⓒ was able to win
ⓓ couldn't have won

29. Kamal .... abroad; he is still in Cairo.
ⓐ had to travel
ⓑ must have travelled
ⓒ can't have travelled
ⓓ shouldn't have travelled

30. His health got worse. He .... to hospital last week, but he was careless.
ⓐ should have gone
ⓑ had to go
ⓒ shouldn't have gone
ⓓ must have gone

31. Which of the following doesn't show regret?
ⓐ I should have followed my father's advice.
ⓑ I ought not to have ignored my father's advice.
ⓒ I regret not following my father's advice.
ⓓ I shouldn't ignore my father's advice.





32. I wish I had studied well for the exam. I got bad results. This means:
ⓐ I shouldn't have got bad results because I studied well for the exam.
ⓑ I should have studied well for the exam to get better results.
ⓒ I regret to study well for the exam; I got bad results.
ⓓ My bad results discouraged me, so I didn't study well for the exam.

33. Which sentence of the following is structurally correct?
ⓐ The flight to Jeddah cancelled because of bad weather conditions.
ⓑ The flight to Jeddah must have been cancelled because of bad weather conditions.
ⓒ The flight to Jeddah must have been cancelling because of bad weather conditions.
ⓓ The local authorities have to cancel yesterday's flight to Jeddah because of bad

Exercise 3 Giants تمارين كتاب العمالقة

34. You .... safety rules to avoid the infection you got last month.
ⓐ should have followed ⓑ shouldn't have followed
ⓒ had to follow ⓓ didn't have to follow

35. You .... have exceeded the speed limit. Now, you have to pay a fine.
ⓐ could ⓑ couldn't ⓒ shouldn't ⓓ should

36. He .... studied the lesson well; he answered all the questions wrong.
ⓐ could have ⓑ must have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ couldn't have

37. She .... met Ayman in the club yesterday because he was ill.
ⓐ should have ⓑ have ⓒ could have ⓓ couldn't have

38. I .... downloaded that program. Now I have a virus on my laptop.
ⓐ can't have ⓑ could have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ will have

39. I didn't know you were in my city yesterday, you .... me!
ⓐ could phone ⓑ should have phoned ⓒ should phone ⓓ would have phoned

40. Ashraf .... been unkind to his sister, Aya. He knew she would be upset.
ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have

41. Hamid was working with me all day, so you .... seen him at the park.
ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have

42. Kamal .... helped Ali, but he didn't because they aren't friends anymore.
ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have

43. Why hasn't he called? Tarek said he would call when he got to the hotel and he .... arrived by now.
ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have

44. Thank you. It's a fantastic gift, but you .... spent so much money on me.
ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have

45. I .... practised playing the piano last week, but I was lazy and now I regret it.
ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have

46. You .... shouted at your sister. You made her unhappy and it was the wrong.
ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have

47. You .... the boat, but it's gone now and it's too late.
ⓐ should catch ⓑ should have caught
ⓒ shouldn't have caught ⓓ could catch

48. You .... seen Mai in the park this morning. She has been with me at my house all day.
ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have

49. He .... been a great doctor. He had the ability but he didn't want to work hard.
ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have

50. There were drops of water in the streets. It .... have rained last night.
ⓐ could ⓑ should ⓒ couldn't ⓓ mustn't

51. I .... have taken the train but I travelled in my car.
ⓐ can ⓑ could ⓒ couldn't ⓓ shouldn't

52. Leila fell off her bed and broke an arm. I'm sure she .... careful.
ⓐ shouldn't have been ⓑ couldn't have been ⓒ must have been ⓓ could have been

53. I can't remember where I had left my mobile. I'm not sure, I .... it at home.
ⓐ must have left ⓑ could have left ⓒ can leave ⓓ must leave

54. The boys .... to have made so much noise in the library.
ⓐ ought ⓑ should ⓒ ought not ⓓ must not

55. The car broke down again; it .... repaired well yesterday.
ⓐ can't have been ⓑ can't have ⓒ mustn't have been ⓓ shouldn't have been

56. I tried hard to repair my car, but I .... , so I got a mechanic to check it.
ⓐ was able to ⓑ had to ⓒ can't ⓓ couldn't

57. You .... put your coat on the floor. Now it's dirty!
ⓐ ought to ⓑ mightn't have ⓒ mustn't have ⓓ shouldn't have

58. A: Ali fell off his bike this morning. He hurt his head. B: He .... been more careful.
ⓐ might have ⓑ ought not to have ⓒ must have ⓓ should have

59. All the pupils understood the lesson yesterday, it .... difficult.
ⓐ must be ⓑ can't have been ⓒ could be ⓓ can't be

60. She .... been lazy. She neglected all her lessons so her teacher punished her.
ⓐ could have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ should have

61. You should have done your homework yesterday. This expresses ....
ⓐ blame ⓑ wish ⓒ advice ⓓ deduction

62. You .... left your keys in the office, I am sure you didn't.
ⓐ can't have ⓑ must have ⓒ might have ⓓ mustn't have

63. He failed in his exam. He .... studied hard.
ⓐ shouldn't have ⓑ should have ⓒ mustn't have ⓓ must have

64. He failed in all his exams. He .... a clever student.
ⓐ couldn't have been ⓑ can have been ⓒ shouldn't have been ⓓ must have been

65. He .... at the supermarket at 8.00, because he was in the café.
ⓐ couldn't have been ⓑ might have been ⓒ shouldn't have been ⓓ must have been

66. You .... early. You wasted a lot of time on your way.
ⓐ should have come ⓑ might have come
ⓒ shouldn't have come ⓓ must have come

67. I am broke. I .... have been more careful about money.
ⓐ must ⓑ may ⓒ might ⓓ should

68. I should have obeyed my mother. This sentence expresses ....
ⓐ suggestion ⓑ good idea ⓒ regret ⓓ possibility

69. I wasted my time yesterday. I .... my lessons.
ⓐ should have studied ⓑ shouldn't
ⓒ shouldn't have studied ⓓ ought not to have studied

70. Mr Youssef .... at school yesterday, he is on a sick leave for a week.
ⓐ might have been ⓑ shouldn't have been
ⓒ could have been ⓓ couldn't have been

71. You .... his phone ringing. He hasn't got a phone.
ⓐ shouldn't have heard ⓑ could have heard
ⓒ must have heard ⓓ couldn't have heard

72. He looks very sad. His team .... the match.
ⓐ could have won ⓑ shouldn't have won ⓒ might have won ⓓ couldn't have won

73. Dad was very angry because of my bad marks in the exam. I .... harder.
ⓐ should study ⓑ should have studied
ⓒ could study ⓓ could have studied



Lesson





Changing English

Key Vocabulary

procedures (n)	إجراءات	cite (v)	يستشهد بـ / يستدعي	headline (n)	عنوان رئيسي
findings (n)	نتائج / اكتشافات	proper (adj)	مناسب / صحيح	sub-heading (n)	عنوان فرعي
thesaurus (n)	موسوعة مفردات	properly (adv)	بشكل صحيح	conclude (v)	يستنتج / يخلص إلى
blog (n)	مدونة	comment (n/v)	تعليق / يعلق	conclusion (n)	خلاصة / خاتمة
blogger (n)	مدون	prefix (n)	بادئة	introduce (v)	يقدم
selfie (n)	صورة بالكاميرا الأمامية	suffix (n)	لاحقة	introduction (n)	مقدمة

Main Vocabulary

post (n/v)	منشور / ينشر	debate (n)	مناظرة	compare (v)	يقارن
keep up with (v)	يواكب	purpose (n)	غرض	remain (v)	يظل / يبقى
app (n)	تطبيق	foreign (adj)	أجنبي	author (n)	مؤلف
dictionary (n)	قاموس	misuse (v)	يسيء استخدام	react (v)	يتصرف
endless (adj)	مستمر / بلا نهاية	reuse (v)	يعيد استخدام	point (n/v)	نقطة / يشير
argue (v)	يجادل	effect (n)	أثر / تأثير	lovely (adv)	رائع / جميل / محبوب
argument (n)	جدال	tips (n)	نصائح	receive (v)	يستقبل
aim (n)	هدف	mansion (n)	قصر	society (n)	مجتمع
create (v)	يخترع	deceive (v)	يخدع	section (n)	قسم
gap (n)	فجوة	expressions (n)	تعبيرات	speaker (n)	متحدث
hope (n/v)	أمل / يأمل	recognizable (adj)	سهل التعرف عليه	whether	سواء
unlike (adv)	على عكس	record (n/v)	يسجل / سجل	topic (n)	موضوع / فكرة رئيسية
survey (n)	بحث استطلاعي	anymore (adv)	لم يعد	comfortable (adj)	مريح
result (n)	نتيجة	overcome (v)	يتغلب على	uncomfortable (adj)	غير مريح
partner (n)	شريك	pale (adj)	شاحب	report (n/v)	تقرير / يبلغ
connect (v)	يربط	powerful (adj)	قوي	situation (n)	موقف

King Lear

guard (n)	حارس	go mad (v)	يفقد عقله	stab (v)	يطعن
arrest (v)	يقبض على	shelter (n)	مأوى	run away (v)	يهرب
reward (v)	يكافئ	lock (v)	يقفل / قفل	plot (v)	يتآمر
profit (n)	مكسب	patient (adj)	صبور	call out (v)	ينادي
loyalty (n)	ولاء / إخلاص	patience (n)	الصبر	disbelief (n)	تكذيب

Synonym & Antonym

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	العكس Antonym
proper	مناسب / صحيح	suitable - convenient	unsuitable - improper
connect	يربط	join - link - unite	disconnect - separate
debate	مناظرة	argument	agreement
negative	سلبي	passive - harmful	positive
recognisable	متعرف عليه	significant-distinct-notable	invisible – uncertain-minor

Prepositions

start with	يبدأ بـ
agree with	يتفق مع
add to	يضيف الى
take ... away	يبعد
put ... down	يترك
change... into	يغير .. الى
waiting for .. to	ينتظر .. لكي
learn about	يتعلم عن
In response	ردا علي
disagree with	يختلف مع

Expressions & Idioms

rather than	بدلا من
other than	بخلاف
keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال بـ
follow interests and hobbies	يتبع الاهتمامات والهوايات
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
instead of	بدلا من
in general	فى العموم
learn how to	يتعلم كيفية

Definitions

blog	مدونة	a diary (regular record of your thoughts, opinions and experiences) that you put on the internet for other people to read
prefix	بادئة	letter or a group of letters added to the beginning of a word to make a new word
suffix	لاحقة	a letter or a group of letters added at the end of a word to make a new word
thesaurus	موسوعة مفردات	a type of dictionary in which words with similar meanings are arranged in groups
procedure	إجراءات	a set of actions which is the official or accepted way of doing something
findings	نتائج	information that is discovered during an official examination of a problem, situation or object



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

find	يجد
effect	أثر
gap	فجوة / ثغرة
hope	أمل / يأمل
headline	عنوان رئيسي
inform	يعلم
laugh	يضحك
unlike	على عكس

findings	نتائج
affect	يؤثر
map	خريطة
hop	يقفز
sub-heading	عنوان فرعي
form	يشكل / يكون
laugh at	يسخر من
alike	متشابه

The suffix ful, less, er & able

* لاحظ استخدام اللاحقة ful واللاحقة less:

word الكلمة

word	meaning
hope	أمل
use	استخدام / يستخدم
pain	ألم
power	قوة
taste	طعم / مذاق

The suffix ful

word	meaning
hopeful	متفائل
useful	مفيد
painful	مؤلم
powerful	قوي
tasteful	ذو مذاق

The suffix less

word	meaning
hopeless	يائس
useless	بلا فائدة
painless	غير مؤلم
powerless	بلا قوة / عاجز
tasteless	بلا طعم / عديم الذوق

* لاحظ استخدام اللاحقة able وتعني ممكن / قابل لـ:

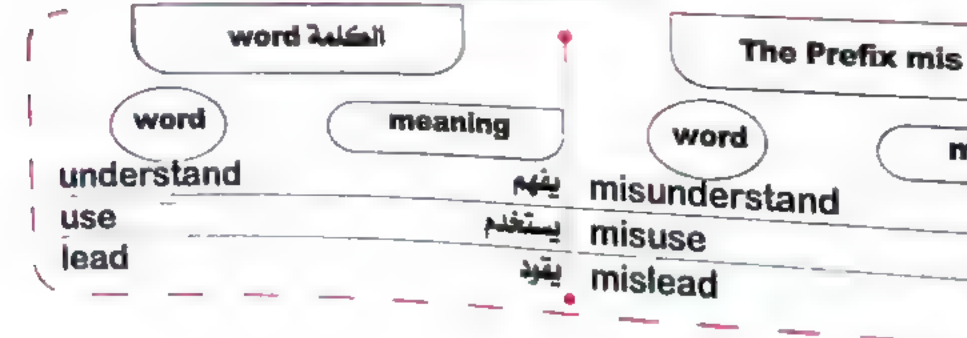
word الكلمة: word	meaning	The suffix able: word	meaning
change	يغير	changeable	قابل للتغير
read	يقرأ	readable	يمكن قراءته
recognise	يتعرف على	recognisable	يمكن التعرف عليه

* لاحظ استخدام اللاحقة er وتعطي اسم الشخص (الوظيفة):

word الكلمة: word	meaning	The suffix er: word	meaning
read	يقرأ	reader	قارئ
write	يكتب	writer	كاتب
speak	يتحدث	speaker	متحدث

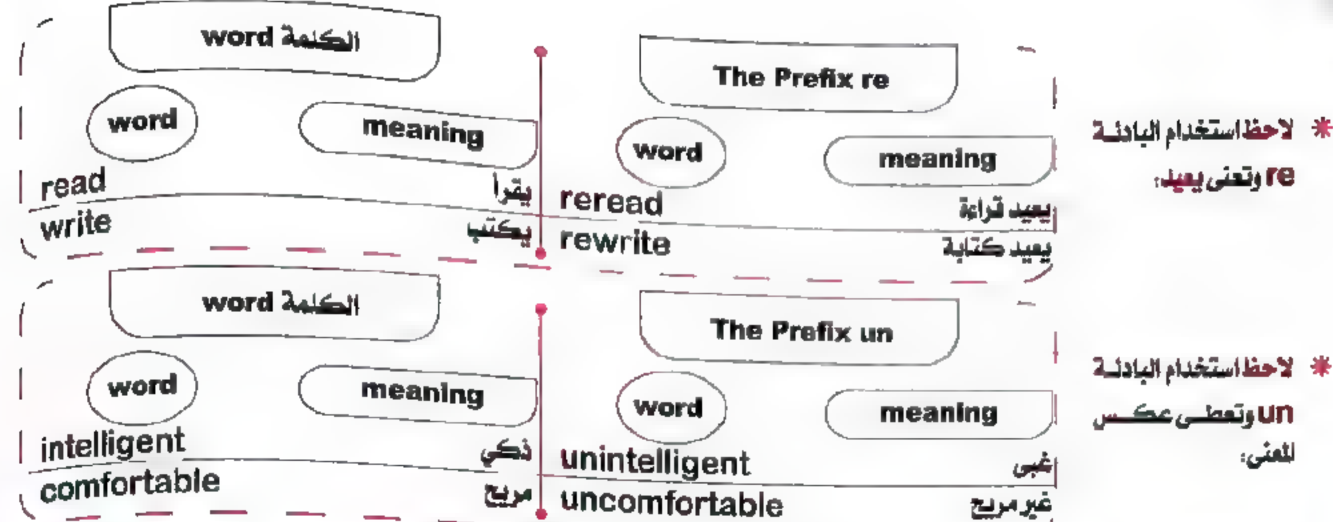
The Prefix mis, re & un

* لاحظ استخدام البادئة mis وتعني يسئ:



word الكلمة: word	meaning	The Prefix mis: word	meaning
understand	يفهم	misunderstand	يسئ فهم
use	يستخدم	misuse	يسئ استخدام
lead	يقود	mislead	يضلل







Shakespeare and the English language

Language is always **changing**, and new **words** are **created** all the time. We need new words to **describe** new **technology**, ideas and **situations**. For example, before people took photos of themselves on their phones, we didn't need a word for that.

But when everyone started doing it, the word **selfie** became very **useful**, and it was added to **dictionaries** in 2013.

Many famous dictionaries **add** new words every year, and sometimes they **remove** words and **phrases** that we don't use anymore. Shakespeare was a great **innovator** with language, and he added more words and **phrases** into the English language than anyone else. He made new words by changing verbs into **adjectives**, changing **nouns** into **verbs**, and **connecting** words **to** make new words. He also added **prefixes** and **suffixes**, for example, he created **uncomfortable** from **'comfortable**. Today the language that Shakespeare used can sound difficult, but he was writing in a way that made his stories **easy for** people to understand at that time like messaging language, Shakespeare made new words from other words that everyone already knew. Then he used his words to describe the things that people most wanted to talk about.

Emoji fun!

Yesterday, my **four-year-old** sister sent her **grandparents** some text **messages** from my phone. The problem is, there are no words, just a long **line** of **emojis**. This is **confusing** because our grandparents think the messages are from me! Should I have **taken** the phone **away** from my sister?

When a child begins to **learn how to** speak, they first make different sounds. It seems that children do the same with messaging. They use emojis **rather than proper** words to **communicate** what they want to say. But is this a good thing? Yes! Young children are learning to **communicate**. With text messages, children can receive and read replies which are written just for them. I'm sure this will make them feel **special** and they will want to communicate more. So, **instead of** taking phones away from children, perhaps we should give them our phones more often and say, "Send your grandparents a message".



Reading

Endless change

The Romans spoke a language called Latin and they first took it to the country they called Britennia almost two thousand years ago. However, the English language came from Germany when people called Angles and Saxons arrived about 500 yeas tater. Soon the Land of the Angles became known as England and the English have been using and misusing foreign words ever since. For example, words like cake, eggs, and happy all come from Old Norse, which was the language spoken by the Vikings who came to England a few years after the Angles. However, many more English words came from the French, who arrived in 1066. Unlike the poor people, who continued speaking English, all the rich and powerful people spoke French. That's why there are so many words in English with similar meanings. French words are recognizable because they usually describe something which is better. For example, the word house is an English word, but a big house is called a mansion, which is a French word. In the modern age, we often reuse old words from the past to make new international words for technology. For example, the first part of the word helicopter is Greek and the second part is Latin, but the word was first used by a Russian speaker living in America.

A survey about social media use



Introduction

The aim of this report is to summarise the findings of the survey into the time students spend using social media.

Procedure

Between 2015 and 2020, we asked 1,200 students about the amount of time they spent using social media. We also asked them how they used social media, and what they liked and disliked about using it. We recorded our results and compared them.

Findings

Most of the students were surprised by how much time they spent on social media when they thought about it carefully. Many students thought that they were spending too much time on social media and some students said that they would try to spend less time on social media. Some students reported that at least one member of their family had made a negative comment about it.

However, almost all of the students reported that they enjoyed using social media and most of the students did not want to stop using it.

Most students used social media on their phones. The students used social media to keep in touch with their friends, and to follow their interests or hobbies.

Conclusion

In general, students enjoy social media and they are using it more often. However, it is making a small number of students worried because they feel that they are spending too much time on it.

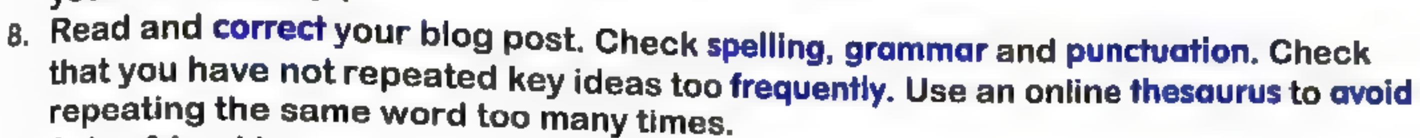




Listening

Tips on how to write a successful blog post

1. Start with your **topic**. Think about what will interest and **inform** your **reader**.
2. Start with a **headline** for your **blog**. A headline should tell the reader what the **blog** is about. It should be short, give information, be **interesting** and make the reader want to read the **rest** of the blog.
3. Find a **suitable** photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog **post** is about.
4. Plan the **sections** of your blog. Add a **sub-heading** for each section/new point.
5. Write your **introduction paragraph. Be clear** what the **purpose** of this blog post is. Speak to the reader - use first and third person. Include a question.
6. Write the **main** body of the blog.
7. **introduction.** Do not **include** new information in your conclusion. **Speak to** your reader again and include yourself use "we".



8. Read and **correct** your blog post. Check **spelling, grammar** and **punctuation.** Check that you have not repeated key ideas too **frequently.** Use an online **thesaurus** to **avoid** repeating the same word too many times.
9. Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it **make sense** to them?
10. **Cite** all your **sources** of information.



Exercise 1 Key vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الرئيسية

1. A/An............ is added at the beginning of a word to change its meaning. LM
   ⓐ acronym ⓑ abbreviation ⓒ suffix ⓓ prefix
2. I have read only some .... from the newspaper because I had no time. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ addresses ⓑ experiments ⓒ headlines ⓓ extracts
3. A/An .... is a web page containing information or opinions from a particular person or about a particular subject, to which new information is regularly added. LM
   ⓐ email ⓑ post ⓒ blog ⓓ title
4. The Russian leader wants to .... further changes to solve that problem.
   ⓐ reduce ⓑ introduce ⓒ increase ⓓ appear
5. The .... between the rich and the poor has become wider after corona virus crisis.
   ⓐ gape ⓑ friendship ⓒ gap ⓓ relation
6. .... is a synonym to suitable.
   ⓐ Link ⓑ Improper ⓒ Unsuitable ⓓ Proper
7. When riding a bicycle, you should wear the .... headgear.
   ⓐ paper ⓑ pepper ⓒ proper ⓓ dropper
8. A .... is someone who teaches or studies linguistics.
   ⓐ biologist ⓑ linguist ⓒ therapist ⓓ psychiatrist
9. The .... of the research surprised everyone.
   ⓐ findings ⓑ selfie ⓒ messaging ⓓ emoji
10. .... is a way of doing something, especially the usual or correct way.
   ⓐ Procedure ⓑ Result ⓒ Cause ⓓ Consequence

Exercise 2 Main vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الأساسية

11. What is the matter with you? I think you are ill; you seem .... and thin. LM
ⓐ strong ⓑ fit ⓒ pale ⓓ right

12. A/An .... is a discussion on a particular topic that frequently lasts for a long time and in which several points of view are expressed. LM
ⓐ post ⓑ debate ⓒ quarrel ⓓ interview

13. Most students are usually worried about exam.......... . LM
ⓐ causes ⓑ results ⓒ reasons ⓓ agreements

14. This man standing next to your uncle in that photo isn't ....; I don't remember him. LM
ⓐ recognisable ⓑ valuable ⓒ arguable ⓓ tolerable

15. The hotel is ....; I can't stay in it any more. LM
ⓐ comfortable ⓑ recognisable ⓒ uncomfortable ⓓ tolerable

16. The Egyptian .... in the USA defends the rights of the Arabs there. LM
ⓐ band ⓑ gang ⓒ society ⓓ community

17. My village is no longer ....; a lot of changes have taken place there recently. LM
ⓐ recognisable ⓑ advisable ⓒ recyclable ⓓ realizable

18. It's normal for couples to .... now and then.
ⓐ urge ⓑ oblige ⓒ augur ⓓ argue

19. Don't drag me into your .... ! It's nothing to do with me.
ⓐ lecture ⓑ argument ⓒ behave ⓓ argue

20. My friends always .... about their favourite players and teams .
ⓐ question ⓑ argue ⓒ need ⓓ tell

21. I was looking for a birthday present for my mother but I didn't find anything ....
ⓐ irritable ⓑ repairable ⓒ regrettable ⓓ suitable

22. Her .... for time off work was denied.
ⓐ request ⓑ require ⓒ inquire ⓓ acquire

23. He used a rather obscure .... and I can't remember what it was now.
ⓐ phrase ⓑ phase ⓒ father ⓓ praise

24. You haven't listened to a .... I've said!
ⓐ ward ⓑ reward ⓒ worry ⓓ word

25. Although I .... the project in public, my private opinion is that it will fail.
ⓐ suspect ⓑ expert ⓒ support ⓓ export

26. This drug may have the .... of speeding up your heart rate.
ⓐ affect ⓑ affection ⓒ effect ⓓ effective

27. A fair justice system is a fundamental part of a civilized ....
ⓐ social ⓑ sociable ⓒ society ⓓ socially

Exercise 3 Choose two Answers اختر إجابتين

28. You should always try not to .... your time, doing useless things. LM
ⓐ produce ⓑ misuse ⓒ save ⓓ waste ⓔ reduce

29. I'm .... chatting with my close friends when I have free time. LM
ⓐ keen on ⓑ afraid of ⓒ interested in ⓓ certain about ⓔ annoyed with

30. What are the .... procedures taken in such a situation? LM
ⓐ convenient ⓑ improper ⓒ proper ⓓ additional ⓔ next

31. Messaging is great for staying in .... with friends. LM
ⓐ disagreement ⓑ advance ⓒ agreement ⓓ touch ⓔ contact



32. I haven't .... a reply to my complaint yet. LM
ⓐ made ⓑ received ⓒ ignored ⓓ got ⓔ recognised

33. I think this grammar point isn't an age-appropriate rule to introduce for prep 1. "Appropriate" is similar in meaning to "..........." and "...........". LM
ⓐ difficult ⓑ realisable ⓒ suitable ⓓ insensitive ⓔ proper

34. Don't .... your time; try to make full use of it. LM
ⓐ waste ⓑ use ⓒ misuse ⓓ spend ⓔ save

Exercise 4 King Lear تمارين على الملك لير

35. A spy is someone who .... against his country and gives secrets to its enemy. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ innovates ⓑ suspects ⓒ plays ⓓ plots

36. The young man received a .... for rescuing the two tourists who got lost in the desert. LM
ⓐ loss ⓑ reward ⓒ profit ⓓ money

37. It is not loyal to .... your good friends. LM
ⓐ think of ⓑ plot against ⓒ care about ⓓ excuse for

38. .... means the fact of having a place to live or stay, considered as basic human need. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ Shelter ⓑ Cooperation ⓒ Hatred ⓓ Confidence

39. My friend was .... by a young man who pretended to be a sales representative; he was tricked and lost a lot of money.
ⓐ helped ⓑ thanked ⓒ believed ⓓ deceived

40. Amany has been practising all year; she .... to win the trophy.
ⓐ deserves ⓑ preserves ⓒ receives ⓓ deceives

41. This film didn't .... to me; I didn't enjoy it. LM
ⓐ suit ⓑ appeal ⓒ prefer ⓓ admire

Exercise 5 Various Exercises تمارين متنوعة

42. We use the prefix .... to get the antonym of understand.
ⓐ mis ⓑ in ⓒ un ⓓ im

43. We use the suffix .... to get the adjective of recognise.
ⓐ ly ⓑ able ⓒ ful ⓓ ment

44. We use the prefix .... to get the antonym of encourage.
ⓐ dis ⓑ in ⓒ un ⓓ im

45. We use the suffix .... to get the adjective of hope.
ⓐ ly ⓑ able ⓒ ful ⓓ ment

46. We use the prefix .... to get the antonym of connect.
ⓐ dis ⓑ in ⓒ un ⓓ im

47. The language of text messages doesn't .... correct spelling.
ⓐ inquire ⓑ acquire ⓒ require ⓓ enquire

48. What is the matter with you? I think you are ill; you seem .... and thin.
ⓐ strong ⓑ fit ⓒ pale ⓓ right

49. I .... they will get the punishment they deserve.
ⓐ wish ⓑ hop ⓒ hip ⓓ hope

50. The author's name was printed below the .... of the book.
ⓐ address ⓑ headline ⓒ title ⓓ heading

51. Let's stay calm and try to behave like responsible ....
ⓐ teens ⓑ teenagers ⓒ children ⓓ adults

52. The books with large print are meant for our partially sighted ....
ⓐ readers ⓑ writers ⓒ workers ⓓ authors

53. There seems to be some confusion over who is .... giving the talk.
ⓐ action ⓑ actual ⓒ actually ⓓ reasonable

54. When I buy anything I always dictate my .... over the phone.
ⓐ system ⓑ order ⓒ other ⓓ outer

55. Investors were seriously .... when the stock market began to crash.
ⓐ happy ⓑ cheerful ⓒ laughing ⓓ worried

56. I .... I will join the faculty of medicine.
ⓐ hope ⓑ wish ⓒ need ⓓ ask

57. I think I'd like to stay at home this evening .... than go out.
ⓐ other ⓑ order ⓒ rather ⓓ quite

58. Have you got any .... for a new journalist?
ⓐ advises ⓑ tips ⓒ taps ⓓ tops

59. UN is the .... of the United Nations organisation.
ⓐ abbreviation ⓑ summary ⓒ prevention ⓓ shortage

60. The .... of the heart is to pump blood around the body.
ⓐ functional ⓑ facture ⓒ vocation ⓓ function

61. Sorry, but what you say doesn't .... any sense.
ⓐ rise ⓑ make ⓒ get ⓓ take

62. He made no answer but walked on, gesturing for me to ....
ⓐ fellow ⓑ flow ⓒ follow ⓓ foil

63. The teacher dismissed the student who laughed .... loud.
ⓐ in ⓑ out ⓒ off ⓓ over

64. The police can really help you in the .... of an emergency.
ⓐ accident ⓑ story ⓒ event ⓓ incident

65. This coin is not original," The adjective 'original' gives the antonym of ....
ⓐ first ⓑ fake ⓒ native ⓓ true

66. .... are used to express emotions in electronic messages.
ⓐ Emojis ⓑ Abbreviations ⓒ Keys ⓓ Symbols

67. He ordered, "I want two good engines down here ASAP". What is meant by ASAP?
ⓐ As soon as perfect ⓑ As soon as possible
ⓒ As soon as person ⓓ As soon as potential

68. The teacher .... us not to look at our phones during the exam.
ⓐ suggested ⓑ recommended ⓒ warned ⓓ looked

69. Include only the basic facts in the report. The adjective "basic" is a synonym of ....
ⓐ trivial ⓑ fundamental ⓒ principle ⓓ b & c

70. .... , everything went well. That's clear to everyone.
ⓐ Apparently ⓑ Alone ⓒ Sadly ⓓ Unlikely

71. We have good .... with the local community.
ⓐ communicates ⓑ contacts ⓒ connects ⓓ contact

72. We don't usually use .... English when we send text messages.
ⓐ inform ⓑ formal ⓒ form ⓓ from

73. I was worried when he started to ....
ⓐ town ⓑ clown ⓒ frown ⓓ brown





Reported imperatives, suggestions and advice
الجملة الأمرية والاقتراح والنصيحة فى الغير مباشر

الجملة الأمرية

هى الجملة تبدأ بفعل فى المصدر فى الإثبات مثل "Open this door."
أو بـ don't فى حالة النفى مثل "Don't waste your time."

* وللتحويل إلى كلام غير مباشر كما يلي:

❶ تحويل فعل القول كما يلى:

direct	indirect
said to	complained - warned - ordered - asked - told - advised

❷ تحذف inverted commas (علامات التنصيص) ونستخدم.

* فى الأمر المثبت نستخدم (to + المصدر)

- Ali said to his son, "study hard".
- Ali advised (told - asked) his son to study hard.

* فى الأمر المنفى نستخدم (not to + المصدر).

- Seif said to Jana, "Don't make noise."
- Seif advised (told) Jana not to make noise.

❸ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب كما فى الجملة الخبرية.
❹ تتغير الأزمنة كما فى الجملة الخبرية.
❺ تتغير أظرف المكان والزمان كما فى الجملة الخبرية.

لاحظ استخدام الأفعال فى الغير مباشر

فى حالة التمنى (wish)

wish .... to + inf. Or noun

- He said to me, "Have a nice holiday."
  - He wished me a nice holiday.

فى حالة الاتهام (accuse)

accuse .... of + V + ing

- Nada said to Aya, "You stole my wallet."
  - Nada accused Aya of stealing her wallet.

فى حالة الاقتراح (suggest) فى حالة التوصية (recommend)

suggest / recommend + v +ing
suggest / recommend that + فاعل + should + inf. Or (فاعل + inf.)

- He said, "Let's sing." = He suggested singing.
  - He suggested that they should sing.

فى حالة الوعد (promise)

promise to + inf. / promised that + جملة

- His father said, "If you get high marks, I'll buy you a bike."
  - His father promised to buy him a bike if he got high marks.

فى حالة الاعتراف (admit)

admit + v + ing / admit that جملة

- She said, "I did this crime."
  - She admitted doing that crime.



في حالة النصيحة (advise)

advise someone to / not to + inf.

- He said to me, "You'd better sleep early."
  - He **advised** me **to** sleep early.

* إذا بدأت الجملة داخل الأقواس بـ If الافتراضية (للنصيحة) تحول كالآتي :

- He said, "If I were you, I would study hard."
  - He **advised** me **to** study hard.

في حالة الموافقة (agree)

agree to + inf. / agree that + جملة

- He said to me, "Yes, I will go with you."
  - He **agreed** to go with me.

في حالة الرفض (refuse)

refuse to + inf. / refuse that + جملة

- She said to me, "No, I won't go with you."
  - She **refused** to go with me.

في حالة الإنكار (deny)

deny + v + ing / deny that جملة

- The thief said, "I didn't rob the house."
  - The thief **denied** robbing the house.
  - The thief **denied** that he had robbed the house.

في حالة الاعتذار (apologise)

apologise for + V + ing

- He said, "I'm sorry I didn't attend your wedding party."
  - He **apologised** for not attending my wedding party.

في حالة العرض (offer)

offer to + inf. / offer that + جملة

- He said, "Shall I help you to cross the road?"
  - He **offered** to help me cross the road.

في حالة الطلب (request)

ask .... to + inf.

- She said, "Could you lend me your dictionary, please?"
  - She **asked** me to lend her my dictionary.

في حالة الدعوة (invite)

invite .... to + inf. Or noun

- He said, "Would you like to come to my birthday party?"
  - He **invited** me to his birthday party.

في حالة اللوم (blame)

blame .... for + V + ing

- He said, "Why didn't you study hard?"
  - He **blamed** me for not studying hard.

في حالة القرار (decide)

decide to + inf.

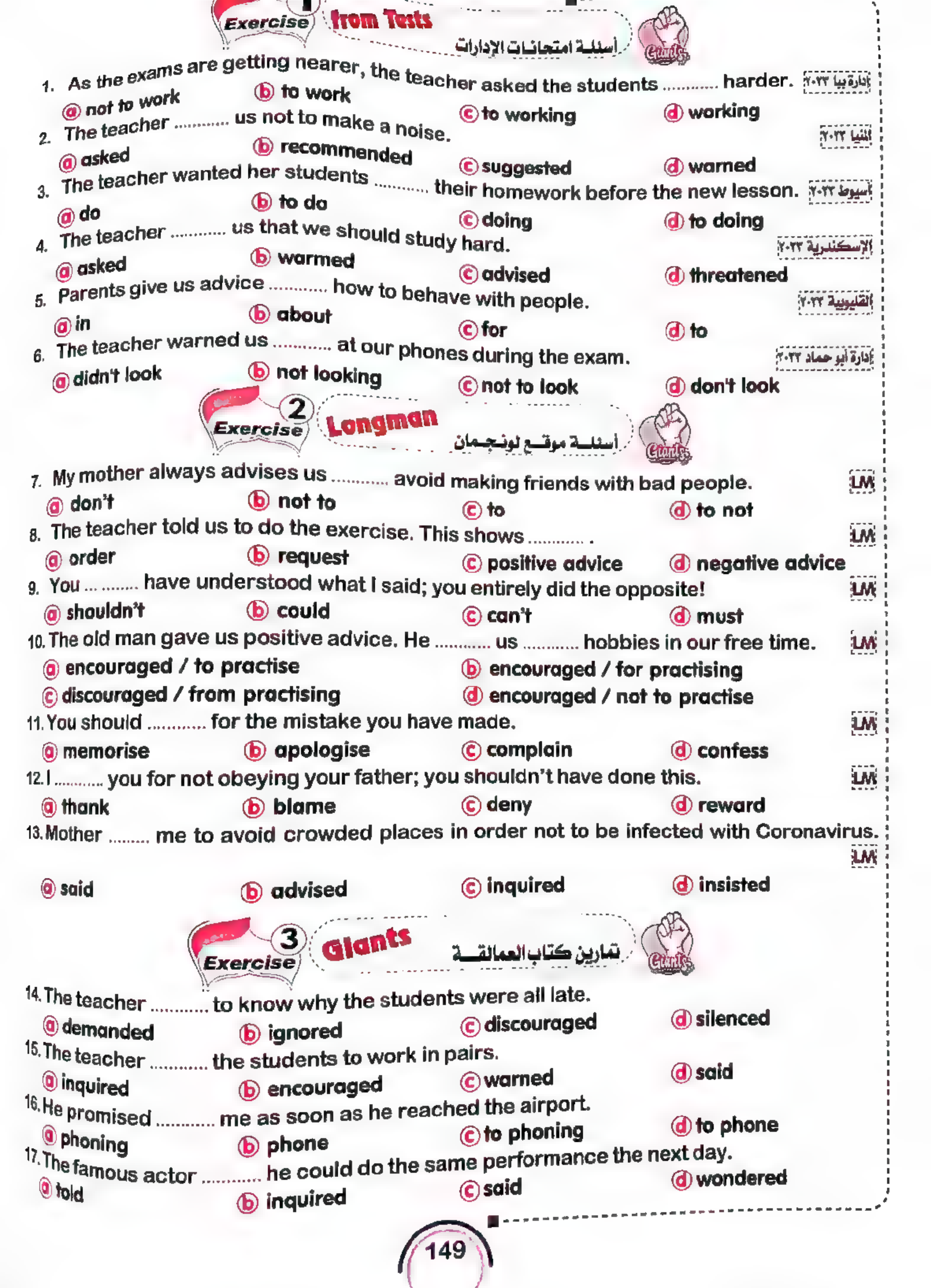
- He said, "I've made up my mind to give up smoking"
  - He **decided to** give up smoking.

في حالة التحذير (warn)

warn someone not to + inf.

warn someone against + V + ing

- He said to me, "Don't cross the road."
  - He **warned** me **not to** cross the road.
  - He **warned** me **against** crossing the road.



Exercise 1 from Tests أسئلة امتحانات الإدارات

1. As the exams are getting nearer, the teacher asked the students .... harder. إدارة بنيا ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ not to work ⓑ to work ⓒ to working ⓓ working
2. The teacher .... us not to make a noise. المنيا ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ asked ⓑ recommended ⓒ suggested ⓓ warned
3. The teacher wanted her students .... their homework before the new lesson. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ do ⓑ to do ⓒ doing ⓓ to doing
4. The teacher .... us that we should study hard. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ asked ⓑ warmed ⓒ advised ⓓ threatened
5. Parents give us advice .... how to behave with people. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ in ⓑ about ⓒ for ⓓ to
6. The teacher warned us .... at our phones during the exam. إدارة أبو حماد ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ didn't look ⓑ not looking ⓒ not to look ⓓ don't look

Exercise 2 Longman أسئلة موقع لونجمان

7. My mother always advises us .... avoid making friends with bad people. LM
   ⓐ don't ⓑ not to ⓒ to ⓓ to not
8. The teacher told us to do the exercise. This shows .... LM
   ⓐ order ⓑ request ⓒ positive advice ⓓ negative advice
9. You .... have understood what I said; you entirely did the opposite! LM
   ⓐ shouldn't ⓑ could ⓒ can't ⓓ must
10. The old man gave us positive advice. He .... us .... hobbies in our free time. LM
   ⓐ encouraged / to practise ⓑ encouraged / for practising
   ⓒ discouraged / from practising ⓓ encouraged / not to practise
11. You should .... for the mistake you have made. LM
   ⓐ memorise ⓑ apologise ⓒ complain ⓓ confess
12. I .... you for not obeying your father; you shouldn't have done this. LM
   ⓐ thank ⓑ blame ⓒ deny ⓓ reward
13. Mother .... me to avoid crowded places in order not to be infected with Coronavirus. LM
   ⓐ said ⓑ advised ⓒ inquired ⓓ insisted

Exercise 3 Giants تمارين كتاب العمالقة

14. The teacher .... to know why the students were all late.
   ⓐ demanded ⓑ ignored ⓒ discouraged ⓓ silenced
15. The teacher .... the students to work in pairs.
   ⓐ inquired ⓑ encouraged ⓒ warned ⓓ said
16. He promised .... me as soon as he reached the airport.
   ⓐ phoning ⓑ phone ⓒ to phoning ⓓ to phone
17. The famous actor .... he could do the same performance the next day.
   ⓐ told ⓑ inquired ⓒ said ⓓ wondered

18. Jana .... that she had taken my wallet.

ⓐ denied ⓑ promised ⓒ begged ⓓ offered

19. My teacher .... that I study languages.

ⓐ asked ⓑ encouraged ⓒ warned ⓓ suggested

20. Dr Amany suggests that I .... on a diet to lose weight and be more healthy.

ⓐ going ⓑ go ⓒ went ⓓ goes

21. You should .... for not being able to come to the meeting.

ⓐ memorize ⓑ apologize ⓒ complain ⓓ confess

22. My teacher .... us to read short stories to improve our English.

ⓐ warned ⓑ said ⓒ discouraged ⓓ encouraged

23. Mother .... me to avoid crowded places during the pandemic.

ⓐ said ⓑ advised ⓒ inquired ⓓ insisted

24. The workers .... against the cruel treatment of their employer.

ⓐ suggested ⓑ protested ⓒ consisted ⓓ protected

25. The teacher .... us not to look at our phones during the exam.

ⓐ ask ⓑ suggested ⓒ warned ⓓ recommended

26. The teacher told the students .... their books at page 150.

ⓐ to open ⓑ open ⓒ you open ⓓ opening

27. Omnia .... that she had a headache.

ⓐ complained ⓑ told ⓒ asked ⓓ warned

28. Ahmed .... to drive me into the city centre.

ⓐ said ⓑ threatened ⓒ ordered ⓓ agreed

29. A back injury .... her to withdraw from the race.

ⓐ forced ⓑ suggested ⓒ expected ⓓ invited

30. Toka .... going shopping at the new Fairfax centre.

ⓐ demanded ⓑ warned ⓒ promised ⓓ suggested

31. Aya denied .... the car window.

ⓐ breaking ⓑ break ⓒ to breaking ⓓ to break

32. The teacher .... the pupils to do the homework.

ⓐ threatened ⓑ offered ⓒ promised ⓓ reminded

33. He said "I'm sorry for not coming earlier.". He .... to me for not coming early.

ⓐ confessed ⓑ apologised ⓒ admitted ⓓ promised

34. He said to me, "You'd better sleep early." - He .... me to sleep early.

ⓐ denied ⓑ advised ⓒ warned ⓓ accused

35. She .... me if I bought a new car.

ⓐ wondered ⓑ wandered ⓒ asked ⓓ inquired

36. The criminal .... that he killed his neighbour deliberately.

ⓐ promised ⓑ suggested ⓒ threatened ⓓ admitted

37. I .... that Ali go by his car.

ⓐ promised ⓑ said ⓒ told ⓓ suggested

38. He .... me to apply for a different kind of job.

ⓐ said ⓑ told ⓒ tell ⓓ say

39. My friend told me .... on the broken chair.

ⓐ not to sit ⓑ to not sit ⓒ for sitting ⓓ to sit

40. My teacher .... me to read "King Lear".

ⓐ advising ⓑ advice ⓒ advised ⓓ advise

41. She warned me .... careful of fast cars.

ⓐ for be ⓑ to be ⓒ not to be ⓓ be

42. He said to me, "Have a nice holiday." - She .... me a nice holiday.

ⓐ wished ⓑ refused ⓒ said ⓓ wondered

43. He said, "Let's sing." - He .... singing.

ⓐ suggested ⓑ advised ⓒ warned ⓓ wondered

44. His father said, "If you get high marks, I'll buy you a bike." - His father .... to buy him a bike if he got high marks.

ⓐ asked ⓑ refused ⓒ advised ⓓ promised

45. He said, "If I were you, I would study hard." - He .... me to study hard.

ⓐ denied ⓑ advised ⓒ warned ⓓ accused

46. She said, "I did this crime." - She .... doing that crime.

ⓐ admitted ⓑ denied ⓒ advised ⓓ warned

47. He said to me, "Yes, I will go with you." - He .... to go with me.

ⓐ offered ⓑ denied ⓒ agreed ⓓ refused

48. She said to me, "No, I won't go with you." - She .... to go with me.

ⓐ offered ⓑ insisted ⓒ agreed ⓓ refused

49. The thief said, "I didn't rob the house." - The thief .... robbing the house.

ⓐ admitted ⓑ denied ⓒ advised ⓓ warned

50. He said, "I'm sorry I didn't attend your wedding party." - He .... for not attending my wedding party.

ⓐ denied ⓑ apologised ⓒ blamed ⓓ refused

51. He said, "Shall I help you to cross the road?" - He .... to help me cross the road.

ⓐ offered ⓑ denied ⓒ agreed ⓓ refused

52. She said, "Could you lend me your dictionary, please?" - She .... me to lend her my dictionary.

ⓐ asked ⓑ told ⓒ said ⓓ wondered

53. He said, "Would you like to come to my birthday party?" - He .... me to his birthday party.

ⓐ invited ⓑ denied ⓒ said ⓓ blamed

54. He said, "Why didn't you study hard?" - He .... me for not studying hard.

ⓐ denied ⓑ apologised ⓒ blamed ⓓ refused

55. He said, "I've made up my mind to give up smoking". - He .... to give up smoking.

ⓐ warned ⓑ refused ⓒ denied ⓓ decided

56. Nada said to Aya, "You stole my wallet." - Nada .... Aya of stealing her wallet.

ⓐ admitted ⓑ denied ⓒ accused ⓓ wondered

57. He said to me, "Don't cross the road." - He warned me .... crossing the road.

ⓐ don't ⓑ against ⓒ to ⓓ to not

58. He said, "I will leave now." - He .... on leaving then.

ⓐ warned ⓑ refused ⓒ insisted ⓓ denied

59. He said, "Let's go for a walk." - He suggested that we .... for a walk.

ⓐ go ⓑ gone ⓒ going ⓓ goes

60. "You should revise quietly." My friend said. My friend recommended .... quietly.

ⓐ revise ⓑ revising ⓒ revised ⓓ to revising

61. The guard warned us .... touch the fire alarms once more.

ⓐ to ⓑ if ⓒ that ⓓ not to

62. Jana said she wanted to get away and .... away.
ⓐ to fly ⓑ she wants ⓒ flying ⓓ flew

63. She promised me .... be late.
ⓐ don't ⓑ not to ⓒ to not ⓓ didn't

64. Our teacher asked us .... our books.
ⓐ don't forget ⓑ not to forget ⓒ didn't forget ⓓ not forget

65. I .... my friend why I didn't go out yesterday.
ⓐ asked ⓑ told ⓒ said ⓓ wondered

66. My mother warned me .... the plate because it was very hot.
ⓐ don't touch ⓑ not touch ⓒ not touching ⓓ not to touch

67. The teacher suggested that .... the exercise again.
ⓐ we do ⓑ we are doing ⓒ doing ⓓ did we

68. "Please, give us some advice." – They .... us to give them some advice.
ⓐ warned ⓑ advised ⓒ begged ⓓ suggested

69. My son promised he .... be late home once more.
ⓐ won't ⓑ wouldn't ⓒ hadn't ⓓ hasn't

70. "Do not tell her what I said". He begged me .... her what he had said.
ⓐ not to tell ⓑ not tell ⓒ not telling ⓓ told

71. "Mai, bring me a chair.", said her father. Mai's father asked her .... him a chair.
ⓐ bring ⓑ bringing ⓒ to bring ⓓ brought

72. Ali suggested .... dinner at the restaurant close to my house.
ⓐ having ⓑ to have ⓒ to be having ⓓ have had

73. I recommend that you .... to the doctor as soon as possible.
ⓐ can go ⓑ could go ⓒ go ⓓ will go

74. He admitted .... my pen without asking me.
ⓐ to borrow ⓑ borrow ⓒ borrowed ⓓ borrowing

75. Mr Al Daifi .... to drive me into the city centre.
ⓐ said ⓑ threatened ⓒ ordered ⓓ agreed

76. My teacher advised me .... too much TV.
ⓐ to watch ⓑ to not watch ⓒ not to watch ⓓ not watching

77. Our teacher .... us not to eat during the lesson.
ⓐ suggested ⓑ allowed ⓒ said ⓓ warned

78. The tour guide .... the tourists not to go into the desert on their own.
ⓐ warned ⓑ encouraged ⓒ discouraged ⓓ suggested

79. The famous actor .... he could do the same performance the next day.
ⓐ told ⓑ inquired ⓒ said ⓓ wondered



Exercise on Translation

1. Never get frustrated when you fail to overcome any obstacle to reach your objectives. The more you insist on pursuing your ambitions, the more you achieve success. LM

(أ) لا تستمر في الإحباط أبدًا عندما تحاول التغلب على أي عقبة للوصول إلى أهدافك. كلما أصررت على متابعة طموحاتك، سوف تحقق نجاحًا أكبر.

(ب) لا تشعر بالحزن أبدًا عندما تفشل في التغلب على أي عقبة للوصول إلى أهدافك. كلما أصررت على متابعة طموحاتك، كلما حققت نجاحًا أكبر.

(ج) لا تستمر في الإحباط أبدًا عندما تفشل في التغلب على أي عقبة للوصول إلى أحلامك. كلما أصررت على متابعة طموحاتك، كلما حققت نجاحًا أكبر.

(د) لا تشعر بالإحباط أبدًا عندما تفشل في التغلب على أي عقبة للوصول إلى أهدافك. كلما أصررت على متابعة طموحاتك، سوف تحقق نجاحًا أكبر.

2. The ministry of education is trying to develop curricula and modify the exam system. Thus, we can have highly qualified graduates who are able to face global and local challenges. LM

(أ) تحاول وزارة التربية والتعليم العالي تطوير المناهج وتعديل نظام البعثات. وبالتالي، يمكن أن يكون لدينا خريجين مؤهلين تأهيلًا عاليًا قادرين على مواجهة التحديات العالمية والمحلية.

(ب) تحاول وزارة التربية والتعليم تطوير المناهج وتعديل نظام الامتحانات. وبالتالي، يمكن أن يكون لدينا خريجين مؤهلين تأهيلا عاليا قادرين على مواجهة مصاعب الحياة محليا وقاريا.

(ج) تحاول وزارة التربية والتعليم تطوير المناهج وتعديل نظام الامتحانات. وبالتالي، يمكن أن يكون لدينا خريجين مؤهلين تأهيلا عاليا قادرين على مواجهة التحديات العالمية والمحلية.

(د) تحاول وزارة التربية والتعليم تطوير المعلمين وتعديل نظام الإعارات. وبالتالي، يمكن أن يكون لدينا خريجين مؤهلين تأهيلا عاليا قادرين على مواجهة التحديات العالمية والمحلية.

3. Development of industry and agriculture is our only hope for increasing the national income and raising the standard of living for all members of the society.

(أ) تنمية الصناعة و الثقافة أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لجميع أفراد المجتمع.

(ب) تنمية الصناعة والزراعة أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لجميع أفراد المجتمع.

(ج) تنمية الصناعة والزراعة أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل الدولي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لجميع أفراد المجتمع.

(د) تنقية الصناعة والزراعة أملنا الوحيد لزيادة الدخل القومي ورفع مستوى المعيشة لجميع أفراد المجتمع.

٤. يُعد تلوث المياه من أخطر القضايا التي تشغل عقول العلماء في الوقت الحاضر. هذا النوع من التلوث عادة ما يكون نتيجة للأنشطة البشرية في البحيرات والأنهار والمحيطات. LM

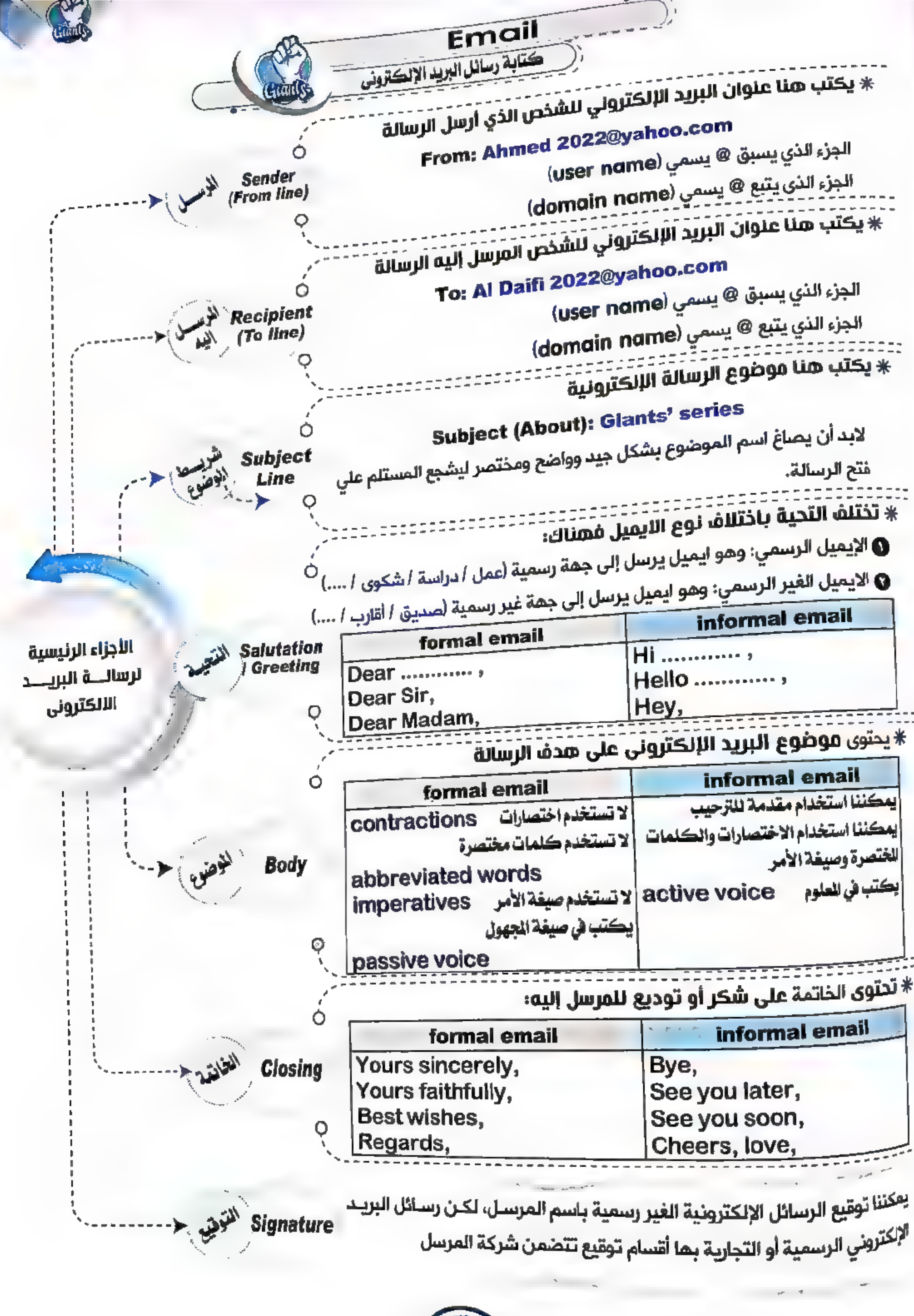
ⓐ Water pollution is one of the most tolerable issues of concern to scientists at the present time. This type of pollution is usually the result of human activities in lakes, rivers and canals.

ⓑ Water pollution is one of the most serious issues that occupies the minds of scientists at the present time. This type of pollution is usually the result of human activities in lakes, rivers and oceans.

ⓒ Water pollution is one of the most serious issues of concern to scientists at future time. This type of pollution is usually the result of human activities outside lakes, rivers and oceans.

ⓓ Water pollution is one of the most serious issues that occupies the minds of thinkers at the present time. This type of pollution is usually the cause of human activities in lakes, rivers and oceans.





Email

كتابة رسائل البريد الإلكتروني

الأجزاء الرئيسية لرسالة البريد الالكتروني

Sender (From line) الراسل

* يكتب هنا عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للشخص الذي أرسل الرسالة

From: Ahmed 2022@yahoo.com

الجزء الذي يسبق @ يسمي (user name)

الجزء الذي يتبع @ يسمي (domain name)

Recipient (To line) المرسل إليه

* يكتب هنا عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للشخص المرسل إليه الرسالة

To: Al Daifi 2022@yahoo.com

الجزء الذي يسبق @ يسمي (user name)

الجزء الذي يتبع @ يسمي (domain name)

Subject Line شريط الموضوع

* يكتب هنا موضوع الرسالة الإلكترونية

Subject (About): Giants' series

لابد أن يصاغ اسم الموضوع بشكل جيد وواضح ومختصر ليشجع المستلم علي فتح الرسالة.

Salutation / Greeting التحية

* تختلف التحية باختلاف نوع الايميل فهناك:

❶ الايميل الرسمي: وهو ايميل يرسل إلى جهة رسمية (عمل / دراسة / شكوى / ....)

❷ الايميل الغير الرسمي: وهو ايميل يرسل إلى جهة غير رسمية (صديق / أقارب / ....)

formal email	informal email
Dear .... , Dear Sir, Dear Madam,	Hi .... , Hello .... , Hey,

Body الموضوع

* يحتوى موضوع البريد الإلكتروني على هدف الرسالة

formal email	informal email
contractions لا تستخدم اختصارات لا تستخدم كلمات مختصرة abbreviated words imperatives لا تستخدم صيغة الأمر يكتب في صيغة المجهول passive voice	يمكننا استخدام مقدمة للترحيب يمكننا استخدام الاختصارات والكلمات المختصرة وصيغة الأمر active voice يكتب في المعلوم

Closing الخاتمة

* تحتوى الخاتمة على شكر أو توديع للمرسل إليه:

formal email	informal email
Yours sincerely, Yours faithfully, Best wishes, Regards,	Bye, See you later, See you soon, Cheers, love,

Signature التوقيع

يمكننا توقيع الرسائل الإلكترونية الغير رسمية باسم المرسل، لكن رسائل البريد الإلكتروني الرسمية أو التجارية بها أقسام توقيع تتضمن شركة المرسل

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Reading stimulates your mind. It is like a workout for your brain. When people get old, their muscles begin to deteriorate. They get weaker and their strength leaves them. Exercise can prevent their loss. The same thing happens to people's brains when they get older. Brainpower and speed decline with age. Reading strengthens your brain and prevents these declines.

Reading can make you a more powerful person. You can learn to do new things by reading. Do you want to make video games? Do you want to design clothing? Reading can teach you all this and more. Read everything that you can at school, whether it is interesting or not. Reading expands your vocabulary. Even a "boring" text can teach you new words. Having a larger vocabulary will help you better express yourself. You will be able to speak, write and think more intelligently. What's boring about that?

Do not just discount a text because it is unfamiliar to you. Each time you read, you are exposed to new ideas <u>perspective</u>. Reading can change the way that you understand the world. It can give you a broader perspective on things. It can make you worldlier. You can learn how people live in faraway places. You can learn about cultures different from your own.

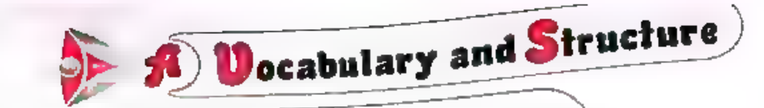
Reading is good for your state of mind. It has a calming effect. It can lower your stress levels and help you relax. You can escape from your troubles for a moment when you read, and it's a positive escape. The benefits of reading can't be counted. So do yourself a favour: the next time you get a reading assignment, take as much as you can from it. Squeeze it for every drop of knowledge that it contains. Then move on the next one.

1. What prevents the deterioration of the muscles?
   ⓐ Exercise ⓑ Reading ⓒ Knowledge ⓓ Sleep
2. What do you think the underlined word "perspective" means?
   ⓐ Products ⓑ Viewpoints ⓒ Troubles ⓓ Loss
3. Reading can do you a favour through positive ....
   ⓐ escapism ⓑ exercise ⓒ treatment ⓓ behavior
4. When you learn how people of different cultures from your own live, you will be ....
   ⓐ beloved ⓑ unfamiliar ⓒ ignorant ⓓ familiar
5. The best title for the passage is "...........".
   ⓐ Reading and the mind
   ⓑ Some merits of reading
   ⓒ Reading helps you find a job
   ⓓ Some demerits of reading
6. What does the author believe that reading is good for your mind state?
   ⓐ It has a calming effect
   ⓑ It can help you relax
   ⓒ It can lower your stress levels
   ⓓ All of these
7. Which best expresses the author's main purpose in writing this text?
   ⓐ He is trying to persuade students to do their reading work.
   ⓑ He is teaching people how to become better readers.
   ⓒ He is explaining why people don't do their reading work.
   ⓓ He is entertaining readers with facts about the mind and body.
8. Which of the following is not one of the author's main points?
   ⓐ Reading broadens your perspective and makes you a better person.
   ⓑ Reading is a relaxing activity with positive mental side effects.
   ⓒ Reading helps you perform on tests and get into better schools.
   ⓓ Reading helps your mind in shape and prevents losses due to age.

Write an email of about (180) words on the following:

"Invite your friend to your birthday party"





A Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should work hard to have rest in your .... life.
   ⓐ latter ⓑ later ⓒ others ⓓ another
2. Can't you see that you're frightened your little brother? Don't be so ....
   ⓐ excited ⓑ interested ⓒ wise ⓓ cruel
3. What is the .... of the book you read?
   ⓐ address ⓑ title ⓒ headline ⓓ heading
4. He has left his car over there. He .... that. There is a "No waiting" sign.
   ⓐ mustn't do ⓑ shouldn't have done ⓒ shouldn't do ⓓ should have done
5. The Nile basin land is suitable .... agriculture.
   ⓐ to ⓑ of ⓒ with ⓓ for
6. I didn't know there was a meeting today. You .... me.
   ⓐ should have told ⓑ should tell ⓒ had to tell ⓓ needn't have told
7. ASAP stands for ....
   ⓐ as soon as ⓑ as possible ⓒ such as ⓓ as soon as possible
8. Aya .... Toka to start revising for the test.
   ⓐ ordered ⓑ suggested ⓒ warned ⓓ advised
9. The instructions on the box are very ....
   ⓐ interested ⓑ confusing ⓒ bored ⓓ confused
10. The word advice is the .... of the word a tip.
    ⓐ synonym ⓑ antonym ⓒ singular ⓓ plural
11. She advised me .... early.
    ⓐ arrive ⓑ arriving ⓒ to arrive ⓓ have arrived
12. She .... the children not to play with matches.
    ⓐ denied ⓑ suggested ⓒ wondered ⓓ warned
13. I missed the first lecture; I .... up late last night.
    ⓐ should have stayed ⓑ could have stayed
    ⓒ shouldn't have stayed ⓓ needn't stay
14. Samir .... have helped his friend Naser but he was busy.
    ⓐ shouldn't ⓑ couldn't ⓒ could ⓓ must
15. Which of the following is not a prefix?
    ⓐ re ⓑ less ⓒ dis ⓓ un

B Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The application of spreading theories of economics has so far failed to lift developing countries out of the cycle of poverty that has effects on the majority of their inhabitants. Worldwide, there are still an estimated 1.3 billion people earning a dollar or less a day and living in extreme poverty. Decades of huge loans by banks from affluent notions-at interest rates that cripple developing economies do not appear to be providing a solution to poverty. Professor Muhammad Yunus' Grameen Bank, however, is taking a different approach to the problem.

In 1976, the Bangladeshi economics professor started a microcredit programme with a loan of just 62 cents (U.S) each to a group of 42 workers. Instead of loaning large amounts of



money to well-off debtors, the bank he started made extremely small loans to poor Bangladeshis who were considered a bad risk by the traditional banking system.

He astounded his critics by proving that the poor were more likely to repay their debts than the wealthy. Virtually none of the thousands of women who have been financially assisted by the bank for over 20 years have defaulted on their payments. Yet all are expected to pay interest and stick to the rules of contract. These borrowings have enabled Bangladeshi women to set up numerous small-scale projects which directly benefit their families and the communities where they live. The success of the experiment has brought about a revolution in the antipoverty programmes.

16. The best title for the passage is ....
ⓐ A common problem with a new solution ⓑ A new problem with common solution
ⓒ A now way of begging money ⓓ the developing countries' loans

17. We can infer from the passage that the word "astounded" means ....
ⓐ astonished ⓑ provided ⓒ admitted ⓓ improved

18. The last lines of the passage represents ....
ⓐ the success of the experience ⓑ the failure of the experience
ⓒ the increase of poverty ⓓ the decrease of interests

19. At the beginning of his experiment, professor Muhammad Yunus was ....
ⓐ supported ⓑ criticised ⓒ suspected ⓓ appreciated

20. Professor Muhammad Yunus' Grameen bank way to treat poverty was ....
ⓐ unique ⓑ common ⓒ unreliable ⓓ dishonest

21. Do theories of economic manage to overcome the poverty in the world? Why?
ⓐ Yes, as many people live happily and comfortably.
ⓑ Yes, as there are few developing countries.
ⓒ No, as there are loans need to be paid by many developed countries.
ⓓ No, because most developing countries' people suffer from poverty.

22. What did Muhammad Yunus do to face poverty in Bangladesh?
ⓐ He borrowed from the rich ⓑ He lent the young people
ⓒ He lent the poor people ⓓ He borrowed from Bangladeshi Banks

23. What do you think of Mohammed Yunus?
ⓐ Genius ⓑ Greedy ⓒ Selfish ⓓ Helpless

C Writing

24. **A: Translate the following into Arabic.**

المتطوعون لا يعملون من أجل المال ولكن من اجل رؤية الابتسامة على وجه شخص مريض او فقير.

ⓐ Voluntary do not work for money, but to see the smile on the face of a sick or poor person.
ⓑ Volunteers do not work with money, but to see the smile on the face of a sick or poor person.
ⓒ Volunteers do not work for money, but to seeing the smile on the face of a sick or poor person.
ⓓ Volunteers do not work for money, but to see the smile on the face of a sick or poor person.

25. **B: Translate the following into English.**

The rapid population growth is a major problem that hinders the development projects implemented by the government.

(أ) يعتبر التلوث السريع مشكلة كبيرة تعيق المشاريع التنموية التي تنفذها الحكومة.
(ب) يعتبر النمو السكاني السريع مشكلة كبيرة تعيق المشاريع الصناعية التي تنفذها الحكومة.
(ج) يعتبر النمو السكاني السريع مشكلة كبيرة تعيق المشاريع التنموية التي تنفذها الحكومة.
(د) يعتبر النمو السكاني السريع مشكلة كبيرة تعيق المشاريع التنموية التي تشرف عليها الحكومة.

26. **Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:**

How to help your country to achieve progress



أزهر الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

1) Complete the following dialogue: (2 Marks)

Father You look sad. ❶ ....?
Son My friend Adel fell down and injured his arm.
Father ❷ ....?
Son I did nothing.
Father You should learn how to perform First Aid.
Son ❸ ....?
Father To help anyone ill or injured.
Son ❹ ....?
Father You should join First Aid courses at school.

أزهر الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (5 Marks)

One day, I was waiting for a friend in town when I saw too many people. One was waiting on the pavement wearing old clothes and had a hat in front of him. As people passed he said "Can you give me money, please?" Some people threw coins into his hat but most walked past. The other man, who was wearing a suit stopped people and asked them politely to lend him money to buy petrol for his car, Most people happily gave him coins or notes. During the ten minutes I was watching <u>him</u>, he collected a lot of money, and he put it all in his pocket but didn't go to buy petrol, I soon realized that both men just wanted money. The one in the old clothes needed money than the one in the suit but the one in the suit got more money. Isn't that strange?

A Answer the following questions:

1. What was the writer doing in the town?
   ....
2. How did the two men look different?
   ....
3. What does the underlined word "<u>him</u>" refer to?
   ....

B Choose the correct answer:

4. Why was the man's hat in front of him?
   ⓐ It had fallen of his head.
   ⓑ It was there on the pavement before he sat.
   ⓒ He put it for people to throw money in it.
   ⓓ He had taken it off because it was a hot day.
5. Why didn't the man in the suit go to buy petrol?
   ⓐ There was already petrol in his Car.
   ⓑ He was going to buy petrol later.
   ⓒ He didn't have a car.
   ⓓ He had lied about why he needed money.

3. A- Translate into Arabic: (1 Mark)

أزهر دمياط ٢٠٢٢

Travelling abroad helps us to see many countries of the world and get in touch with the peoples of other nations and know about their customs and traditions.

B-Translate into English: (1 Mark)

تهدف السياحة البيئية إلى توفير رحلات لأماكن معزولة ومعرضة للخطر.

مراجعة شهر نوفمبر على الوحدة الثالثة والرابعة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Reading every day has a .... effect on people's moods and knowledge levels.
   ⓐ offensive ⓑ positive ⓒ negative ⓓ depressive
2. Floods often destroy a lot of buildings in this area. The adjective of the verb "destroy" is ....
   ⓐ destruction ⓑ destroys ⓒ destructively ⓓ destructive
3. Our company encourages the .... of young people and supports them.
   ⓐ invitations ⓑ decorations ⓒ acceptances ⓓ innovations
4. .... are always kept in farms to help famers in work.
   ⓐ Household ⓑ Population ⓒ Livestock ⓓ Poultry
5. Fortunately, the average annual .... of cotton has raisen this year.
   ⓐ invention ⓑ consumption ⓒ destruction ⓓ production
6. The government chose to construct the agricultural project near the river because the .... is fertile there.
   ⓐ earth ⓑ land ⓒ floor ⓓ soil
7. If you want to .... more money, you can work over time.
   ⓐ do ⓑ perform ⓒ make ⓓ assign
8. Look! The lorry .... the car, it is going very fast.
   ⓐ will hit ⓑ may hit ⓒ is hitting ⓓ is going to hit
9. When I was younger, I .... ride bike well.
   ⓐ could ⓑ should ⓒ can ⓓ shouldn't
10. You .... have heard him well, he said that he wouldn't be able to attend the meeting.
    ⓐ must ⓑ shouldn't ⓒ could ⓓ couldn't
11. You really .... have taken this difficult decision.
    ⓐ mustn't ⓑ could ⓒ should ⓓ can't
12. Mum asked us .... the door for anyone while she is out.
    ⓐ to open ⓑ not to open ⓒ opening ⓓ to not open
13. I will go to bed after I .... my study.
    ⓐ finished ⓑ finishing ⓒ finish ⓓ finishes
14. The coach didn't include the best player in the match list fearing that his injury might .... worse.
    ⓐ do ⓑ get ⓒ fall ⓓ detect
15. He doesn't like staying at home. He is an .... man.
    ⓐ outdoors ⓑ outdoor ⓒ indoors ⓓ Indoor
16. I .... to Alex tomorrow. I have got the tickets.
    ⓐ Will have travelled ⓑ have travelled ⓒ will be travelling ⓓ am travelling
17. Why didn't you ask for help , ... doing it on your own.
    ⓐ instead ⓑ rather than ⓒ more than ⓓ because
18. Little children usually do not like to .... their hair short.
    ⓐ destroy ⓑ cutting ⓒ invent ⓓ crop
19. "I shouldn't have eaten so much". This means........... .
    ⓐ I'm hungry ⓑ It's possible that I ate too much
    ⓒ I wish I had eaten more ⓓ I ate too much and I regret it now

20. The amount of rain .... from an area to another.
ⓐ varies ⓑ various ⓒ vary ⓓ variety

21. Come and sit next to me; there is............ .
ⓐ space ⓑ a space ⓒ spice ⓓ species

22. I never expected you to............ me . I am really shocked.
ⓐ research ⓑ frown ⓒ communicate ⓓ misunderstand

23. When someone doesn't find a friend in need, they feel a .... in the back.
ⓐ stab ⓑ strap ⓒ step ⓓ stub

24. Many researchers don't agree about the .... of his experiments.
ⓐ findings ⓑ selfie ⓒ messaging ⓓ emoji

25. My father always advises us .... avoid making friends with bad people.
ⓐ don't ⓑ not to ⓒ to ⓓ to not

26. I .... gone to bed earlier last night I'm really tired today.
ⓐ could have ⓑ must have ⓒ should have ⓓ shouldn't have

27. You .... the boat if you had been here at one o'clock but it's gone now and it's too late.
ⓐ should have caught ⓑ could have caught
ⓒ shouldn't have caught ⓓ couldn't have caught

28. The plane to Brazil .... off tomorrow at 6:00 am.
ⓐ is taking ⓑ takes ⓒ will take ⓓ is going to take

29. Students who .... in the exam will be excluded and face severe punishment.
ⓐ achieve ⓑ sheet ⓒ cheat ⓓ succeed

30. Maha usually gives money at any .... she sees on the street.
ⓐ bigger ⓑ asker ⓒ requester ⓓ beggar

31. When a friend breaks your trust, it is a .... in the back.
ⓐ stab ⓑ strap ⓒ step ⓓ stub

32. We need to find out more .... methods of growing crops.
ⓐ Fortune ⓑ dry ⓒ terrible ⓓ sustainable

33. I'm sure that these predictions .... true.
ⓐ will come ⓑ will be coming ⓒ may come ⓓ may be coming

34. I .... my neat summer holiday in Australia. I have arranged everything.
ⓐ will spend ⓑ am spending ⓒ spend ⓓ have spent

35. I .... people not to open any strange emails. They may be hackers.
ⓐ told ⓑ warned ⓒ encouraged ⓓ invited

36. Ahmed is a/an ....; he isn't afraid to try something new. He introduces changes and new ideas.
ⓐ survivor ⓑ explorer ⓒ discoverer ⓓ innovator

37. According to the airline schedule, the flight to Paris .... at 9 p.m tomorrow.
ⓐ will leave ⓑ leaves ⓒ is leaving ⓓ is going to leave

38. Samar has sold her old car. She .... a new car. It is her plan.
ⓐ will buy ⓑ is buying ⓒ is going to buy ⓓ buys

39. .... is the process of growing plants without using any soil.
ⓐ Algae ⓑ Hydroponics ⓒ Reefs ⓓ Pesticides

40. Tomorrow afternoon, we re going to play football from 5 o clock until 7 o'clock. So at 6 o'clock ,we ....
ⓐ are going to play ⓑ will play ⓒ will be playing ⓓ play

41. ASAP is a/an .... of "as soon as possible".
ⓐ collaboration ⓑ attention ⓒ contamination ⓓ abbreviation

42. She replied to my message with a blue heart ....
ⓐ selfie ⓑ emoji ⓒ message ⓓ blog

43. I travelled by train, but I .... by car.
ⓐ had to travel ⓑ could have travelled
ⓒ might have travelled ⓓ must have travelled

44. .... of the play, the audience clapped for the actor.
ⓐ In the end ⓑ By the end ⓒ At the end ⓓ At the final

45. Saleh was working with me all day, so you .... have seen him at the club.
ⓐ could ⓑ couldn't ⓒ should ⓓ shouldn't

46. Some scientists believe that more people .... seaweed in the future.
ⓐ eat ⓑ will eating ⓒ will be eating ⓓ are eating

47. Employees usually wear .... when they are invited to meetings.
ⓐ informally ⓑ formally ⓒ personal ⓓ personally

48. My mother warned me .... touch the hot pan.
ⓐ don't ⓑ not ⓒ not to ⓓ don't to

49. .... is the process of making or growing things in large quantities, especially in a factory or a farm, so that can be sold.
ⓐ Produce ⓑ Fabricate ⓒ Production ⓓ Innovation

50. In some areas, fishing is not .... because one day there will be no fish left.
ⓐ sustainable b delivered ⓒ destroyed ⓓ changing

51. If you get a benefit from something, you .... from it.
ⓐ sustainable ⓑ profit ⓒ beneficial ⓓ beneficiary

52. Smoking has a bad effect .... health.
ⓐ for ⓑ on ⓒ in ⓓ by

53. Many people .... social media. They waste their time.
ⓐ compare ⓑ cite ⓒ post ⓓ misuse

54. Rami .... Imad not to go out. It was good advice because it rained.
ⓐ asked ⓑ warned ⓒ ordered ⓓ begged

55. USA is a/an .... for "The United states of America".
ⓐ prefix ⓑ suffix ⓒ acronym ⓓ abbreviation

56. Cows, raised on a farm and sold for meat are an example of ....
ⓐ living ⓑ lively ⓒ livestock ⓓ liveliness

57. If .... was given priority, the country would be easily able to feed itself.
ⓐ tourism ⓑ agriculture ⓒ media ⓓ medicine

58. The sun is the main .... of solar energy.
ⓐ character ⓑ material ⓒ ingredient ⓓ source

59. I expect the weather .... cold tomorrow.
ⓐ will be ⓑ is being ⓒ has been ⓓ is going to be

60. Adham plans to live in Cairo. He .... a flat there.
ⓐ will buy ⓑ buys ⓒ is going to buy ⓓ is buying

61. My train........... at 10 o'clock.
ⓐ will leave ⓑ leaves ⓒ is leaving ⓓ is going to leave

62. The .... PC stands for "personal computer".
ⓐ summary ⓑ shortage ⓒ prevention ⓓ abbreviation

63. Mrs Hanan .... at the children, who were getting mud all over their clothes.
ⓐ frowned ⓑ supported ⓒ thanked ⓓ encouraged

64. He is good at learning foreign languages. He is a........... .
ⓐ dramatist ⓑ technician ⓒ linguist ⓓ physician

65. Heba asked mum .... her a cake.
ⓐ buys ⓑ to buy ⓒ buying ⓓ bought

66. My mother .... me not to leave the door open at night.
ⓐ asked ⓑ invited ⓒ encouraged ⓓ warned

67. Hesham .... this expensive phone. It is a waste of money.
ⓐ shouldn't have bought ⓑ should have bought
ⓒ couldn't have bought ⓓ could have bought

68. Drivers .... wear seatbelts or they will be fined.
ⓐ should ⓑ mustn't ⓒ have to ⓓ needn't

69. He was angry to wait .... an hour in the street.
ⓐ in ⓑ at ⓒ for ⓓ with

70. Ahmed is .... Ali. They got the same marks at their Arabic exam last week.
ⓐ cleverer than ⓑ as clever as ⓒ so clever as ⓓ clever

71. We .... to wear a uniform at school.
ⓐ should ⓑ must ⓒ have ⓓ can

72. We need to look for more .... solutions to the problem of food shortage.
ⓐ available ⓑ sustainable ⓒ removable ⓓ curable

73. .... forms the backbone of the rural economy.
ⓐ Industry ⓑ Trade ⓒ Agriculture ⓓ Tourism

74. More people .... electric cars in the future. Therefore we will cut down pollution.
ⓐ were using ⓑ have to use ⓒ going to use ⓓ will be using

75. I'm going out for a bit. I'll see you........... .
ⓐ lately ⓑ latest ⓒ later ⓓ latter

76. It's known that light travels faster than........... .
ⓐ pound ⓑ pond ⓒ sound ⓓ voice

77. I understand the text but the emojis seem........... .
ⓐ confusing ⓑ confused ⓒ confuse ⓓ confusion

78. In these dirty clothes, you look like a........... .
ⓐ king ⓑ prince ⓒ knight ⓓ beggar

79. "Don't forget to buy milk!" I said to her. - I .... her to buy milk.
ⓐ warned ⓑ agreed ⓒ derided ⓓ reminded

80. I'm really cold! I .... my coat.
ⓐ should bring ⓑ should have brought ⓒ must have brought ⓓ may have brought

81. Ali recommended that .... the ice cream.
ⓐ they try ⓑ trying ⓒ to try ⓓ tried

82. When I .... the experiments, I'll collect all the results.
ⓐ did ⓑ have done ⓒ will do ⓓ am going to do

83. Her second son had a .... place in her heart. she is mad about him.
ⓐ special ⓑ official ⓒ social ⓓ specially

84. There are a lot of people in the room. It .... difficult to find a chair.
ⓐ will be ⓑ will he being ⓒ is going to be ⓓ are

85. Look at that policeman! You'll be fined! You........... have parked here.
ⓐ didn't ⓑ shouldn't ⓒ oughtn't ⓓ couldn't

86. Mostafa .... Sami to close the door.
ⓐ asked ⓑ practised ⓒ suggested ⓓ recommend

87. Look out! The bus .... towards you.
ⓐ is going to come ⓑ is coming ⓒ will come ⓓ comes

88. The .... of the educational survey will be published online.
ⓐ reasons ⓑ failures ⓒ findings ⓓ results

89. The number of students at the college has........... from 2000 to 5000.
ⓐ growing ⓑ increased ⓒ reduced ⓓ decreased

90. A lot of good Egyptian .... are exported to several countries all over the world.
ⓐ produce ⓑ production ⓒ products ⓓ producer

91. Eating fast food will eventually have a bad .... on your health.
ⓐ affect ⓑ effect ⓒ effective ⓓ affection

92. For centuries, wood has been used to .... furniture.
ⓐ do ⓑ make ⓒ take ⓓ give

93. Having much money doesn't .... mean that you. are happy.
ⓐ necessary ⓑ necessarily ⓒ necessity ⓓ necessitate

94. There is a great .... whether we should use animals in scientific research or not.
ⓐ agreement ⓑ debate ⓒ search ⓓ meeting

95. I had no .... a place to stay in. In fact, it was surprisingly easy.
ⓐ trouble find ⓑ trouble to finding ⓒ difficulty finding ⓓ difficulty

96. The soil in this part of the world is not rich enough to .... a large population.
ⓐ innovate ⓑ sustain ⓒ decrease ⓓ sustainable

97. The drug is still being tested and will not go into commercial......... for at least two years.
ⓐ introduction ⓑ infection ⓒ deduction ⓓ production

98. Algae are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. Some kinds of algae are called........... .
ⓐ seabed ⓑ seaweed ⓒ sea life ⓓ seashell

99. She tends to adopt a falsely cheerful........... when she's upset about something.
ⓐ tune ⓑ tone ⓒ ton ⓓ sound

100. I told him I'd meet him here, but perhaps he........... and went straight to the pub.
ⓐ misapply ⓑ misbehave ⓒ misunderstood ⓓ misused

101. I predict that in the future, mobile phones .... smaller.
ⓐ will be making ⓑ will be made ⓒ will have been ⓓ will make

102. Messaging is different .... speaking face-to-face.
ⓐ to ⓑ from ⓒ both a and b ⓓ in

103. I wonder what we .... this time next year.
ⓐ will do ⓑ will be doing ⓒ do ⓓ shall do

104. My brother will go to the park when he .... his homework.
ⓐ finishes ⓑ had finished ⓒ finish ⓓ will finish

105. My parents always .... me to study hard by giving me presents.
ⓐ told ⓑ encouraged ⓒ asked ⓓ warned

106. You are wasteful; you .... spent so much money on clothes.
ⓐ should have ⓑ could have ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ might have

107. We don't usually use .... English when we send text messages.
ⓐ informal ⓑ formal ⓒ normal ⓓ usual

108. ASAP is an .... of "as soon as possible".
ⓐ acronym ⓑ antonym ⓒ initial letters ⓓ opposite

109. Amal .... finished the work, but she felt ill and had to go home.
ⓐ couldn't have ⓑ should have ⓒ can't have ⓓ must have

110. All the ships had to remain in their .... due to the bad weather.
ⓐ routes ⓑ roads ⓒ ports ⓓ parts

111. There was a .... at every door in the castle to help protect the king.
ⓐ guard ⓑ regard ⓒ grad ⓓ playgoer

112. Omar .... me to help him. It was a polite request, so I agreed.
ⓐ asked ⓑ told ⓒ begged ⓓ order

113. The doctors are worried because the man has a .... injury.
ⓐ infection ⓑ severe ⓒ injury ⓓ wounded

114. Her parents always .... Maya to sing.
ⓐ told ⓑ encouraged ⓒ asked ⓓ warned

115. My sister always has changed her .... about what to wear.

ⓐ brain ⓑ head ⓒ mind ⓓ forehead

116. The students were almost late for the exam but .... here just in time.

ⓐ got ⓑ arrived in ⓒ arrived at ⓓ reached to

117. The bill should have .... by now.

ⓐ arrive ⓑ arrived ⓒ to arrive ⓓ been arrived

Translate the following sentences.

118. We must put an end to the problem of air pollution which is considered one of the biggest threats to man on Earth.

(أ) يجب وضع حد لمشكلة تلوث الهواء التي تعتبر من أكبر التهديدات للإنسان على وجه التربة.
(ب) يجب وضع بداية لمشكلة تلوث الهواء التي تعتبر من أكبر التهديدات للإنسان على وجه الأرض.
(ج) يجب وضع حد لمشكلة تلوث الهواء التي تعتبر من أكبر التهديدات للإنسان على وجه الأرض.
(د) يجب وضع حد لمشكلة تلوث الهواء التي تعتبر من أقل التهديدات للإنسان على وجه الأرض.

119. No one can deny the great role played by teachers in society.

(أ) لا أحد ينكر المكانة التي يشغلها المعلمون في المجتمع.
(ب) لا أحد ينكر الدور العظيم التي يلعبه العلمون في المجتمع.
(ج) لا أحد ينكر المكانة التي يلعبه المعلمون في المجتمع.
(د) ينكر كل أحد العلم في المجتمع.

120. Egyptian schools should be provided with all modern appliances and facilities so that the new educational system succeeds and reaps its fruits.

(أ) يجب توفير كل الأجهزة الحديثة والإمكانيات للمدارس المصرية حتى ينجح النظام التعليمي ويجني ثماره.
(ب) يجب توفير كل الأجهزة والإمكانيات للمدارس المصرية حتى ينجح النظام التعليمي ويجني ثماره.
(ج) يجب عدم توفير كل الأجهزة الحديثة والإمكانيات للمدارس المصرية حتى ينجح النظام التعليمي ويجني ثماره.
(د) يجب توفير كل الأجهزة الحديثة والإمكانيات للمدارس المصرية حتى ينجح النظام التعليمي ويتجنب ثماره.

121. Honesty is one of the most important qualities of a trader. Those who sell expired food must be fined.

(أ) إن الأمانة واحدة من أهم صفات التاجر و هؤلاء الذين يصدرون الطعام يجب أن يغرموا.
(ب) إن الأمانة واحدة من أهم صفات التاجر و هؤلاء الذين يبيعون طعام منتهي الصلاحية يجب أن يغرموا.
(ج) إن الأمانة واحدة من أهم صفات التاجر والذين يحتكرون الطعام يجب أن يسجنوا.
(د) إن الصدق واحد من أهم صفات التاجر و هؤلاء الذين يبيعون طعام منتهي الصلاحية يجب أن يغرموا.

122. The government should create an atmosphere suitable for attracting more investments and tourists.

(أ) يجب على الحكومة خلق جو ملائم لجذب عدد قليل من الاستثمارات والسياح.
(ب) ينبغي على الحكومة خلق مناخ مناسب لجذب الكثير من الاستثمارات والسياح.
(ج) يجب على الحكومة خلق بيئة مناسبة لطرد الكثير من الاستثمارات والسياح.
(د) ليست الحكومة مسئولة عن خلق مناسب لجذب العديد من الاستثمارات والسياح.

123. Freshwater is the most precious substance in the world because only fresh water can be used to drink.

(أ) الماء العذب أغلى مادة في العالم لأن الماء العذب يستخدم للشرب فقط.
(ب) الماء العذب أغلى مادة في العالم لأن الماء العذب فقط يستخدم للشرب.
(ج) الماء العذب أغلى مادة في العالم لأن الماء العذب لا يستخدم فقط للشرب.
(د) الماء العذب أسمن مادة في العالم لأن الماء العذب فقط يستخدم للشرب.

124. Without co-operation and hard work, no progress can be achieved in our country.

(أ) بدون الإتحاد والعمل الجاد للاستقرار يمكن أن يحدث في وطننا.
(ب) بدون التعاون والعمل الجاد لا تقدم يمكن أن يحدث في بلدنا.
(ج) لا تقدم بدون بالتعاون ولا تقدم يمكن تحقيقه في بلدنا.
(د) التعاون والعمل الجاد يحققان السعادة لوطننا.

125. Language is a vital tool for communication. It shapes the way people understand the world in addition to building friendships and cultural ties.

(أ) اللغة أداة حيوية للتواصل. إنها تشكل الطريقة التي يفهم بها الناس العالم بالإضافة إلى بناء الصداقات والعلاقات الثقافية.

(ب) اللغة أداة حيوية للتواصل. إنها تشكل الطريقة التي يفهم بها الناس الكون بدون بناء الصداقات والعلاقات الثقافية.

(ج) اللغة أداة حيوية للتواصل. إنها تشكل الخطة التي يفهم بها الناس العالم بالإضافة إلى بناء الصداقات والعلاقات المعرفية.

(د) اللغة أداة للتواصل. إنها تشكل الطريقة التي يفهم بها الناس العالم بالإضافة إلى بناء الصداقات والعلاقات الثقافية.

١٢٦. يجب على الوالدين توجيه ورعاية أبنائهم ليواصلوا رحلة الحياة بأمان.

ⓐ Parents should care for his children and guide them to continue the journey of life safely.
ⓑ Parents should care for her children and guide them to continue the journey of life safely.
ⓒ Parents should care for its children and guide them to continue the journey of life safely.
ⓓ Parents should care for their children and guide them to continue the journey of life safely.

١٢٧. تتسبب مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي في نشر الشائعات في المجتمع.

ⓐ Social media never spread rumours in society.
ⓑ Social media causes the spread of rumours in society.
ⓒ Sociable media causes the spread of rumours in society.
ⓓ Social media avoids the spread of rumours in society.

١٢٨. سيظل الكتاب المصدر المفضل للمعرفة لدى معظم المثقفين في جميع أنحاء العالم.

ⓐ The book will be the preferring source of knowledge for most intellectuals around the world.
ⓑ The book will continue to be the preferring source of knowledge to most intellectuals around the world.
ⓒ The book will continue to be the preferred source of knowledge to many intellectuals around the world.
ⓓ The book will continue to be the preferred source of knowledge to most intellectuals around the world.

١٢٩. ينبغي أن تبقى هادئاً حتى في أصعب المواقف حتى يمكنك مواجهة كافة التحديات.

ⓐ You should remain quiet even in the most different situations to be able to face the whole challenges.
ⓑ You should keep quiet even in the most difficult situations to be able to face all challenges.
ⓒ You should stay cool even in the most critical situations to be able to defy all challenge
ⓓ You should stay violent even in the most embarrassing situations to be able to confront many challenges.

١٣٠. يتطلع الطلاب إلى دراسة مواد تساعدهم للحصول على وظيفة جيدة في المستقبل.

ⓐ Students looking forward to studying subjects help them to get a good job in the future.
ⓑ Students look forward to studying subjects help them to get a good job in the future.
ⓒ Students are look forward to studying subjects help them to get a good job in the future.
ⓓ Students look forward to studying subjects which help them to get a good job in the future.

١٣١. تهدف الشركات إلى زيادة مبيعاتها من خلال الإعلانات الموجهة في وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي وعن طريق اللوحات الإعلانية.

ⓐ Companies aim to increasing their sales through targeted adverts on social media and via posters.
ⓑ Companies aims to increase their sales through targeted adverts on social media and via posters.
ⓒ Companies aim to increase their sails through targeted adverts on social media and via posters.
ⓓ Companies aim to increase their sales through targeted adverts on social media and via posters.

١٣٢. تشجع الرياضة السلام والتفاهم بين شعوب العالم.

ⓐ Sports motivate peace and understanding among the people of the world.
ⓑ Peace and understanding is the goal of the people in the world.
ⓒ The people love peace and understanding in sports.
ⓓ Understanding each other is the aim of the world.



Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"A friend in need is a friend indeed." Has that wise saying been proved to you? Did any of your close friends ever stand beside you at the times of sorrow, distress or the times of joy? That has become a needle in a haystack at those times of struggling and climbing on the shoulders of others.

At the very beginning of one's life, a child makes friends with a lot of peers who are maybe a mixture of good or bad. He, due to his young age, can't perfectly judge or decide who to continue keeping or losing friendship with. By the time he becomes older, the number of friends decreases to a number that doesn't exceed the number of one hand fingers. It all depends on to what extent they are faithful, selfless and honest to each other.

Friendship that all mankind always search for, as it's mainly a human instinct and man is social by nature, has become a rare value. Friends can help you celebrate good times and provide support in bad ones . They prevent isolation and loneliness and increase your sense of belonging. The so called "friends" on social media, because you only contact with them and limit themselves in comments or emojis to congratulate and condole instead of hastening to stand right next to you unless they have tough conditions, are false friends. My advice is to carefully choose your friends.

133. "climbing on the shoulders of others" This expression describes ....
ⓐ true friends
ⓑ selfish friends
ⓒ friends on social media
ⓓ brave friends

134. The word "decrease " in the second paragraph is an antonym of ....
ⓐ expand
ⓑ decline
ⓒ contract
ⓓ shrink

135. Man always needs friends because ....
ⓐ he has much free time.
ⓑ he needs to laugh at others.
ⓒ he is greedy by nature.
ⓓ this is how he was created.

136. The writer thinks that true friendship has become ....
ⓐ common
ⓑ widely spread
ⓒ uncommon
ⓓ hateful

137. What do you think " emojis" are?
ⓐ games for entertainment.
ⓑ computer devices.
ⓒ figures and symbols.
ⓓ tools and equipment.

138. " close" in the first line has the same meaning as ....
ⓐ locked
ⓑ best
ⓒ hateful
ⓓ opponent

139. Friendship prevents us from feelings of ....
ⓐ loneliness and disconnect.
ⓑ relief and relaxing.
ⓒ fear and horror.
ⓓ calmness and excitement.

140. The writer advised us to ....
ⓐ text our friends at times of sorrow.
ⓑ decrease the number of our friends.
ⓒ correctly select our friends.
ⓓ correctly use social medic.

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED and FIFTY (150) words:

" Climate change and the future of our planet "

....

....

....

....





Being smart online



Key Vocabulary

advert (n)	إعلان	download (from) (v)	ينزل / يحمل	reliable (adj)	موثوق فيه
advertise (v)	يعلن	upload (to) (v)	يرفع	unreliable (adj)	غير موثوق به
advertisement (n)	إعلان	upgrade (v)	يحسن	consult (v)	يستشير
banner advert	لافتة إعلانية	follow (v)	يتابع / يتعقب	consultant (n)	استشارى
sponsor (n)	راعى / ممول	follower (n)	متابع	take down (v)	يزيل (منشور / ملفات)
sponsored adverts (n)	إعلانات ممولة	post (n/v)	منشور / يريد / ينشر ع الانترنت	search results (n)	نتائج البحث
targeted advertising	إعلانات موجهة	update (v)	يحدث	subscribe (v)	يسجل / يشترك
view (n)	منظر / رؤية / مشاهدة	up-to-date (adj)	محدث	subscriber (n)	مشترك
cookies	ملفات تعريف الارتباط بالانترنت	advertiser (n)	معلن	subscription (n)	اشتراك

Main Vocabulary

adapt (v)	يتكيف / يتأقلم	button (n)	زر	extra (adj)	إضافى / زائد
avoid (v)	يتجنب	effectively (adv)	بشكل فعال	honest (adj)	مخلص / أمين
seem (v)	يبدو	experience (n)	تجربة / يمر بتجربة	fake (adj)	مزيف
browser (n)	متصفح	mega meal (n)	وجبة ضخمة	fake phrase (n)	عبارة مزيفة
confused (adj)	متحير / مرتبك	junk foods (n)	طعام سريع	influence (n)	تأثير
app (application) (n)	تطبيق	character	حرف / علامة كتابية / شخصية	install (v)	يثبت / يركب
source (n)	مصدر	common (adj)	شائع	instant (adj)	فورى / عاجل
resources (n)	موارد	access (n)	مدخل / إمكانية الوصول	Irish (adj)	أيرلندى
journalist (n)	صحفى	knowledge (n)	معرفة	keywords (n)	كلمات رئيسية
tone (n)	الشعور العام / نبرة الصوت	moral (adj)	مغزى أخلاقى / درس مستفاد	obvious (adj)	واضح
provide (v)	يوفر / يمد / يزود	professional (adj)	محترف / احترافى	speed (n)	سرعة
perfect (adj)	تام / كامل / مثالى	print (v)	يطبع	relevant (adj)	مناسب
software (n)	برامج الكمبيوتر	stamp (v/n)	يدمغ / يختم / ختم	research (v/n)	يبحث / بحث
publish (v)	ينشر (كتبا / مجلات)	steal (v)	يسرق / يختلس	excuse (v/n)	يعذر / عذر
spread (v)	ينشر / ينتشر	smart (adj)	ذكى / أنيق	scan (v)	يتصفح (يقرأ للبحث)
trust (v/n)	يثق بـ / ثقة	smart phone (n)	هاتف ذكى	skim (v)	يتصفح (يقرأ بسرعة)
version (n)	نسخة	discussion (n)	مناقشة	series (n)	سلسلة
warning (n)	تحذير	sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع	serious (adj)	جاد / خطير
suppose (v)	يفترض	task (n)	مهمة	URL (uniform resource locator)	عنوان على الانترنت
save (v)	يحفظ / يحتفظ بـ / يحافظ	identity (n)	هوية		
topic (n)	موضوع	type (v)	يكتب على الكمبيوتر	unhelpful	غير مفيد / غير نافع
mean (v) (adj)	يعنى/يقصد/بخيل / خسيس	limit (v/n)	يحد من / حد	careless (adj)	مهمل

Synonym & Antonym

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym العكس
reliable	موثوق فيه	trustworthy - dependable	unknown - unreliable
upgrade	يرقي	promote - improve	reduce - hinder
adapt	يتأقلم	adjust - edit	misadjust - reject
obvious	واضح	clear - apparent	unclear - mysterious
fake	مزيف	false - artificial	true - authentic
honest	أمين / مخلص	truthful - sincere	deceitful - dishonest
instant	فوري / عاجل	immediate - urgent	gradual - slow
similar	مشابه	alike - resembling	unalike - different

Prepositions

take down	يزيل / يدون
take off	تقلع / يخلع
adapt to	يتكيف ... مع
find out	يكتشف
worry about	يقلق بشأن
upgrade with	يحدث / يرقي
share with	يشارك مع
full of	ممتلئ بـ
read on	يستمر في القراءة
sell ... to	يبيع لـ

Expressions & Idioms

at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر
do research	يقوم ببحث علمي
do things	يقوم بأشياء
do work	يقوم بأداء عمل
gain / have access to	لديه القدرة للوصول إلى
on social media	على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي
go online	يدخل على الإنترنت
have experience in	لديه خبرة في
give information about	يعطي معلومات عن
at the same time	في نفس الوقت



Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
suit	يلائم / يناسب	suitability	ملائمة / مناسبة / صلاحية	suitable	مناسب / ملائم
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر / فعال
develop	يطور	development	تطوير	developed	متطور
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسين	improved	مطور / محسن
inform	يعلم / يخبر	information	معلومات	informative	إخباري
adapt	يتكيف / يتأقلم	adaptation	تأقلم	adaptable	متأقلم
influence	يؤثر على	influence	تأثير	influential	مؤثر
apply	يطبق / يتقدم لوظيفة	application	طلب التحاق	applicable	ملائم / قابل للتطبيق
		applicant	متقدم لوظيفة		
rely	يعتمد	reliance	اعتماد	reliable	موثوق فيه



Definitions

download	ينزل	to move files from the internet to a phone, tablet or computer
upload	يرفع	to move files from a computer, phone or camera to the internet
update	يحسن	to added to with the latest information
upgrade	يحدث	to improve or make more efficient
take down	يزيل	to take something that you have posted online off the internet
consult	يستشير	to look for information
reliable	موثوق فيه	likely to be correct
cookies	ملفات تعريف الارتباط بالانترنت	small pieces of information
banner advert	لافتة إعلانية	an advertisement across the top or bottom or down the side of a page
search result	نتائج البحث	the result you get after searching for it on the internet
sponsored advert	إعلان ممول	to support an advertisement by paying for its cost
up-to-date	حديث	has the latest information



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

efficient	فعال / كفء	⇨	effective	مؤثر / فعال
uniform	زي رسمي	⇨	reform	إصلاح / تحسين
online	متصل بالانترنت	⇨	offline	غير موصل بالانترنت
consult	يستشير	⇨	insult	يسب / يهين
fellow	رجل / ولد / رفيق	⇨	follow	يتبع
download	يحمل	⇨	upload	يرفع على النت
access	مدخل / إمكانية الوصول	⇨	accent	لهجة / لكنة

social, sociable & unsociable

social	اجتماعي	We should share in solving our social problems.
sociable	شخص اجتماعي	He is admired by all people because he is sociable.
unsociable	غير اجتماعي	She likes living alone. She is unsociable.



the same & similar to

similar to مشابه (جزئي)	▶ This dog is **similar to** mine.
the same.....as متطابق (كلي)	▶ We have **the same** ideas as our fathers.

experience, experiences & experiment

experience الخبرة (ما يكتسبه الشخص من معرفة ومهارات من خلال عمل معين) (لا تجمع)	▶ They offered me the job because I had a lot of **experience**.
experiences مواقف / تجارب / خبرات فى الحياة (تجمع)	▶ She had some interesting **experiences** while she was travelling.
experiment تجربة علمية لإثبات صحة شيء ما أو التوصل لنتائج (فى المعمل).	▶ Teachers usually carry out / do / conduct **experiments** in the laboratory.

include, including, consist of, enclose & contain

include يشمل / يتضمن	▶ The list **includes** fruits and vegetables.
including مشتملة على	▶ There were ten injured people **including** three children and two women.
consist of يتكون من	▶ The cake **consists of** flour, sugar and eggs.
contain يحتوى على	▶ The CD **contains** music and pictures.
enclose يرفق شيء مع شيء / يحيط	▶ I sent him a letter and **enclosed** my photo in it.

advertise & announce

advertise يعلن عن (سلعة)	▶ The concert was well enough **advertised** but ticket sales were poor.
announce يعلن (يصرح)	▶ The company **announced** a pre-tax loss of three million pounds.

provide.. with & provide... for

provide (شخص) with شئ يمد بـ / يزود بـ	▶ His uncle **provides** him with money.
provide (شيء) for (شخص) يوفر	▶ His uncle **provides** money for him.





Reading

Doing research online

Your teacher has given you a homework task. Where do you start your research? The internet is very useful with lots of information, but how do you avoid spending hours reading unhelpful websites? Read on to find out how to use the internet effectively.

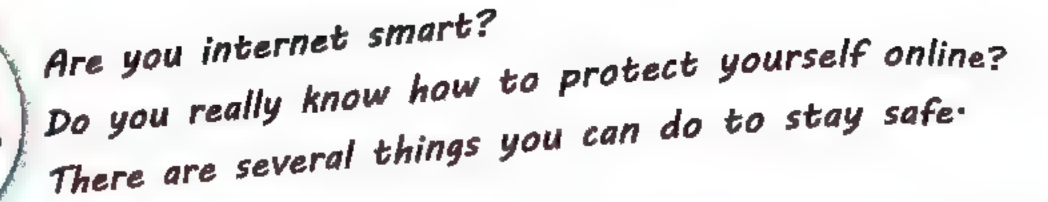
1) Look for websites by people, companies or universities, who have experience in or knowledge of the topic you are researching. If you know who wrote the website, try to find out more about their experience.
2) Think about who has written the website. Is it a company who may be trying to sell you something?
3) Check if the website is up-to-date. Is the information still reliable and useful? When was it updated?
4) Always consult more than one website. The advantage of looking at few different sites is that you can check the information and you may find extra facts.
5) What does the website look like? If it is badly designed and is full of grammar and spelling mistakes, then it is probably not very reliable.
6) Websites that have named their sources are usually more reliable and useful than sites that do not name their sources.
7) Save the URL (uniform resource locator) of any useful pages or images so you can find them easily.

Targeted advertising

Our computers and smartphones keep small pieces of information called cookies, which tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at: Cookies are meant to make it easier for us to find things that interest us, but they also help advertisers to sell things to us. So, when we see an advert for something that seems to be exactly what we want, it is because advertisers know what we like. This kind of advertising is called targeted advertising. Sometimes advertisers know where you like to go and when you like to do things, so they can advertise to you when you are most interested. For example, they advertise places to eat when you're hungry.

They can also send adverts to your friends at the same time if they think you'll go together. Sometimes it's easy to see that something is an advert, like those large banner adverts that always seem to appear on websites when you're trying to read. And there are adverts that seem to appear in the strangest places, like the small sponsored adverts that you find in search results. Adverts are supposed to be honest, but we must be careful. When you see an advert online, think about why you might be seeing it and whether you can believe what it says.

Reading



1) Choose a strong **password**. Did you know the most **common** password in the world is '123456? The best passwords should have numbers, **letters** and even a **special character** eg. T1342mS! It will be easier to remember if you make it **personal** in some way.
2) When you go online, **make sure** you have **upgraded** your **browser** with the **latest software update** before you open a **webpage**.
3) Be **careful** what you **upload**. Check what others can learn about you from what they can see behind you, and **take down** any photos you do not want others to **download**.
4) All of these **tips** seem obvious, but you'll be **surprised** how many people are **careless online**. **Stealing** someone's **identity** is more **common** than you think. Do not **make** the **mistake** of thinking that it can't happen to you.

Don't believe everything you read

The **title** of this article is advice which we may have heard from our parents or **grandparents**. Although it was **true**, in the past the **speed** at which we have **access to** new information means that this **warning** is even more important now. In the past, **professional journalists** always **checked** the **facts** that they wanted to **publish against at least** two **reliable sources** to **make sure** the story was correct. Checking sources, and the time needed to **print** something in a newspaper, meant that the news, which was meant to be new, was **actually** a day or two old.

Today the internet provides instant news and is a place where anyone can share information with the **rest** of the world at the **touch** of a button. This means that **journalists** often need to **publish** their stories quickly, so fact-checking isn't as good as it is meant to be. This is why not everything you read is what it seems to be even serious newspapers, which are **supposed to** be **reliable**, can **make mistakes**. Shane Fitzgerald, an Irish **sociology** student, wanted to test the **influence** of the internet. He **posted** a **fake phrase** online. It was **supposed to** be something that a French **musician** who had recently **died** had said. Almost **immediately** several newspapers published the phrase and it was read all over the world. The **moral** of the story is to listen to those with more life **experience** than you and remember not to **trust** everything you read online **without** checking it first.



1. Once you feel the same pain again it is a must to .... your doctor. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ consult ⓑ construct ⓒ constant ⓓ constrict
2. Social media have attracted .... because of their increasing popularity. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ clerks ⓑ consumers ⓒ advertisers ⓓ rivals
3. The more exciting videos on social media are, the more........... they receive. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ reviews ⓑ views ⓒ sights ⓓ scenes
4. Why don't you .... this video to YouTube so that many people can see it? المنيا ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ download ⓑ downloading ⓒ upgrade ⓓ upload
5. I .... the post as soon as I had seen the negative comments on it. إدارة أبو تيج التعليمية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ consulted ⓑ took down ⓒ turned on ⓓ advertised
6. My grandfather was a very .... and honest man who never betrayed anyone. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ disorganised ⓑ doubtful ⓒ distant ⓓ reliable
7. To get reliable information online, it is recommended to .... more than one website.
   ⓐ avoid ⓑ consult ⓒ update ⓓ start
8. When we face a difficult problem, we usually .... our grandfather due to his great wisdom. LM
   ⓐ import ⓑ insult ⓒ result ⓓ consult
9. .... information to the internet needs a skill I have never had. إدارة بيا ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ Upgrading ⓑ Unlocking ⓒ Uploading ⓓ Downloading
10. Computers and smart phones keep small pieces of information called .... إدارة القوصية ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ tips ⓑ cookies ⓒ banners ⓓ sponsors
11. My mobile software is out of date so I must .... it at once. إدارة القوصية ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ date ⓑ update ⓒ upload ⓓ download
12. Is it easy to .... videos to YouTube? LM
    ⓐ upload ⓑ download ⓒ load ⓓ overload
13. .... are small pieces of information which tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at. LM
    ⓐ Cookies ⓑ Antiviruses ⓒ Downloads ⓓ Hackers
14. When you go online, make sure you have .... your browser with the latest software update before you open a webpage. LM
    ⓐ devalued ⓑ degraded ⓒ upgraded ⓓ downgraded
15. Don't worry, you can deal with Amin; he is .... enough to trade with. LM
    ⓐ reliable ⓑ regrettable ⓒ deniable ⓓ recyclable
16. I must .... my doctor; I have a chest pain. LM
    ⓐ result ⓑ insist ⓒ consult ⓓ insult
17. It's expected that our school will .... our exam results to the internet next month. أسنا ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ update ⓑ upload ⓒ upgrade ⓓ download
18. I need to .... my anti-virus software to make my personal computer fully protected. LM
    ⓐ date ⓑ update ⓒ deactivate ⓓ vibrate
19. Listen to your teacher carefully and take .... all the points he explains. LM
    ⓐ care ⓑ off ⓒ over ⓓ down
20. Companies........... things you are interested in so that they can increase sales online. LM
    ⓐ think ⓑ advertise ⓒ hide ⓓ appear

21. I must .... my doctor; I feel chest pain.
ⓐ result ⓑ insist ⓒ consult ⓓ insult

22. I need to .... my antivirus to be fully protected.
ⓐ date ⓑ update ⓒ deactivate ⓓ vibrate

23. You should be careful enough to use .... websites.
ⓐ untruthful ⓑ unknown ⓒ tricky ⓓ reliable

24. It might take a while for this to .... .Your friends in America will enjoy it much.
ⓐ upload ⓑ load ⓒ overload ⓓ download

25. Have you seen that there are 6,000 .... of my brother's blog?
ⓐ posters ⓑ subscribe ⓒ like ⓓ followers

26. They have just .... the timetable, so we know these train times are correct.
ⓐ upgrade ⓑ got into ⓒ updated ⓓ solved

27. This software is for free so you can .... it from the internet.
ⓐ upload ⓑ load ⓒ overload ⓓ download

28. We always keep our records ....
ⓐ up-to-date ⓑ to date ⓒ update ⓓ out-of-date

29. I want to .... data to the computer network storage from my office computer.
ⓐ load ⓑ upload ⓒ overload ⓓ download

30. A great deal of effort has gone into making the software .. ..
ⓐ rely ⓑ unreliable ⓒ reliable ⓓ liable

31. I put an .... in the paper to sell my bike but I haven't had any takers.
ⓐ announce ⓑ advert ⓒ announcement ⓓ advise

32. Do you have a/an .... version of the system?
ⓐ out dated ⓑ dated ⓒ updated ⓓ aged

33. They are keen .... of their local football team.
ⓐ companions ⓑ followers ⓒ travellers ⓓ flows

34. Listen to your teacher carefully and take .... all the points he explains.
ⓐ care ⓑ off ⓒ over ⓓ down

35. The event was .... by several local businesses.
ⓐ sponsored ⓑ exerted ⓒ spared ⓓ spent

36. Don't .... your personal photos online.
ⓐ download ⓑ upgrade ⓒ consult ⓓ upload

Exercise 2 Main vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الاساسية

37. Young authors find it difficult to .... their works.
ⓐ prevail ⓑ spread ⓒ publish ⓓ appear

38. The bad boy .... the old man's wallet.
ⓐ rubbed ⓑ robbed ⓒ disappeared ⓓ stole

39. You should ....the text for specific information to be able to answer the questions well.
ⓐ skate ⓑ skip ⓒ scan ⓓ skim

40. You should .... the text first to get the main idea of the passage.
ⓐ skim ⓑ scan ⓒ stick ⓓ skip

41. You should .... spending money on unimportant things.
ⓐ avoid ⓑ acquire ⓒ decide ⓓ enjoy

42. Nowadays, we have good .... to most websites.
ⓐ stress ⓑ accent ⓒ across ⓓ access

43. You should have a strong password with at least 8 ....
ⓐ characters ⓑ photos ⓒ sums ⓓ accounts

44. The criminal wore a .... beard and moustache to be fully disguised.
ⓐ free ⓑ fake ⓒ fair ⓓ fire

45. The Egyptian Knowledge Bank is a reliable .... of learning. إدارة نقادة ٢٠٢٣
ⓐ source ⓑ resource ⓒ discourse ⓓ base

46. You can run this .... on a computer and a mobile if you like. بني سويف / الواسطى ٢٠٢٣
ⓐ wore ⓑ application ⓒ applied ⓓ applicable

47. A lot of remote villages have no .... to internet connection. LN
ⓐ purpose ⓑ process ⓒ stress ⓓ access

48. Finally, my brother's new collection of short stories was .... LN
ⓐ come out ⓑ published ⓒ spread ⓓ prevailed

49. Mr Hafez is so.........that he doesn't give any money to charity although he earns a lot. LN
ⓐ mean ⓑ rich ⓒ poor ⓓ generous

50. I am sorry, I did not .... to disturb you; I just called to make sure you are well. LN
ⓐ tell ⓑ mean ⓒ mention ⓓ whisper

51. The adjective "unclear" can be the opposite to the adjective ....
ⓐ smart ⓑ updated ⓒ vague ⓓ obvious

52. The verb "reject" can be the opposite to the verb ....
ⓐ criticise ⓑ highlight ⓒ adapt ⓓ upgrade

53. You should...... the text for specific information to be able to answer the questions well.
ⓐ skim ⓑ scan ⓒ skip ⓓ skate

54. You should .... spending hours reading unhelpful websites.
ⓐ inquire ⓑ acquire ⓒ avoid ⓓ enjoy

55. Bullying a classmate is really .... behaviour and should be punished.
ⓐ mean ⓑ generous ⓒ rich ⓓ poor

56. I wanted a more casual jacket - that one's a bit ....
ⓐ sort ⓑ start ⓒ smart ⓓ mart

57. We usually ask interviewees to perform a few simple .... on the computer.
ⓐ tickets ⓑ attacks ⓒ tosses ⓓ tasks

58. People's voting habits are .... by political, social and economic factors.
ⓐ effect ⓑ influenced ⓒ affect ⓓ impact

59. Experts revealed that the painting was a ....
ⓐ flock ⓑ file ⓒ fake ⓓ flame

60. If disease is allowed to .... , it will cause widespread devastation.
ⓐ publish ⓑ spread ⓒ promote ⓓ spared

61. If you want to type faster on the mobile, you can install this ....
ⓐ app ⓑ pie ⓒ oppo ⓓ sub

62. The film .... of the novel received a lot of criticism.
ⓐ forge ⓑ version ⓒ vision ⓓ view

63. The instructions were badly written and ....
ⓐ helpful ⓑ hopeful ⓒ unhelpful ⓓ tasteful

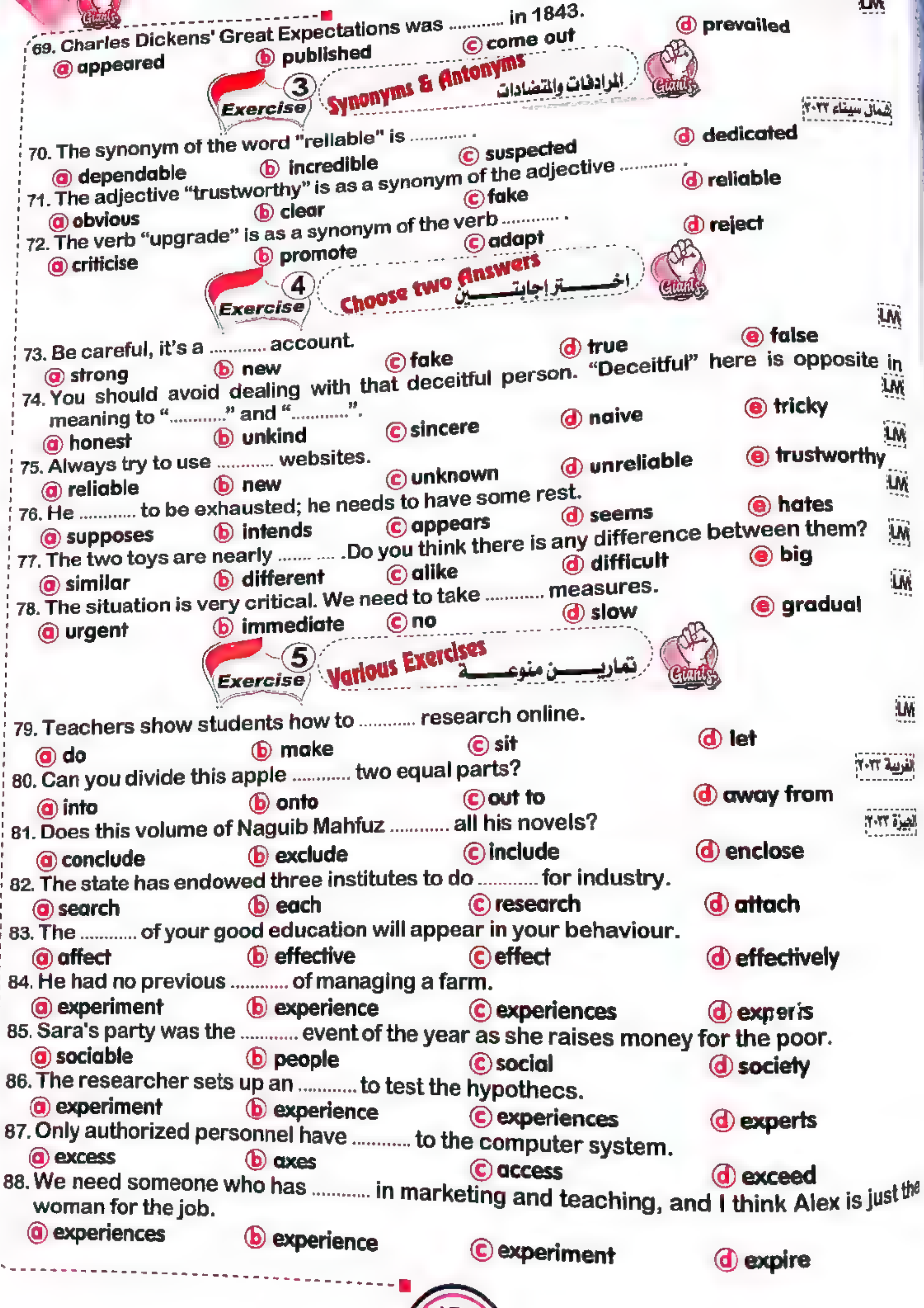
64. Ali had booked us into a very .... little hotel off the main square.
ⓐ smart ⓑ stupid ⓒ intelligent ⓓ genius

65. The amount of time and money being spent on .... this disease is COVID 19.
ⓐ searching ⓑ keeping ⓒ researching ⓓ spreading

66. The long war had drained the .... of both countries.
ⓐ restarts ⓑ sounds ⓒ resources ⓓ sorts

67. This .... has raised many important issues.
ⓐ discussion ⓑ argue ⓒ persuasion ⓓ inclusion

68. She agreed not to .... the names of the people involved.
ⓐ spread ⓑ publish ⓒ prevail ⓓ punish



69. Charles Dickens' Great Expectations was .... in 1843.
ⓐ appeared ⓑ published ⓒ come out ⓓ prevailed

Exercise 3 Synonyms & Antonyms المرادفات والمتضادات

70. The synonym of the word "reliable" is .... (شمال سيناء ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ dependable ⓑ incredible ⓒ suspected ⓓ dedicated
71. The adjective "trustworthy" is as a synonym of the adjective ....
ⓐ obvious ⓑ clear ⓒ fake ⓓ reliable
72. The verb "upgrade" is as a synonym of the verb ....
ⓐ criticise ⓑ promote ⓒ adapt ⓓ reject

Exercise 4 Choose two Answers اختر إجابتين

73. Be careful, it's a .... account.
ⓐ strong ⓑ new ⓒ fake ⓓ true ⓔ false
74. You should avoid dealing with that deceitful person. "Deceitful" here is opposite in meaning to "..........." and "...........".
ⓐ honest ⓑ unkind ⓒ sincere ⓓ naive ⓔ tricky
75. Always try to use .... websites.
ⓐ reliable ⓑ new ⓒ unknown ⓓ unreliable ⓔ trustworthy
76. He .... to be exhausted; he needs to have some rest.
ⓐ supposes ⓑ intends ⓒ appears ⓓ seems ⓔ hates
77. The two toys are nearly .... .Do you think there is any difference between them?
ⓐ similar ⓑ different ⓒ alike ⓓ difficult ⓔ big
78. The situation is very critical. We need to take .... measures.
ⓐ urgent ⓑ immediate ⓒ no ⓓ slow ⓔ gradual

Exercise 5 Various Exercises تمارين متنوعة

79. Teachers show students how to .... research online.
ⓐ do ⓑ make ⓒ sit ⓓ let
80. Can you divide this apple .... two equal parts? (الغربية ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ into ⓑ onto ⓒ out to ⓓ away from
81. Does this volume of Naguib Mahfuz .... all his novels? (الجيزة ٢٠٢٢)
ⓐ conclude ⓑ exclude ⓒ include ⓓ enclose
82. The state has endowed three institutes to do .... for industry.
ⓐ search ⓑ each ⓒ research ⓓ attach
83. The .... of your good education will appear in your behaviour.
ⓐ affect ⓑ effective ⓒ effect ⓓ effectively
84. He had no previous .... of managing a farm.
ⓐ experiment ⓑ experience ⓒ experiences ⓓ experts
85. Sara's party was the .... event of the year as she raises money for the poor.
ⓐ sociable ⓑ people ⓒ social ⓓ society
86. The researcher sets up an .... to test the hypothecs.
ⓐ experiment ⓑ experience ⓒ experiences ⓓ experts
87. Only authorized personnel have .... to the computer system.
ⓐ excess ⓑ axes ⓒ access ⓓ exceed
88. We need someone who has .... in marketing and teaching, and I think Alex is just the woman for the job.
ⓐ experiences ⓑ experience ⓒ experiment ⓓ expire

1 seem to + inf.

* بمعنى يبدو أن ويأتى بعدها المصدر:

- She seems to be lazy.
- I seem to be the only person who hasn't heard the news.
- Everybody seemed to be ready, so we set off.

Uses الاستخدامات

١ للتحدث عن كيفية ظهور شيء ما أو شخص ما

- Taha seems to like his new laptop.
- She doesn't seem to study well.

٢ لوصف الحالة التى يبدو عليها الأشخاص أو الأشياء

- The old man seems to have mistaken us for some people he knew years ago.

٣ تستخدم عند محاولة فعل شيئًا لكنك لا تستطيع فعله

- I just can't seem to relax.

Important Forms

صيغ هامة

seem + صفة

- Katie seems happy at her new school.
- The whole situation seems very strange to me.
- They kept ordering more brandy and all seemed genuinely upset.
- Doesn't that seem weird to you?

seem like + صفة + اسم

- Teri seemed like a nice girl.
- Ali seems like a clever student.
- Well, it seemed like a good idea at the time

It seems + that + جملة → يبدو أن

- It seemed that Freeman had killed the man, and dumped the body in the lake.
- It seems that someone forgot to lock the door.

It seems + likely + جملة → يبدو أن

- It seems likely / reasonable / clear that he will miss Ireland's next match.
- It seems likely that they will release the hostages soon.

It seems + as if / as though / like + جملة → يبدو أن

- It seemed as if the end of the world had come.
- It seems like you're catching a cold, Aya.





2 be meant to + inf.

* بمعنى "من المفترض أن" أو "مناسب لـ" ويأتي بعدها المصدر:

◈ If you are meant to do something, you should do it.
◈ Come on, Aya, you're meant to be helping me.
◈ The diagram is meant to show the different stages of the process.
◈ I've meant to ask you if you want to come for a meal next week.

Uses الاستخدامات

❶ التحدث عن الغرض أو الحقيقة من شيء ما
❷ تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام
❸ تستخدم للتعبير عن المسئولية

◈ School is meant to be educational.
◈ You are meant to study hard for your exams.
◈ I thought the police were meant to protect people.

Important Forms

صيغ هامة

mean to ⊕ مصدر

* بمعنى "ينوي" للتعبير عن النوايا أو الخطط ويأتي بعدها المصدر:

◈ I didn't mean to upset you.

mean ⊕ somebody / something ⊕ to ⊕ المصدر

◈ I never meant you to find out.
◈ I didn't mean this to happen at all.

mean ⊕ for somebody ⊕ to ⊕ المصدر

◈ I didn't mean for her to get hurt.



3 (be) supposed to + inf.

* بمعنى "من المفترض أن" ويأتي بعدها المصدر:

◈ We're supposed to check out of the hotel by 11 o'clock.
◈ I'm not supposed to tell anyone.
◈ What time are you supposed to be there?

Uses الاستخدامات

❶ تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة أو الإلزام
◈ I'm supposed to cook dinner tonight.

❷ التحدث عما يحتمل أو يتوقع أن يفعله شخص ما
◈ It is supposed to rain this afternoon.

❸ تستخدم للتعبير عن الترتيبات
◈ Jana was supposed to attend the party. What has happened?

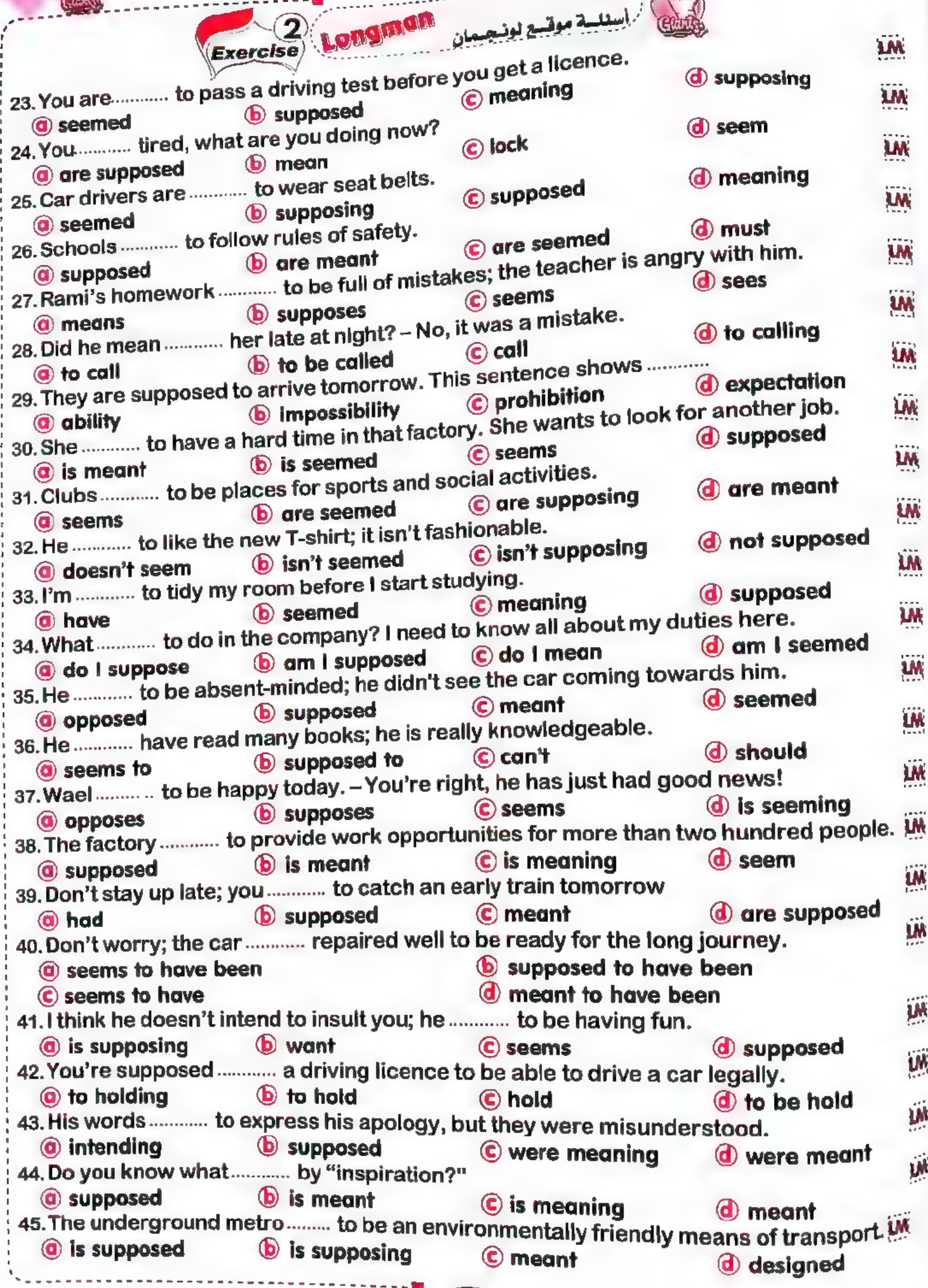
❹ تستخدم للتعبير عن التوقعات
◈ It was supposed to be hot yesterday.

❺ تستخدم للتعبير عن المعتقدات
◈ It was supposed to be the newest car you can buy.



Exercise 1 from Tests أسئلة امتحانات الإدارات

1. My mobile .... be perfect but it broke down few days after I had bought it. شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ supposed ⓑ suppose to ⓒ is supposed to ⓓ was supposed to
2. Schools .... to provide an excellent education for all students. إدارة اسنا ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ meant ⓑ are meant ⓒ supposed ⓓ are seemed
3. It .... to rain last week. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ supposed ⓑ meant ⓒ didn't supposed ⓓ wasn't supposed
4. Sport .... to be a means for spreading peace not conflict. إدارة نقادة ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ is seemed ⓑ is meaning ⓒ supposed ⓓ is meant
5. There .... to be no reason for the alarm. إدارة نقادة ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ seems ⓑ supposes ⓒ means ⓓ is supposing
6. Why are you outside the factory? You .... to be working. إدارة زفتى ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ seem ⓑ mean ⓒ are supposed ⓓ are seemed
7. A lot of students can't answer the maths problem. It .... difficult. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ is meant ⓑ seems ⓒ is supposed ⓓ is seemed
8. He doesn't .... value his position anymore and often takes terrible risks. المنيا ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ seemed ⓑ supposed to ⓒ seem to ⓓ meant to
9. Don't speak to the boss now. He .... to be angry about something. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ seems ⓑ means ⓒ is meant ⓓ supposed
10. We are .... to finish work by 8 o'clock. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ suppose ⓑ supposed ⓒ seem ⓓ look
11. Our new teacher .... to be kind. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ supposed ⓑ suppose ⓒ seems ⓓ means
12. What do the characters in this book .... to be like? الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ seem ⓑ mean ⓒ supposed ⓓ appeared
13. The bus driver needs to concentrate. You............ to talk to him. إدارة عزبة البرج ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ are supposed ⓑ are meant ⓒ seemed ⓓ aren't supposed
14. The girl went home because she .... to cook dinner tonight. إدارة أبو حماد ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ supposed ⓑ was supposed ⓒ meant ⓓ seemed
15. The Eiffel Tower .... to attract people to one of the exhibitions. إدارة غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ was meaning ⓑ seems ⓒ was meant ⓓ is meaning
16. Although the exam .... easy, some students see it very difficult. إدارة أبو تيج التعليمية ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ is seemed ⓑ seems ⓒ is meant ⓓ means
17. Our neighborhood restaurant .... to serve delicious dishes. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ is seemed ⓑ supposed ⓒ is meant ⓓ is supposing
18. The injury of the team striker could .... him missing next match. دمياط ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ sound ⓑ suppose ⓒ seem ⓓ mean
19. We're .... to check out the hotel by 11 o'clock. سمالوط ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ supposed ⓑ meant ⓒ intended ⓓ seemed like
20. The fox walked to what .... to be a cave. سمالوط ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ supposed ⓑ meant ⓒ looked ⓓ seemed
21. The film .... to start at 8.30, but it didn't begin on time. بني سويف / الواسطى ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ seemed ⓑ meant ⓒ was supposed ⓓ wanted
22. Joining the faculty of medicine .... working hard. شمال سيناء ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ mean ⓑ means ⓒ means to ⓓ meant to



Exercise 2 **Longman** أسئلة موقع لونجمان

23. You are .... to pass a driving test before you get a licence.
   ⓐ seemed ⓑ supposed ⓒ meaning ⓓ supposing
24. You .... tired, what are you doing now?
   ⓐ are supposed ⓑ mean ⓒ lock ⓓ seem
25. Car drivers are .... to wear seat belts.
   ⓐ seemed ⓑ supposing ⓒ supposed ⓓ meaning
26. Schools .... to follow rules of safety.
   ⓐ supposed ⓑ are meant ⓒ are seemed ⓓ must
27. Rami's homework .... to be full of mistakes; the teacher is angry with him.
   ⓐ means ⓑ supposes ⓒ seems ⓓ sees
28. Did he mean .... her late at night? – No, it was a mistake.
   ⓐ to call ⓑ to be called ⓒ call ⓓ to calling
29. They are supposed to arrive tomorrow. This sentence shows ....
   ⓐ ability ⓑ impossibility ⓒ prohibition ⓓ expectation
30. She .... to have a hard time in that factory. She wants to look for another job.
   ⓐ is meant ⓑ is seemed ⓒ seems ⓓ supposed
31. Clubs .... to be places for sports and social activities.
   ⓐ seems ⓑ are seemed ⓒ are supposing ⓓ are meant
32. He .... to like the new T-shirt; it isn't fashionable.
   ⓐ doesn't seem ⓑ isn't seemed ⓒ isn't supposing ⓓ not supposed
33. I'm .... to tidy my room before I start studying.
   ⓐ have ⓑ seemed ⓒ meaning ⓓ supposed
34. What .... to do in the company? I need to know all about my duties here.
   ⓐ do I suppose ⓑ am I supposed ⓒ do I mean ⓓ am I seemed
35. He .... to be absent-minded; he didn't see the car coming towards him.
   ⓐ opposed ⓑ supposed ⓒ meant ⓓ seemed
36. He .... have read many books; he is really knowledgeable.
   ⓐ seems to ⓑ supposed to ⓒ can't ⓓ should
37. Wael .... to be happy today. – You're right, he has just had good news!
   ⓐ opposes ⓑ supposes ⓒ seems ⓓ is seeming
38. The factory .... to provide work opportunities for more than two hundred people.
   ⓐ supposed ⓑ is meant ⓒ is meaning ⓓ seem
39. Don't stay up late; you .... to catch an early train tomorrow
   ⓐ had ⓑ supposed ⓒ meant ⓓ are supposed
40. Don't worry; the car .... repaired well to be ready for the long journey.
   ⓐ seems to have been ⓑ supposed to have been
   ⓒ seems to have ⓓ meant to have been
41. I think he doesn't intend to insult you; he .... to be having fun.
   ⓐ is supposing ⓑ want ⓒ seems ⓓ supposed
42. You're supposed .... a driving licence to be able to drive a car legally.
   ⓐ to holding ⓑ to hold ⓒ hold ⓓ to be hold
43. His words .... to express his apology, but they were misunderstood.
   ⓐ intending ⓑ supposed ⓒ were meaning ⓓ were meant
44. Do you know what .... by "inspiration?"
   ⓐ supposed ⓑ is meant ⓒ is meaning ⓓ meant
45. The underground metro .... to be an environmentally friendly means of transport.
   ⓐ is supposed ⓑ is supposing ⓒ meant ⓓ designed

46. Car drivers are .... to wear seat belts.
ⓐ seemed ⓑ supposing ⓒ supposed ⓓ meaning

47. Did he mean .... her late at night? - No, it was by mistake.
ⓐ to call ⓑ to be called ⓒ calls ⓓ to calling

48. My homework .... to be full of mistakes; the teacher is angry with me.
ⓐ means ⓑ supposes ⓒ seems ⓓ sees

49. Schools .... to follow rules of safety.
ⓐ supposed ⓑ are meant ⓒ are seemed ⓓ must

50. They are supposed to arrive tomorrow. This shows ....
ⓐ ability ⓑ impossibility ⓒ prohibition ⓓ expectation

51. She .... to have a hard time in that factory. She wants to look for another job.
ⓐ is meant ⓑ is seemed ⓒ seems ⓓ supposed

52. Clubs .... to be places for sports and social activities.
ⓐ seems ⓑ are seemed ⓒ are supposing ⓓ are meant

53. He .... to like the new T-shirt; it isn't fashionable.
ⓐ doesn't seem ⓑ isn't seemed ⓒ isn't supposing ⓓ not supposed

54. I'm .... to tidy my room before I start studying.
ⓐ have ⓑ seemed ⓒ meaning ⓓ supposed

55. Who .... to prepare lunch today?
ⓐ is supposed ⓑ is seemed ⓒ supposes ⓓ means

56. I am happy; my manager .... to be pleased with my work.
ⓐ opposes ⓑ supposes ⓒ means ⓓ seems

57. The children are happy. They .... to be having fun with their grandfather.
ⓐ are seemed ⓑ suppose ⓒ seem ⓓ look

58. You .... exhausted. Why don't you go lie down?
ⓐ seem ⓑ intend ⓒ mean ⓓ supposed

59. I can't see this photo clearly. What is it .... ?
ⓐ meaning to be ⓑ seemed to be ⓒ supposed to ⓓ meant to be

60. I really want to read this because it is .... to be the most exciting book of the yea
ⓐ seems ⓑ supposed ⓒ meaning ⓓ pretend

61. Nabil is supposed .... dinner.
ⓐ to cook ⓑ cook ⓒ to cooking ⓓ cooking

62. 'Dirty Harry' is supposed .... one of Eastwood's best films.
ⓐ being ⓑ to be ⓒ be ⓓ to being

63. I seem .... the first student to arrive at school today.
ⓐ being ⓑ to be ⓒ to being ⓓ be

64. The new director of the company .... strict and tough.
ⓐ seem to ⓑ seems to ⓒ seems to be ⓓ seems to bein

65. I am going to buy this car. It .... to be very good.
ⓐ is seemed ⓑ was seemed ⓒ suppose ⓓ is supposed

66. We've skimmed off the six people who .... be the most suitable for the job.
ⓐ seemed ⓑ mean ⓒ seem to ⓓ supposed

67. I must apologise, but really I didn't .... you any harm.
ⓐ mean ⓑ suppose ⓒ seem ⓓ make

68. The new laws are supposed .... crime.
ⓐ preventing ⓑ to preventing ⓒ prevent ⓓ to prevent

69. It .... to snow last week.
ⓐ didn't suppose ⓑ doesn't suppose ⓒ wasn't supposed ⓓ weren't supposed

70. Maya meant .... you.
ⓐ call ⓑ to call ⓒ calling ⓓ to calling

71. Amr seems .... a good day.
ⓐ to been having ⓑ have ⓒ to having ⓓ to be having

72. Mrs Mai is .... to have a lot of money.
ⓐ supposed ⓑ suppose ⓒ seem ⓓ seemed

73. The train was meant .... at 9 o'clock.
ⓐ leaving ⓑ to leaving ⓒ leave ⓓ to leave

74. No one .... supposed to know about it.
ⓐ do ⓑ does ⓒ was ⓓ were

75. The castle .... to be haunted.
ⓐ is supposed ⓑ is supposing ⓒ supposed ⓓ supposing

76. What is the weather .... to be like tomorrow?
ⓐ supposing ⓑ supposed ⓒ suppose ⓓ meaning

77. What .... you supposed to do this week?
ⓐ do ⓑ does ⓒ are ⓓ is

78. How is targeted advertising .... to help us?
ⓐ seemed ⓑ seem ⓒ supposed ⓓ meaning

79. It .... to Jim that Amy was worried about something.
ⓐ seemed ⓑ meant ⓒ supposed ⓓ seem

80. The rainbow seemed .... on the hillside.
ⓐ two end ⓑ too end ⓒ to end ⓓ end

81. Ann didn't .... very sure. It seems a foolish decision now.
ⓐ seem ⓑ suppose ⓒ mean ⓓ main

82. Why does targeted advertising seem .... so many people?
ⓐ to worried ⓑ to worrying ⓒ worry ⓓ to worry

83. It seems .... me you don't have much choice.
ⓐ about ⓑ to ⓒ of ⓓ with

84. Ahmed seems .... a wonderful holiday.
ⓐ has ⓑ have ⓒ had ⓓ to be having

85. Huda is .... to prepare her meals.
ⓐ seems ⓑ mean ⓒ supposed ⓓ pretend

86. It would seem .... someone left the building unlocked.
ⓐ then ⓑ to ⓒ than ⓓ that

87. "Why did you move to New York?" "It seemed .... a good idea at that time"
ⓐ like ⓑ to ⓒ that ⓓ alike

88. There were so many delays - it seemed .... we would never get home.
ⓐ unless ⓑ if as ⓒ if ⓓ as if

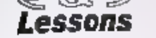
89. He seems .... no particular craving for society.
ⓐ have ⓑ to have ⓒ to be ⓓ be

90. My father is .... to be in Cairo now but he is still at home.
ⓐ seemed ⓑ supposed ⓒ mean ⓓ supposition

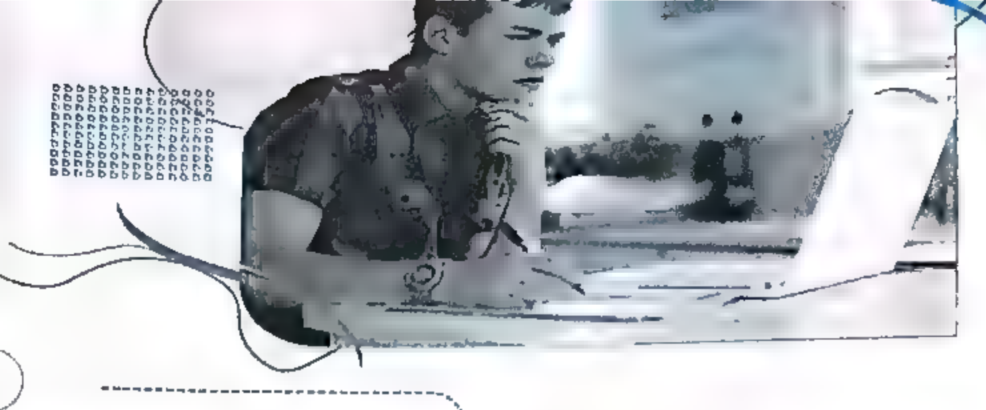
91. My sister .... to be ill. She should have gone to hospital.
ⓐ supposed ⓑ meant ⓒ seemed ⓓ appearing

92. This restaurant is .... to be excellent.
ⓐ mean ⓑ meant ⓒ meaning ⓓ means

93. He seems .... the last one to make mistakes.
ⓐ to be ⓑ be ⓒ being ⓓ to being


Being smart online



Key Vocabulary

addict (n)	مدمن	behaviour (n)	سلوك / تصرف	symbol (n)	رمز
addicted (adj)	مدمن	profile (n)	الملف الشخصي	sensible (adj)	عاقل / حكيم
behave (v)	يتصرف	year of birth	سنة الميلاد	platform (n)	منصة / رصيف القطار
criticise (v)	ينتقد	programming (n)	برمجة	privacy (n)	خصوصية

Main Vocabulary

argument (n)	خلاف / نزاع	plus (conj)	بالإضافة لذلك	highlight (v/n)	يسلط الضوء على / عمل بارز
anyway (adv)	على أي حال / بأي طريقة	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي	imagine (v)	يتخيل
experience (v/n)	يجرب / يعاني / خبرة	mention (v)	يذكر	include (v)	يشتمل على
cute (adj)	جميل / لطيف	link (v/n)	يربط / رابط	media (n)	إعلام
chat (v/n)	يدردش / دردشة	pleased (adj)	مسرور	forum (n)	منتدى
check (v)	يفحص	pros and cons (n)	مميزات وعيوب	game (n)	يلعب / يلهو / مباراة
create (v)	يخلق	purpose (n)	غرض	guide (v/n)	مرشد / يرشد
effect (n)	أثر / تأثير	rank (v)	يصنف	teen (adj)	مراهق
employee (n)	موظف	register (v)	يسجل	teenager (n)	مراهق
entertain (v)	يسلي / يستضيف	represent (v)	يمثل / ينوب عن	victim (n)	ضحية
forever (adv)	للأبد	share (v)	يشارك	develop (v)	يطور
fire (v)	يفصل من العمل	brainstorm (n)	يستثير / عصف ذهني	example (n)	مثال
viewpoint (n)	وجهة نظر	feelings (n)	مشاعر	explain (v)	يشرح
unsuitable (adj)	غير مناسب	order (n)	ترتيب / أمر		

King Lear

double (v)	يضاعف	room (n)	متسع / مجال / حجرة	set eyes on	تقع عيناه على
patience (n)	صبر	apologise (v)	يعتذر	keep you warm	يحافظ على دفئك
go mad (v)	يفقد صوابه	spy (v/n)	جاسوس / يتجسس	lock me out	يمنعني من الدخول
shelter (v/n)	مأوى / يحمي / يستر	wind (n)	رياح	turn your back on me (ignore)	تتجاهلني
joke (v/n)	نكتة / فكاهة / يهرج	disagreement (n)	اختلاف / خلاف		

Synonym & Antonym

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym العكس
criticise	ينتقد	condemn - disapprove	praise - approve
highlight	يسلط الضوء على	focus - care	neglect - minimize
cute	جميل / لطيف	nice - beautiful	unattractive - ugly
symbol	رمز	icon - trademark	reality - existence
employee	موظف	worker - retainer	boss - employer
sensible	عاقل / حكيم	practical - responsible	insensible - foolish



Prepositions

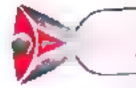
get into (join)	يلتحق بـ / ينضم لـ
addicted to	مدمن لـ
connect to	يوصل بـ
go out	يخرج
loads of	كثير من الأشياء / عدد كبير

decide to	يقرران
decide on	يختار / يحدد
chat with / to	يدردش مع
for ages	لفترة طويلة / لعصور
divided into	مقسمة إلى

Expressions & Idioms

apply for a job	يتقدم بطلب لوظيفة
apply in writing	يتقدم بطلب كتابي
as a result of	كنتيجة لـ
in short	باختصار
in person	شخصياً
on your profile	على صفحتك الشخصية
keep us in contact (touch) with	يبقى على اتصال بـ
game online	يلعب على الانترنت

specific examples	أمثلة محددة
do a blog post on	يكتب منشور عن
in a few years' time	في خلال سنوات قليلة
pay attention to	يهتم بـ
so far	حتى الآن
the other day	مؤخراً
set of rules	مجموعة من القوانين
negative effects of	تأثيرات سيئة لـ



Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
connect	يوصل	connection	اتصال / توصيل	connected	متصل
link	يوصل / يربط	link	علاقة	linked to	مرتبط بـ
addict	يدمن	addiction	إدمان	addictive	يؤدي إلى الإدمان
				addicted	مدمن على
criticise	ينتقد	criticism	نقد	criticised	منتقد
entertain	يُسلي / يُمتع	entertainment		entertaining	ممتع / مسل
employ	يوظف	employee	موظف	employed	موظف
		employment	توظيف		

Definitions

profile	الملف الشخصي	a description of somebody that gives useful information
sensible	حكيم	able to make good judgments based on reason and experience rather than emotion
symbol	رمز	a person, an object, an event, etc., that represents a more general quality
behaviour	سلوك / تصرف	the way that somebody behaves, especially towards other people
addict	مدمن	a person who cannot stop doing or using something, especially something harmful



Notice the Difference

sensible	عاقل / حكيم	sensitive	حساس
behave	يتصرف / يتعامل	behaviour	سلوك
profile	الملف الشخصي / نبذة عن شخص	portfolio	حقيبة أوراق / وزارة
addiction	إدمان	addition	أضافة
privacy	خصوصية / عزلة	publicity	شهرة / اهتمام من وسائل الإعلام
loads	أحمال / شحنات	loans	قروض
understand	يفهم	misunderstand	يسئ فهم

destination, location, site & position

destination	مكان الوصول (المكان المقصود)	▸ Our luggage was checked all the way through to our final **destination**.
location	موقع (ثابت / تصوير / على خريطة)	▸ What is the exact **location** of the ship?
site	موقع أثرى / بناء / موقع على الإنترنت	▸ Abu Simble is the **site** of two temples south of Aswan.
position	موقع متحرك / مكانة اجتماعية	▸ What **position** do you play? ▸ He had a high **position** in society.

interested, keen, fond & enthusiastic

be interested **in**	مهتم بـ	▸ He **is interested in** playing football.
be keen **on**	متحمس لـ	▸ He **is keen on** playing football.
be fond **of**	مغرم بـ	▸ He **is fond of** playing football.
be enthusiastic **about**	متحمس لـ	▸ He **is enthusiastic about** playing football.

quiet, quite & quit

quiet	هادئ	▸ Toka lived a **quiet** life.
quite	إلى حد ما / تماماً	▸ The exam was **quite** easy.
quit	يترك / يكف عن / يرحل	▸ Hany **decided** to **quit** smoking.





Hamdi: Hey Khaled, can you help me? I'm doing a blog post on how to use social media well. Can you help me think of some interesting points to include, please?

Khaled: Yes, sure. What have you got so far?

Hamdi: OK, I think I'm going to begin by talking about your profile. That's important on social media.

Khaled: Definitely.

Hamdi: Great! What shall I write?

Khaled: Well, I like seeing who I'm chatting with on social media, so I believe you should always put a nice picture of yourself on your profile. I hate it when people have symbols or something instead of their photo - you don't know who you are talking to.

Hamdi: I disagree; symbols tell you more about someone's thinks or feels.

Khaled: Really, Hamid? Well, I think it's important that people don't know too much. For example, in my opinion, it's a bad idea to include your date of birth to show your age.

Hamdi: I see your point. Did you know that about 50% of teenagers have experienced bad behaviour? So, I think you're right not to give people too much information about yourself.

Khaled: After all, you have to be sensible on social media if you want to enjoy it safely.

Hanan: Leila, did you see the post that Hany put up the other day about social media behaviour in Egypt?

Leila: No, I was too busy updating my profile. Do you know how difficult it is to take a good photo of yourself?

Hanan: I know what you mean. I just used a photo of my cat. Anyway, as I was saying, did you know that Hany's post said that 22 million people in Egypt connect to one popular social media app every day?

Leila: Wow! That's something like 20% of Egypt all on just one social media platform! But getting back to your profile photo, why don't you use a photo of yourself?

Hanan: Don't you worry about what all those people might see on your profile? For example, imagine you post a photo of yourself doing something stupid now, and in a few years' time you apply for a job and the company look at your social media profile to see what kind of person you are. What opinion will they have of you?

Leila: I see your point, but in my opinion, social media should be personal and has nothing to do with your job.

Hanan: I disagree. I read about a man who was fired from his job for criticizing his company on his personal profile. You can never be too careful. You don't know who might see your posts.

Leila: I didn't think posting a photo was so important!

Hanan	The thing is that as soon as you post something, it is there forever. So, be careful with those selfies you're taking! Plus, Hany told me that he was once the victim of bad behaviour after posting a photo of himself in some old jeans. He reported it and everything is fine now, but it really affected him at the time.
Leila	Wow! Well, I might think twice about updating my profile picture and just keep the photo of my dog. I think she's so cute and my selfies all look terrible anyway!
Hanan	I agree, I think your dog is lovely and it's a safer photo, too.
Leila	Hey, look! Have you seen what Mona's wearing in the photo she's just posted?

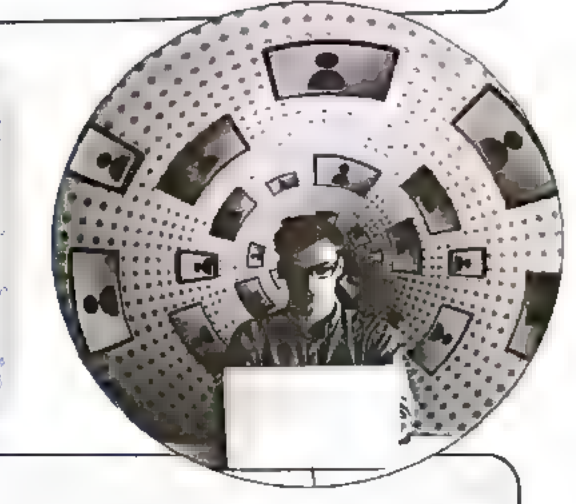
Listen to five young people talking about the effects of the internet

Narrator: 1

Dalida Hi, I'm Dalida. I think the biggest effect that the internet has on young people is it keeps them entertained - there's always something to watch or listen to, and I'm never bored.

Narrator: 2

Injy Hi, I'm Injy. Like most of my friends, I think I'm addicted to the internet. If I'm not checking my social media apps, I feel worried that I'm missing something important. It means I have a lot of arguments with my parents at mealtimes and when we go out together.



Narrator: 3

Ayman Hello. I'm Ayman. I am so pleased I have the internet to help me with my homework. Imagine if you had to go to the library and read loads of books for every homework or project!

Narrator: 4

Osama Hi, my name's Osama. I game online which is really fun, so I think the internet has a good effect on my life, but I do worry about my sister. She gets sad because she thinks her friends all have better lives than her and do more exciting things. She can't understand that they only post the good things and not the bad things.

Narrator: 5

Girl 2 Hi, Radwa here. I love the internet. I love computer programming so I go on forums to chat to other programmers – students and people who do it for a job. I have learned so much. And if I have a problem that I can't solve to do with programming someone on the forum can usually help me.



Exercise 1 Key vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الرئيسية

1. Internet users should respect the .... of others. إدارة نقادة ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ forum ⓑ privacy ⓒ dairy ⓓ fact file

2. Unfortunately, my friend has become technology ....; he spends too much time using the internet for unnecessary things. LM
ⓐ suggested ⓑ protested ⓒ protected ⓓ addicted

3. .... is the state of being free from public attention. LM
ⓐ Publicity ⓑ Piracy ⓒ Privacy ⓓ Accuracy

4. Experts warn us that many kids have become .... to surfing the internet. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ attained ⓑ addicted ⓒ attacked ⓓ applied

5. The clever artist asked the experts to .... his drawings. إدارة غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ prepare ⓑ avoid ⓒ criticise ⓓ deform

6. Famous people are always complaining that their personal affairs in social media are an invasion of their .... دمياط ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ privacy ⓑ piracy ⓒ curiosity ⓓ publicity

7. She is a/an .... to chocolate cookies. She likes them very much. الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ expert ⓑ follower ⓒ source ⓓ addict

8. I believe you should put a nice picture of yourself in your .... LM
ⓐ face ⓑ profile ⓒ profit ⓓ prestige

9. You have to be .... when using social media if you want to enjoy it safely. LM
ⓐ aimless ⓑ careless ⓒ sensitive ⓓ sensible

10. The red cross .... was painted on each side of the vehicle.
ⓐ sign ⓑ symbol ⓒ tattoo ⓓ signal

11. His casual .... was wholly inappropriate for such a formal occasion.
ⓐ behaviour ⓑ behave ⓒ harbour ⓓ rural

12. He did not appear to be .... of the difficulties that lay ahead. He was so mad.
ⓐ sense ⓑ insane ⓒ sensible ⓓ sensitive

13. The strict teacher expected all students to.........in the classroom, maintaining discipline and focus.
ⓐ behave ⓑ nap ⓒ celebrate ⓓ spy

14. In order to verify your identity, the website asks for your email, password and ....
ⓐ year of death ⓑ year of birth ⓒ favourite book ⓓ favorite song

15. The artist displayed her artwork on a digital .... for online viewing and sales.
ⓐ stage ⓑ microphone ⓒ platform ⓓ screen

16. The dove is often considered a .... of peace and harmony.
ⓐ bird ⓑ sound ⓒ colour ⓓ symbol

17. She enjoys solving complex problems and has a passion for computer ....
ⓐ programming ⓑ gardening ⓒ painting ⓓ cooking

Exercise 2 Main vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الاساسية

18. When we were young, our grandfather's stories .... us a lot. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ entertained ⓑ delayed ⓒ inspected ⓓ trained

19. You will need proof of identity to .... at the library.
ⓐ regard ⓑ gist ⓒ register ⓓ print

20. Mr Awny is going to .... our company at the upcoming conference. He will speak on behalf of the entire staff. LM

ⓐ reproduce ⓑ represent ⓒ introduce ⓓ produce

21. He is now .... one hundredth in world tennis.

ⓐ circled ⓑ ranked ⓒ named ⓓ marked

22. The accident .... the need for new safety measures.

ⓐ highlights ⓑ reduces ⓒ rises ⓓ heights

23. Should the function of children's television be to .... or to enlighten?

ⓐ enter ⓑ sustain ⓒ entertain ⓓ titan

24. The .... was a collaborative effort by all the children in the class.

ⓐ present ⓑ gift ⓒ intonation ⓓ presentation

Exercise 4 — Choose two Answers — اختر إجابتين

25. We should keep in .... with our relatives from time to time. LM

ⓐ touch ⓑ separation ⓒ contact ⓓ addition ⓔ play

26. Never lose .... with your relatives; visit them from time to time. LM

ⓐ result ⓑ cause ⓒ contact ⓓ search ⓔ touch

27. The little girl is so cute. "Cute" is opposite in meaning to "............" and "............". LM

ⓐ poor ⓑ rich ⓒ ugly ⓓ nice ⓔ unattractive

Exercise 5 — Various Exercises — تمارين متنوعة

28. There were .... of people standing around a TV set watching the final match in the club. LM

ⓐ loads ⓑ loans ⓒ leads ⓓ loons

29. I see your point: we must use trusted websites. "I see your point" means that I .... you. LM

ⓐ misunderstand ⓑ don't agree with ⓒ differ with you ⓓ understand

30. I am going to .... for a job as an accountant. LM

ⓐ modify ⓑ supply ⓒ apply ⓓ imply

31. What are the negative .... and positive sides of using mass media? LM

ⓐ effects ⓑ advantages ⓒ infections ⓓ benefits

32. Some of the children have .... learning difficulties.

ⓐ private ⓑ spaced ⓒ spicy ⓓ specific

33. Prisoners complain that they are subjected to too many petty .... and restrictions.

ⓐ role ⓑ rules ⓒ rolls ⓓ rollers

34. It's better not to waste your time .... online.

ⓐ doing ⓑ giving ⓒ gaming ⓓ having

Focus on King Lear

35. You should .... for the mistake you have made. LM

ⓐ memorise ⓑ apologise ⓒ complain ⓓ confess

36. I had to take a taxi as I had no .... for me on the bus. دمياط ٢٠٢٢

ⓐ room ⓑ chair ⓒ stool ⓓ time

37. While walking in the hills, we had to find .... due to the storm. المنيا ٢٠٢٢

ⓐ shoulder ⓑ shelter ⓒ filter ⓓ counter

38. .... means the fact of having a place to live or stay, considered as basic human need. (الغربية ٢٠٢٢)

ⓐ Shelter ⓑ Cooperation ⓒ Hatred ⓓ Confidence

39. Honestly, I loved the little boy the moment I .... eyes on him. (LM)

ⓐ fell ⓑ set ⓒ hit ⓓ sat

40. Surprisingly, she turned her back on me. This means that she .... me. (عزبة البرج ٢٠٢٢)

ⓐ helped ⓑ paid attention to ⓒ realized ⓓ ignored

41. .... on your country is considered high treason. (أسوان ٢٠٢٢)

ⓐ Carrying ⓑ Depending ⓒ Crying ⓓ Spying

42. He plotted against his country. He was a .... (إدارة زفتى ٢٠٢٢)

ⓐ spy ⓑ noble ⓒ patriot ⓓ modal

43. You need to be careful; there is no .... for mistakes.

ⓐ room's ⓑ rooms ⓒ room ⓓ a room

44. We had a small .... about which birthday present to buy our friend.

ⓐ disagree ⓑ disagreement ⓒ agree ⓓ agreement

45. Imagine the humiliation of having to ....

ⓐ realize ⓑ recognize ⓒ apologise ⓓ specialize

46. The company's profits .... after implementing the new marketing strategy.

ⓐ decrease ⓑ doubled ⓒ expanded ⓓ diversified

47. An upturned boat on the beach provided ....

ⓐ chat ⓑ shouter ⓒ shelter ⓓ shoulder

48. The security system automatically activates at midnight, and it will .... if the correct code is not entered.

ⓐ open the door ⓑ lock me out ⓒ keep me warm ⓓ set eyes on

49. The news of his sudden death was so devastating that it made his family "........... " with grief and sorrow.

ⓐ go mad ⓑ laugh ⓒ celebrate ⓓ exercise

50. The teacher shared a funny .... with the students to make the lesson more enjoyable.

ⓐ equation ⓑ joke ⓒ theorem ⓓ fact





تم شرح القاعدة بالكامل
فى الجزء الأول

1. The words we say and hear have a direct effect on our thoughts and if we only allow positive thoughts into our minds, we will end up with positive ideas.

(أ) للكلمات التى نقولها ونتحدثها تأثير مباشر على أفكارنا وإذا سمحنا فقط للأفكار الايجابية لتدخل عقولنا سوف تنتهى بأفكار سلبية

(ب) للكلمات التى نقولها ونسمعها تأثير مباشر على أفكارنا وإذا سمحنا فقط للأفكار الايجابية لتدخل عقولنا سوف تنتهى بأفكار ايجابية.

(ج) للكلمات التى نقولها ونسمعها تأثير سيء على أفكارنا وإذا سمحنا فقط للأفكار الايجابية لتدخل عقولنا سوف تنتهى بأفكار ايجابية.

(د) للكلمات التى نقولها ونسمعها تأثير مباشر على أفكارنا وإذا سمحنا فقط للتفكير النقدى لتدخل عقولنا سوف تنتهى بأفكار ايجابية.

2. Several teenagers effectively participated in the campaign which their local council had launched against bullying and violence.

(أ) شارك القليل من المراهقين بفاعلية فى الحملة التى أطلقها مجلسهم المحلى ضد التنمر والعنف .

(ب) شارك العديد من البالغين بفاعلية فى الحملة التى أطلقها مجلسهم القومى ضد التنمر والعنف.

(ج) شارك العديد من المراهقين بفاعلية فى الحملة التى أطلقها مجلسهم المحلى ضد التحيز والعنف.

(د) شارك العديد من المراهقين بفاعلية فى الحملة التى أطلقها مجلسهم المحلى ضد التنمر والعنف.

3. Check the rules of your destination country if you're planning to travel abroad. Nations are adding new rules in response to COVID-19.

(أ) يجب أن تتحقق من قوانين الدولة التى ستقصدها إذا كنت تخطط للسفر للخارج.حيث تضيف الدول قوانين جديدة كاستجابة لكوفيد ١٩.

(ب) يجب أن تتحقق من قوانين دولتك إذا كنت تخطط للسفر للخارج.حيث تضيف الدول قوانين جديدة كاستجابة لكوفيد ١٩.

(ج) يجب أن تتجاهل قوانين الدولة التى ستقصدها إذا كنت تخطط للسفر للخارج.حيث تضيف الدول قوانين جديدة كاستجابة لكوفيد ١٩.

(د) يجب أن تتحقق من قوانين الدولة التى ستقصدها إذا كنت تخطط الرجوع من الخارج.حيث تضيف الدول قوانين جديدة كاستجابة لكوفيد ١٩.

٤. الحياة رحلة رائعة رغم ما بها من الام .علينا أن لتحمل هذه الالام كى لنهض بمصر.

ⓐ Life is an amazing journey, although its pain. We must endure this pain in order to improve Egypt.

ⓑ Life is an amazed journey, despite its pain. We must endure this pain in order to improve Egypt.

ⓒ Life is an amazing journey, despite its pain. We must endure this pain in order to improve Egypt.

ⓓ Life is an amazing journey, however its pain. We must endure this pain in order to improve Egypt.

٥. يجب أن نستفيد من أوقات الفراغ بشكل إيجابى عن طريق ممارسة الأنشطة مثل الرياضة أو القراءة أو الانضمام لجمعية خيرية.

ⓐ We must make use of free time positive by practising activities such as sports, reading or joining a charity.

ⓑ We must make use of free time positively by practising activities such as sports, reading or joining a charity.

ⓒ We must make use of free time positively by practising activities such as sports, reading or joining a volunteer.

ⓓ We must make useful of free time positively by practising activities such as sports, reading or joining a charity.

٦. تساعد جودة الإنتاج على زيادة التصدير وتقليل البطالة وجلب العملة الصعبة.

ⓐ Quality of production helps to increase exportation, reduce employment and bring out hard currency.

ⓑ Quality of production helps to decrease exportation, reduce employment and bring in hard currency.

ⓒ Quality of production helps to increase importation, reduce employment and bring in hard currency.

ⓓ Quality of production helps to increase exportation, reduce unemployment and bring in hard currency.

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People often ask me who I have to thank for my success as a pianist and songwriter. They expect to hear that I was born into a musical family and had an excellent piano teacher. However, the truth is different. When I was little, nobody played an instrument at home. I learnt to play the piano and sing because there was a piano in my house and I just wanted to make music.

My parents allowed me to sit at the piano and sing for as long as I wanted. If they were afraid that I would break the old piano, they never mentioned it. They didn't suggest that I should take lessons, either. The songs just came to me when I had my hands on the piano. I suppose I had musical talent and that is all you need. I started writing proper songs when I was a teenager. The music was mine, but the words were from other song writers. It seems so easy. When you start to compose, you do that, you copy other people's best songs. Then you start changing the melodies and the words and you develop your own style. <u>That</u> only happened later, when I had grown beyond my teenage years. For a time, I thought music would be just a hobby. My parents had developed a strong belief that I would be able to make a living as a musician, but I had my doubts, so after school I took a job in radio and advertising. Then one day one of my songs won a prize and that changed everything. I realized my happiness was in music. I have been a musician ever since that day.

1. What's the best title for this essay?
   - ⓐ My journey as a musician
   - ⓑ My childhood goals and piano
   - ⓒ My goal to become a famous musician
   - ⓓ My struggle when learning the piano
2. The underlined word "that" refers to ....
   - ⓐ playing the piano
   - ⓑ composing music and songs
   - ⓒ starting your music career
   - ⓓ copying other people's songs
3. In the second paragraph, "they never mentioned it" means that his parents ....
   - ⓐ never ask him to break the piano
   - ⓑ never talked to him
   - ⓒ were careless
   - ⓓ never set rules about the piano
4. In this text, the writer is trying to ....
   - ⓐ describe his life as a successful musician
   - ⓑ complain about his lack of musical training
   - ⓒ suggest how children can be taught music
   - ⓓ explain how he became a musician
5. When the writer started making music on the piano, his parents ....
   - ⓐ wanted him to play his own songs
   - ⓑ said the piano might get damaged
   - ⓒ seemed happy to let him play it
   - ⓓ saw the need for a piano teacher
6. The writer thinks that the songs he wrote as a teenager.......... .
   - ⓐ were not very original.
   - ⓑ took a long time to write.
   - ⓒ were not well-written.
   - ⓓ showed his personal style.
7. The writer got a job in advertising because ....
   - ⓐ he had learnt about advertising jobs at school
   - ⓑ he thought he might not earn enough as a musician
   - ⓒ it offered him the opportunity to change his life
   - ⓓ his parents suggested it was a good career for him
8. The writer advises the young people saying ....
   - ⓐ It's OK to copy other people's songs when you are learning
   - ⓑ It is not a good idea to write songs when you are very young
   - ⓒ If you want to be successful, you must have good music teachers
   - ⓓ You need someone in your family to guide you when you start

Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

"Being smart online"



A) Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Maher ………… be a lot happier in his new school.
   ⓐ seemed to ⓑ supposed ⓒ meant ⓓ seems
2. The new job will provide you with valuable ………… .
   ⓐ experiences ⓑ experience ⓒ experiment ⓓ expire
3. I'm not calling you a liar - I'm just suggesting that you misunderstood the ………… of the situation.
   ⓐ forces ⓑ facts ⓒ focus ⓓ flames
4. We are conducting a ……. to find out what our customers think of their local bus service.
   ⓐ surf ⓑ story ⓒ survey ⓓ service
5. He kept on crying and I lost my ………… .
   ⓐ patience ⓑ patient ⓒ practise ⓓ practice
6. My teacher ………… be happy with my work
   ⓐ meant ⓑ supposed ⓒ seemed to ⓓ meant to
7. It ………… to snow last week.
   ⓐ supposed ⓑ meant ⓒ didn't suppose ⓓ wasn't supposed
8. I was ………… to see my friend Nour yesterday but I didn't have time.
   ⓐ supposed ⓑ seems ⓒ meaning ⓓ pretending
9. I am ………… to take part in a poetry competition.
   ⓐ seems ⓑ supposed ⓒ meaning ⓓ pretending
10. Cookies are ………… to make it easier for us to find things that interest us.
    ⓐ seems ⓑ supposed ⓒ meaning ⓓ meant
11. I should have set the alarm clock as I was ………… to meet my friend this morning.
    ⓐ seemed ⓑ meant ⓒ suppose ⓓ pretending
12. Your new job ………… to be more interesting and rewarding.
    ⓐ suppose ⓑ supposing ⓒ supposed ⓓ is supposed
13. The software makes it easy to ………… colourful graphs.
    ⓐ spend ⓑ end ⓒ waste ⓓ create
14. ………… are technical information that a website leaves in your computer so that the website will recognize you when you use it again.
    ⓐ Cookies ⓑ Cook ⓒ Cooker ⓓ Cooking
15. You can ………… videos to YouTube. It is easy.
    ⓐ overload ⓑ load ⓒ download ⓓ upload

B) Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Everyone is individual and different in the same way as everyone's finger-prints ar unique, so is everyone's personality. We can usually see people's personality in the clothe they wear or how they look after their things, or how they behave with other people aroun them. When we say that we know someone well, what we really mean is that we can mak accurate guesses about what that person will do or think in certain situations. We know th different features of their personality. These features are called "personality traits".

Psychologists think that we have "central personality traits." These affect how w behave, and how we react to people and situations. Examples of central personality traits ar



friendliness, neatness, competitiveness, shyness and optimism. Some psychologists think that we inherit these central traits from our family and that they usually stay with us all our life. Psychologists say that we also have other traits, called "secondary traits", connected with the things we prefer, such as our favourite food, music, films or colours. These can change as we get older, but very often many of them stay the same all our lives.

Personality traits may be either positive or negative. The positive traits make the person appreciated by others while the negative ones make them hated. Positive personality traits include being human taking responsibility for actions, adaptability, determination, compassion, understanding, patience, courage and loyalty. Negative personality traits include lying which is a deplorable quality being selfish, laziness, inability to empathize with others, being disloyal and talking about others behind their back.

16. Which of the following can determine someone's personality?
ⓐ The way they behave ⓑ The way they dream
ⓒ The way they sleep ⓓ The way they write

17. Laziness and telling lies are known to be ....
ⓐ unchangeable personality traits ⓑ negative personality traits
ⓒ positive personality traits ⓓ good qualities of a person

18. What does the underlined word they refer to?
ⓐ personality traits ⓑ qualities of people
ⓒ central personality traits ⓓ secondary personality traits

19. The underlined word "traits" means ....
ⓐ personalities ⓑ characteristics ⓒ descriptions ⓓ persons

20. We know the features of personality by his ....
ⓐ treat ⓑ traits ⓒ tiredness ⓓ thoughts

21. Scientists think that we .... from our family.
ⓐ inherit ⓑ hurt ⓒ inheritance ⓓ heart

22. .... can remain the same throughout our lives.
ⓐ Secondary traits ⓑ Central traits ⓒ Primary traits ⓓ Secondary levels

23. The .... traits make the person appreciated by others.
ⓐ positive ⓑ negative ⓒ equal ⓓ bad

C Writing

24. A: Translate the following into Arabic:
On your way to success, don't be afraid of going slowly; only be afraid of standing still.
(أ) فى الطريق للنجاح، لا تخشى التقدم ببطء، ولكن يجب أن تخشى الوقوف ثابتاً.
(ب) فى الطريق للنجاح، لا تخشى الذهاب البطيء، ولكن يجب أن تخشى الوقوف ثابتاً.
(ج) فى الطريق للنجاح، لا تخشى التقدم ببطء، ولكن يجب أن تخشى الوقوف متزنا.
(د) فى الطريق للنجاح، لا تخشى التقدم ببطء، ولكن لا يجب أن تخشى الوقوف مازال.

25. B: Translate the following into English.
حقق العلماء المصريين نجاحات عظيمة فى كل أنحاء العالم وسوف يحققوا المزيد إذا تم إعطاؤهم الفرصة الملائمة.
ⓐ Egyptian scientists have achieved great successful all over the world. They will achieve more if they are given the due chance.
ⓑ Egyptian scientists have achieved great succeed all over the world. They will achieve more if they are given the due chance.
ⓒ Egyptian scientists have achieved great successes all over the world. They will achieve more if they are giving the due chance.
ⓓ Egyptian scientists have achieved great successes all over the world. They will achieve more if they are given the due chance.

26. Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:
Pros and cons of social media





1) Complete the following dialogue: (2 Marks)

أزهر الدقهلية ٢٠٢٣

Alaa What is your favourite sport?
Ehab ❶ ....
Alaa ❷ ....?
Ehab I like it because of Mohammed Salah.
Alaa ❸ ....?
Ehab He plays for Liverpool.
Alaa ❹ ....
Ehab It is a famous English team.

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (5 Marks)

أزهر الجيزة ٢٠٢٣

The Romans spoke a language called Latin and they first took it to the country they called Britannia almost two thousand years ago. However, the English language came from Germany when people called Saxons arrived 500 years later. Soon the land of the Angels became known as England and the English have been using and misusing foreign words ever since. For example, words like cake, eggs, and happy all came from old Norse, which was the language spoken by the Vikings who came to England a few years after the Angels. However, many more English words came from the French who arrived in 1066. Unlike the poor people who continued speaking English, all the rich and powerful people spoke French. That's why there are so many words in English with similar meaning.

A Answer the following questions:

1. where did the English language come from?
   ....
2. How long ago did the Romans take Latin to Britannia?
   ....
3. What did the land of the Angels become known as?
   ....

B Choose the correct answer:

4. The Angels came to England ....The Vikings.
   ⓐ during ⓑ before ⓒ after ⓓ while
5. After 1066, the rich and powerful people spoke ....In England.
   ⓐ German ⓑ French ⓒ English ⓓ Saxon

3. A- Translate into Arabic: (1 Mark)

أزهر القاهرة ٢٠٢٣

It's time to work hard to achieve your ambition.

....

B- Translate into English: (1 Mark)

فاز نجيب محفوظ الكاتب المصري بجائزة نوبل عام ١٩٨٨.

....

Key Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
beg (v)	يتوسل / يتسول / يرجو	carol (n)	ترنيمة / أغنية	mean (v)	بخيل / يعني / يقصد
beggar (n)	متسول	Christmas (n)	عيد الميلاد	pile (v/n)	يكوم / كومة
sigh (v/n)	يتنهد / تنهيدة / يتحسر	fire (v/n)	نار / حريق / مدفأة / يطرد من	character (n)	شخصية

Main Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
boss (n)	رئيس	wake (v)	يستيقظ / يوقظ	tone (n)	نبرة صوت
attention (n)	انتباه	friendly (adj)	ودود	treat (v)	يعامل / يعالج
actually (adv)	بالفعل	generous (adj)	كريم	unfriendly (adj)	عدائي
alone (adj)	وحيد	gift (n)	هدية	upset (adj)	منزعج
assistant (n)	مساعد / بائع	including (n)	متضمن	warm (adj)	دافئ
both (adj/adv)	كلاهما	invite (v)	يدعو	waste (v/n)	يضيع / يهدر / إهدار / تبذير
disappointed (adj)	محبط	logical (adj)	منطقي	water (n)	يروي
donation (n)	تبرع	main (adj)	رئيسي	business (n)	عمل
employee (n)	موظف	nephew (n)	ابن الأخ	businessman (n)	رجل أعمال
employer (n)	صاحب عمل	pay (v)	يدفع	butcher (n)	جزار
enormous (adj)	ضخم	poor (adj)	فقير	dark (n/adj)	ظلام / مظلم
faraway (adj)	بعيد	race (n)	سباق	dream (v/n)	يحلم / حلم
fog (n)	ضباب	regret (v/n)	يندم / ندم	international (adj)	دولي
foggy (adj)	ضبابي	sick (adj)	مريض	map (n)	خريطة
sun cream (n)	كريم شمس	suddenly (adv)	فجأة	mind (v/n)	يمانع / عقل
surprised (adj)	مندهش	office (n)	حجرة المكتب	mistakes (n)	أخطاء
terrible (adj)	فظيع	probably (adv)	من المحتمل	museum (n)	متحف
smile (v/n)	يبتسم / ابتسامة	reply (v)	يرد		

Synonym & Antonym

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym العكس
beg	يتوسل / يتسول / يرجو	request - ask - beseech	give - instruct - order
generous	كريم	hospitable - unselfish - noble	mean - ungenerous - miserly
disappointed	محبط	depressed - dissatisfied - upset	cheerful - pleased - content
logical	معقول / منطقي	rational - sensible	illogical - crazy
enormous	ضخم	colossal - massive - huge	small - tiny - bitty
terrible	فظيع / ردئ للغاية	very bad - unattractive	relaxing - delightful



Prepositions

speak to	يتحدث إلى
speak about	يتحدث عن
ask for	يطلب ... من
dream of / about	يحلم بـ
work for	يعمل لدى
need .... to	يحتاج ..... لكي
smile at	يبتسم لـ
plenty of	وفرة (كثير) من
shout out	يصيح
invite to	يدعو إلى
pay for / pay to	يدفع من أجل / يدفع لـ (شخص)
care about	يهتم لأمر
at the beginning	في البداية
run off	يفر / ينطلق

Expressions & Idioms

feel alone	يشعر بالوحدة
Christmas carol	ترنيمة عيد الميلاد
miss the train	يفوته القطار
in an unfriendly tone	بنبرة عدائية
change his mind	يغير رأيه
get burnt	يحترق بحرارة الشمس
get lost	يضل الطريق

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
employ	يوظف	employee	موظف	employed	لديه وظيفة
		employer	صاحب عمل	employable	قابل للتوظيف
donate	يتبرع	donor / donator	متبرع	donated	متبرع به
		generosity	كرم	generous	كريم
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة	organised	منظم
mean	يعني / يقصد	meanness	البخل / الشح	meaningful	ذو معنى
		mean	بخيل	meaningless	بلا معنى



Definitions

beg	يتوسل	to ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much
mean	بخيل	not happy to spend money or give anything to other people
pile	يكوم / كومة	a group of things put on top of each other
sigh	يتنهد	a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or dis appointed



Notice the Difference

beg	يتوسل
pile	كومة
protect	يحمي
hard	صعب / شاق / قاس
sociable	شخص اجتماعي
sigh	يتنهد

big	كبير
pole	قضيب معدني
protest	يحتج / يتظاهر
hardly	بالكاد / بصعوبة
social	اجتماعي
sight	رؤية / بصر

work, job, career & profession

work	عمل / مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)	▸ I have got a lot of **work** to do. ▸ Ahmed leaves **work** at two o'clock.
job	وظيفة / مهنة (اسم يعد)	▸ He has got a **job** as a teacher.
career	الحياة العملية أو المهنية للفرد	▸ He started his **career** five years ago.
profession	مهنة (تحتاج الى مؤهلات)	▸ Teaching is a **profession**.

employ, employee & employer

employ	يوظف	▸ The company wants to **employ** workers.
employee	موظف	▸ The company needs new **employees**.
employer	صاحب عمل	▸ Workers have to respect their **employers**.

✱ لاحظ الاختلاف بين الأفعال التالية وتصريفاتهم:

التصريف الأول	meaning	التصريف الثاني	التصريف الثالث	example
fall	يقع	fell	fallen	▸ I **fell** down the stairs and injured my back.
fail	يرسب / يفشل	failed	failed	▸ He **failed** in his attempt to break the record.
feel	يشعر	felt	felt	▸ I don't **feel** comfortable in high heels.
fill	يملأ	filled	filled	▸ I **filled** the bucket with water.

One of   اسم جمع  فعل مفرد



◈ **One of the players was** injured in the last match.

✱ تستخدم a قبل كلمات معينة بمعنى (في كل) وعادة يمكن أن نستخدم مكانها كلمة per.

a day = every day = daily = per day
a week = every week = weekly = per week

◈ He earns 1600 pounds **a** month (**every month / per month / monthly**).

✱ عند استخدام the قبل صفات معينة تتحول الصفة إلى اسم جمع:

the poor / the rich / the disabled / the sick / the young / the old / the homeless

◈ **The poor** are in need of our help. = **Poor people** are in need of our help.





A Christmas Carol

* It was the end of December. It was dark outside and the streets were foggy. Scrooge was a very rich businessman, but he was mean and people didn't like him. Scrooge was working in his office with his assistant, Bob Cratchit. He was very cold because Scrooge wouldn't pay for a big fire to keep them warm.
* There was only a small fire and it was very far away. "It's late. Can I go home, Mr Scrooge?" Bob begged. "Have you finished your work?" asked Scrooge.
* Bob looked at the enormous pile of work left to do and signed.
* "You can't go home if you don't finish your work," continued Scrooge.
* "If I finish all this work tonight, will you let me come to work a bit later tomorrow morning?" asked Bob.
* "No, "said Scrooge.
* Suddenly the door opened and Scrooge's nephew, Fred, came into the office. He gave his uncle a friendly smile.
* "Bah!" said Scrooge, "Why are you here? And why are you so happy? You're poor. What have you got to be happy about?"
* "If you are so rich, why are you so sad?" replied Fred. "Perhaps if you were poor like me, you'd be happy like me, too"
* "Have you come to ask me for money?" asked Scrooge in an unfriendly tone.
* "No, " replied his nephew. "I've come to invite you to dinner."
* "Bah!" said his uncle.

A Christmas Carol: After a dream



* The next morning, Scrooge woke up in his bed. He'd had a terrible dream, but now he could see his mistakes. If he hadn't felt so alone, he wouldn't have cared only about money. And if he hadn't cared about money so much, he would have treated other people better.
* Then he would have had more friends, and he wouldn't have felt so alone. But now he would change. He ran to his window and saw a boy in the street. "You! Boy!" he shouted out of the window. "Do you know the butcher's shop?"
* "Yes, Mr Scrooge," shouted the boy. He was surprised to see Mr. Scrooge smile. "I want you to buy the best food and take it to Bob Cratchit's house as a gift from me to his family. Will you do this for me if I pay you?
* "Of course," said the boy and then he ran off before Mr Scrooge changed his mind. Scrooge went out in the street and said, "Good morning," to all the people he met and he smiled at them. Everyone was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smiling, but they replied, "Good morning, Mr Scrooge," and that made Scrooge very happy.
* Then he went to his nephew's house and asked if he could have dinner with him. Of course, his nephew smiled and invited him to come inside.



Exercise 1 Key vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الرئيسية

أزهر الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

1. He .... me to help him because he was in trouble.
   ⓐ made ⓑ begged ⓒ insist ⓓ apologise

2. There is an enormous .... of washing-up in the sink, so I will help my mother. المنيا / دمنشا ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ file ⓑ hole ⓒ pill ⓓ pile

3. The children .... their father to take them to the funfair on Friday.
   ⓐ begged ⓑ backed ⓒ looked ⓓ agreed

4. He's too .... to buy food for the hungry cat despite the money he has.
   ⓐ sufficient ⓑ generous ⓒ mean ⓓ main

الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

5. Be active; don't let your work .... up. Finish it day by day.
   ⓐ pale ⓑ pile ⓒ peal ⓓ buy

6. My daughter says she wants a mobile phone for ....
   ⓐ Christian ⓑ Christ ⓒ Christmas ⓓ charisma

إدارة زفتى ٢٠٢٢

7. All the fans gave a .... of relief when the referee gave the final whistle.
   ⓐ site ⓑ sigh ⓒ view ⓓ lie

8. The .... was thought to have been caused by a gas explosion.
   ⓐ treat ⓑ sight ⓒ fog ⓓ fire

9. The dry weather has increased the risk of forest ....
   ⓐ fames ⓑ fires ⓒ fired ⓓ frees

10. They .... him when they found out he had a criminal record.
    ⓐ feed ⓑ fed ⓒ fired ⓓ flamed

11. He felt sorry for all the opportunities he had missed, so he .... out in despair. LM
    ⓐ sighed ⓑ signed ⓒ sent ⓓ sighted

Exercise 2 Main vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الاساسية

أسيوط ٢٠٢٢

12. Mona really .... wasting her time on that film; it was very boring.
    ⓐ regrets ⓑ affects ⓒ pleases ⓓ rejoice

13. She's a personal .... as distinct from a secretary.
    ⓐ assist ⓑ assistance ⓒ assistant ⓓ associate

14. Freezing .... and icy patches are expected to cause problems for motorists tonight.
    ⓐ food ⓑ fog ⓒ foggy ⓓ fogey

15. It was so .... that the driver could hardly make out the way ahead.
    ⓐ fog ⓑ fogey ⓒ foggy ⓓ food

16. She'd always had a soft spot for her younger ....
    ⓐ grandparent ⓑ nephew ⓒ father ⓓ mother

17. She is cheerful. She always gives everyone a welcoming ....
    ⓐ smile ⓑ small ⓒ smell ⓓ spoil

18. "We're so pleased to meet you at last, " he said in a respectful .... of voice.
    ⓐ ton ⓑ tame ⓒ throne ⓓ tone

19. I asked my .... if I could have some time off to go to the dentist.
    ⓐ press ⓑ bossy ⓒ boss ⓓ bossiness

20. Jane's hand on my shoulder woke me from a bad ....
    ⓐ dirt ⓑ damp ⓒ dream ⓓ dram

21. She admitted that she had made a ....
ⓐ wrong ⓑ mistake ⓒ concern ⓓ dance

22. We try to .... our students as adults.
ⓐ treat ⓑ tame ⓒ cure ⓓ threat

23. As a wealthy .... , he couldn't even begin to imagine real poverty.
ⓐ business ⓑ businesswoman ⓒ workman ⓓ businessman

24. What can European companies learn from Japanese .... affairs?
ⓐ business ⓑ businesswoman ⓒ workman ⓓ businessman

25. She showed .... courage when she rescued him from the fire.
ⓐ enormous ⓑ tiny ⓒ small ⓓ whole

26. A good sun.. .... will help prevent sunburn.
ⓐ crane ⓑ claim ⓒ cream ⓓ crime

27. He was angry but managed, with great self-restraint, to .... calmly.
ⓐ reply ⓑ pay ⓒ replay ⓓ repair

28. I'm .... to see you awake - ten minutes ago you were sound asleep.
ⓐ surprising ⓑ interesting ⓒ surprised ⓓ amazing

29. She was .... to see her essay returned with a mass of corrections in red ink.
ⓐ disappointed ⓑ pleased ⓒ pleasure ⓓ disappointing

30. I greatly .... not having told the truth.
ⓐ agreed ⓑ regard ⓒ regress ⓓ regret

31. His mother is one .... woman. She loves offering food to everyone.
ⓐ gender ⓑ generous ⓒ gorgeous ⓓ generosity

32. The way we .... this planet's resources is criminal.
ⓐ invest ⓑ keep ⓒ waste ⓓ solve

33. They've .... eighty guests to the wedding.
ⓐ invented ⓑ moved ⓒ invested ⓓ invited

34. Students need the ability to construct a/an .... argument.
ⓐ logy ⓑ illogical ⓒ logical ⓓ hopeless

35. Taher wasn't .... in the team, as he was injured.
ⓐ contained ⓑ consisted ⓒ included ⓓ appeared

36. Amin was promoted because he proved to be an efficient ....
ⓐ employable ⓑ employment ⓒ employer ⓓ employee

37. Tarek .... the way he treated his school friends. He wishes he had treated ther better.
ⓐ regrets ⓑ hopes ⓒ approves ⓓ reminds

Exercise 3 Synonyms & Antonyms المرادفات والمتضادات

38. The antonym of the word "disappointed" is .... شمال سيناء ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ desirable ⓑ enjoyable ⓒ classified ⓓ satisfied

39. The adjective "generous" can be the opposite to the adjective ....
ⓐ smart ⓑ hospitable ⓒ mean ⓓ obvious

40. The adverb "apparently" is a synonym of the adverb ....
ⓐ really ⓑ mysteriously ⓒ unclearly ⓓ obviously

41. The verb "guess" can be the opposite to the verb ....
ⓐ assure ⓑ improve ⓒ suppose ⓓ support

42. The adjective "cheerful" can be the opposite to the adjective ....
ⓐ disappointed ⓑ hospitable ⓒ mean ⓓ obvious



Ⓓ synonym

43. Beg is a/an .... for plead.

ⓐ opposite ⓑ short ⓒ antonym ⓓ synonym

44. The word terrible is a synonym for ....

ⓐ very bad ⓑ very good ⓒ surprising ⓓ terrific

Exercise 4 Choose two Answers اخـتـر إجابتـيـن

45. The young man seemed disappointed. Disappointed is a synonym for "..........." and "...........". LM

ⓐ depressed ⓑ appointed ⓒ dissatisfied ⓓ worried ⓔ satisfied

46. She started .... social media to talk to her friends after school. LM

ⓐ uses ⓑ using ⓒ to using ⓓ to use ⓔ use

47. My neighbour is generous. Generous" is an antonym for "..........." and "...........". LM

ⓐ mean ⓑ rich ⓒ honest ⓓ miserly ⓔ wealthy

48. I looked sorrowfully at the enormous pile of work left to do. Enormous" is similar in meaning to "..........." and "...........". LM

ⓐ quantity ⓑ small ⓒ huge ⓓ number ⓔ colossal

49. The worker begged the manager to allow him to leave an hour earlier." Begged is opposite in meaning to "..........." and "...........". LM

ⓐ refused ⓑ instructed ⓒ persuaded ⓓ ordered ⓔ let

50. Don't .... your time; try to make full use of it. LM

ⓐ waste ⓑ use ⓒ misuse ⓓ spend ⓔ save

51. Oh! What a terrible dream! Terrible is an antonym for "..........." and "...........". LM

ⓐ delightful ⓑ long ⓒ relaxing ⓓ bad ⓔ unattractive

52. The .... young man dealt with the little child violently. LM

ⓐ generous ⓑ hard-hearted ⓒ young ⓓ cruel ⓔ kind-hearted

53. Instead of forgiving the poor boy, the cruel man decided to .... him. LM

ⓐ sit ⓑ help ⓒ punish ⓓ let ⓔ penalise

Exercise 5 Various Exercises تماريـــن متنوعـــة

54. The government professes to .... about the poor.

ⓐ take ⓑ care ⓒ after ⓓ look

55. Don't shout .... the answer in class, put up your hand.

ⓐ on ⓑ about ⓒ out ⓓ through

56. How much did you .... for your glasses?

ⓐ earn ⓑ pay ⓒ get ⓓ sell

57. If you have a fever you should drink .... of fluids.

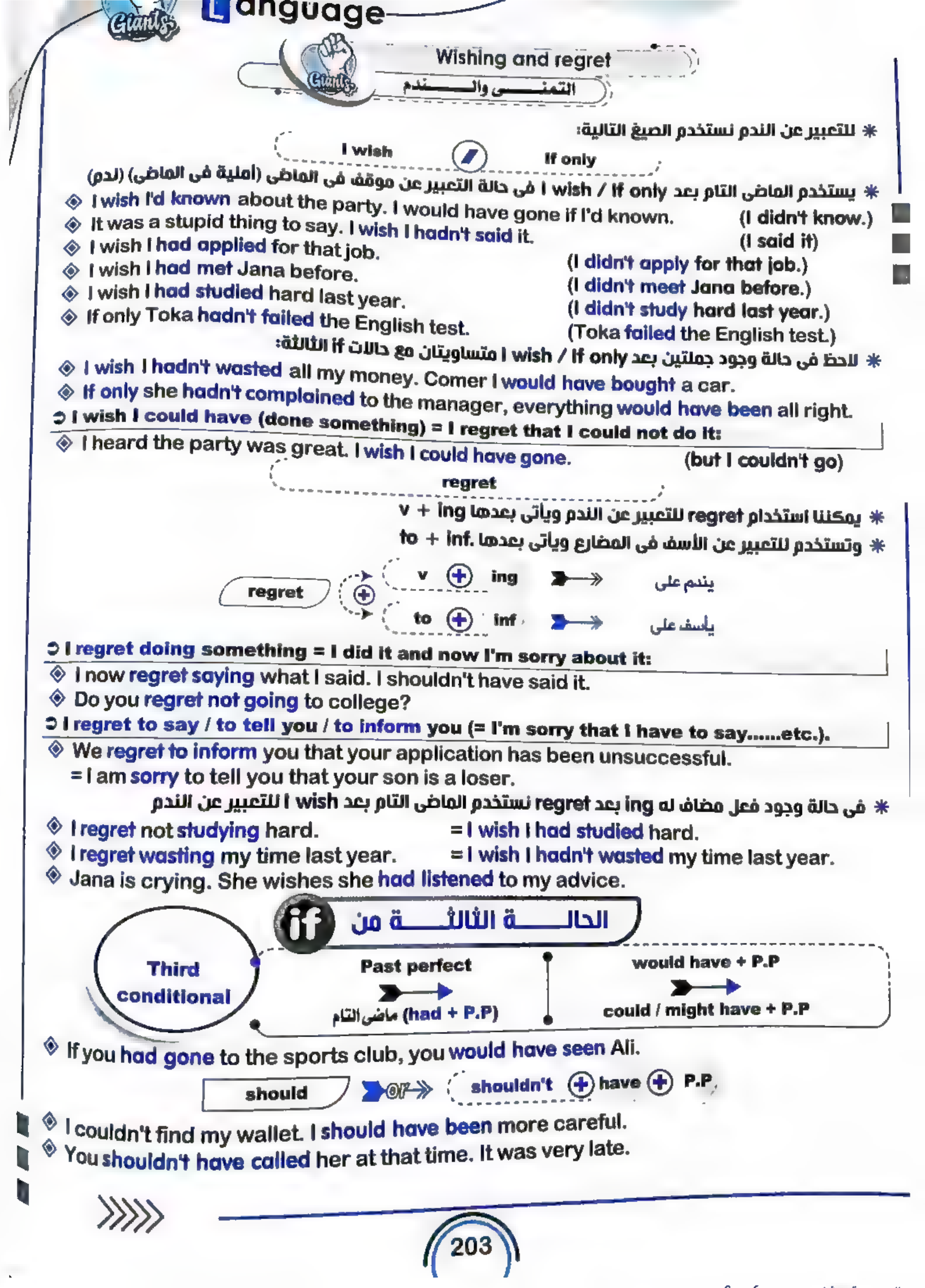
ⓐ penalty ⓑ plenary ⓒ penny ⓓ plenty

58. .... the beginning of the film, a mysterious man appeared to be doing strange things. LM

ⓐ At ⓑ In ⓒ Out ⓓ Away

59. The government .... an interest in people with special needs. LM

ⓐ does ⓑ takes ⓒ appears ⓓ sits



Wishing and regret
التمنـــى والـــنـدم

✳ للتعبير عن الندم نستخدم الصيغ التالية:

I wish / **If only**

✳ يستخدم الماضى التام بعد I wish / If only فى حالة التعبير عن موقف فى الماضى (أمنية فى الماضى) (ندم)

- I wish I'd known about the party. I would have gone if I'd known. (I didn't know.)
- It was a stupid thing to say. I wish I hadn't said it. (I said it)
- I wish I had applied for that job. (I didn't apply for that job.)
- I wish I had met Jana before. (I didn't meet Jana before.)
- I wish I had studied hard last year. (I didn't study hard last year.)
- If only Toka hadn't failed the English test. (Toka failed the English test.)

✳ لاحظ فى حالة وجود جملتين بعد I wish / If only متساويتان مع حالات if الثالثة:

- I wish I hadn't wasted all my money. Comer I would have bought a car.
- If only she hadn't complained to the manager, everything would have been all right.

➲ **I wish I could have (done something) = I regret that I could not do it:**

- I heard the party was great. I wish I could have gone. (but I couldn't go)

regret

✳ يمكننا استخدام regret للتعبير عن الندم ويأتى بعدها v + ing

✳ وتستخدم للتعبير عن الأسف فى المضارع ويأتى بعدها to + inf.

regret + v + ing → يندم على

regret + to + inf → يأسف على

➲ **I regret doing something = I did it and now I'm sorry about it:**

- I now regret saying what I said. I shouldn't have said it.
- Do you regret not going to college?

➲ **I regret to say / to tell you / to inform you (= I'm sorry that I have to say......etc.).**

- We regret to inform you that your application has been unsuccessful.
  = I am sorry to tell you that your son is a loser.

✳ فى حالة وجود فعل مضاف له ing بعد regret نستخدم الماضى التام بعد I wish للتعبير عن الندم

- I regret not studying hard. = I wish I had studied hard.
- I regret wasting my time last year. = I wish I hadn't wasted my time last year.
- Jana is crying. She wishes she had listened to my advice.

if الحالــــة الثالثــــة من

Third conditional

Past perfect → ماضى التام (had + P.P) | would have + P.P → could / might have + P.P

- If you had gone to the sports club, you would have seen Ali.

should or → shouldn't + have + P.P

- I couldn't find my wallet. I should have been more careful.
- You shouldn't have called her at that time. It was very late.



Exercise 1 Longman أسئلة موقع لونجمان

1. Hatem wished he had followed my advice. He .... have read the notes I gave him. LM
   ⓐ needn't ⓑ shouldn't ⓒ should ⓓ must
2. I regret dropping my cup of tea. I wish I........... LM
   ⓐ had been careful ⓑ was careful ⓒ wasn't careless ⓓ hadn't been careful
3. It was a very cold night. I wish it .... that cold. LM
   ⓐ weren't ⓑ hadn't been ⓒ were ⓓ had been
4. I wish I hadn't spent all this money on silly things! This shows: LM
   ⓐ probability ⓑ advice ⓒ regret ⓓ possibility
5. I regret being wasteful; if I .... economical, I .... the cell phone I wanted. LM
   ⓐ weren't / would have
   ⓑ hadn't been / wouldn't have had
   ⓒ am / would have
   ⓓ had been / would have had
6. I wish I had travelled by the express train. This means that I regret .... by the express train. LM
   ⓐ travelling ⓑ not travelling ⓒ not to travel ⓓ for not travelling
7. I .... I pass the exam; I studied really hard. LM
   ⓐ decide ⓑ hope ⓒ wish ⓓ regret
8. I regret not going to the party yesterday. I wish I .... فاقوس / عزبة البرج ٢٠٢٣
   ⓐ had gone ⓑ went ⓒ would go ⓓ could go
9. I .... have eaten so much chocolate! I regret doing that. إدارة زفتى ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ couldn't ⓑ could ⓒ should ⓓ shouldn't
10. I wish I .... much time last night. إدارة أبو حماد ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ don't waste ⓑ didn't waste ⓒ hadn't wasted ⓓ won't waste
11. He feels sorry for insulting her. He wished he .... more polite. LM
    ⓐ has been ⓑ had been ⓒ wasn't ⓓ will be
12. I didn't follow healthy food habits, and now I regret it. Which sentence doesn't give the same meaning? LM
    ⓐ I wish I hadn't neglected healthy food habits.
    ⓑ I should have followed healthy food habits.
    ⓒ I regret neglecting healthy food habits.
    ⓓ I wish I had neglected healthy food habits.

Exercise 2 Giants تمارين كتاب العمالقة

13. I am unable to take photos now. I wish I .... my mobile phone at home.
    ⓐ hadn't forgotten ⓑ won't forget ⓒ haven't forgotten ⓓ didn't forget
14. I regret breaking that mirror. I wish I ....
    ⓐ hadn't been careful ⓑ had been careful ⓒ was careful ⓓ wasn't careless
15. My car broke down again. I wish I .... the engine checked before the trip.
    ⓐ had ⓑ hadn't had ⓒ had had ⓓ didn't have
16. I am short of money. I wish I .... all my money on unnecessary things.
    ⓐ had spent ⓑ hadn't spent ⓒ haven't spent ⓓ don't spend
17. I wish it .... cold last night. I forgot my jacket at the club.
    ⓐ hadn't been ⓑ weren't ⓒ were ⓓ had been

18. I wish I .... better in the last exam.
ⓐ could do ⓑ had done ⓒ did ⓓ would do

19. Amany would have got high marks if she had revised well for the exam. This means that .... well for the exam.
ⓐ she got high marks because she revised
ⓑ she got high marks although she didn't revise
ⓒ she didn't get high marks although she revised
ⓓ she didn't get high marks because she didn't revise

20. I wish she .... this car; it has caused her a lot of trouble.
ⓐ doesn't buy ⓑ won't buy ⓒ didn't buy ⓓ hadn't bought

21. He wishes he hadn't neglected his work. This means that he actually .... his work.
ⓐ can't have neglected ⓑ is still neglecting ⓒ neglected ⓓ had not neglected

22. I regret starting to smoke; I wish I .... smoking.
ⓐ hadn't started ⓑ wouldn't start ⓒ didn't start ⓓ can't start

23. She wished she .... well for the last exam; she couldn't answer many questions.
ⓐ will revise ⓑ revised ⓒ hadn't revised ⓓ had revised

24. Adel travelled to Alex by bus, which wasn't comfortable. He wishes he .... by train.
ⓐ had travelled ⓑ would travel ⓒ travelled ⓓ has travelled

25. Hatim wishes he .... a lot of money when he was younger.
ⓐ could save ⓑ will have saved ⓒ saved ⓓ had saved

26. I didn't follow my father's advice. I wish I .... upon his useful advice.
ⓐ was acted ⓑ would act ⓒ acted ⓓ had acted

27. I wish I were an engineer. Really, I .... an engineer.
ⓐ weren't ⓑ had been ⓒ am not ⓓ must be

28. The shirt I bought was rather expensive. I wish I .... a cheaper one.
ⓐ could buy ⓑ would buy ⓒ had bought ⓓ will buy

29. If only I .... high marks last exam.
ⓐ had had ⓑ have had ⓒ have ⓓ had

30. We wish we .... all our friends last week.
ⓐ saw ⓑ could see ⓒ had seen ⓓ see

31. I wish I .... to the theatre yesterday.
ⓐ had gone ⓑ has gone ⓒ went ⓓ go

32. If only she .... Spanish, we'd be able to communicate.
ⓐ might speak ⓑ could have spoken ⓒ speaks ⓓ could speak

33. She's sorry now. She wishes she .... to my advice.
ⓐ listened ⓑ would listen ⓒ could listen ⓓ had listened

34. Aya is penniless. She wishes she .... spent all her money yesterday.
ⓐ hasn't ⓑ hadn't ⓒ didn't ⓓ doesn't

35. I wish she .... the test successfully last year.
ⓐ would pass ⓑ could pass ⓒ had passed ⓓ passes

36. You shouldn't have made that mistake. I wish you .... making that mistake.
ⓐ will avoid ⓑ avoided ⓒ have avoided ⓓ had avoided

37. What a careless driver! I wish he .... more careful; two children were injured.
ⓐ were ⓑ is ⓒ had been ⓓ could be

38. I wish I .... well. I got bad marks.
ⓐ studied ⓑ could study ⓒ had studied ⓓ study

39. Our school football team lost the final match. I wish we .... it.
ⓐ would win ⓑ could win ⓒ have won ⓓ had won

40. The film was really enjoyable. I wish you .... with us.
ⓐ would be ⓑ could be ⓒ had been ⓓ are

41. If only he .... much yesterday, he wouldn't have had a stomach trouble.
ⓐ didn't eat ⓑ couldn't eat ⓒ won't eat ⓓ hadn't eaten

42. I wish he .... his car last week.
ⓐ wouldn't sell ⓑ hadn't sold ⓒ didn't sell ⓓ couldn't sell

43. I wish I .... at the wedding, but I was in New York.
ⓐ would ⓑ could ⓒ were ⓓ had been

44. It's a pity you said that. If only you .... your mouth shut.
ⓐ had keep ⓑ had kept ⓒ would keep ⓓ hadn't kept

45. It was too late. I wish I .... earlier.
ⓐ had come ⓑ came ⓒ would come ⓓ would have come

46. If only I had enough money, I .... the summer holiday in Greece.
ⓐ will spend ⓑ would have spent ⓒ spend ⓓ would spend

47. If only I .... to you before I bought the car.
ⓐ had listened ⓑ have listened ⓒ listened ⓓ would listen

48. I feel sick I wish I .... so much.
ⓐ had eaten ⓑ wouldn't eat ⓒ wouldn't have eaten ⓓ hadn't eaten

49. I wish I had learnt how to drive, I .... a licence.
ⓐ would have got ⓑ had got ⓒ would get ⓓ will get

50. I wish I .... harder when I had the time.
ⓐ would work ⓑ have worked ⓒ will work ⓓ had worked

51. I wish our team .... the match yesterday.
ⓐ hadn't lost ⓑ wasn't losing ⓒ wouldn't lose ⓓ couldn't lose

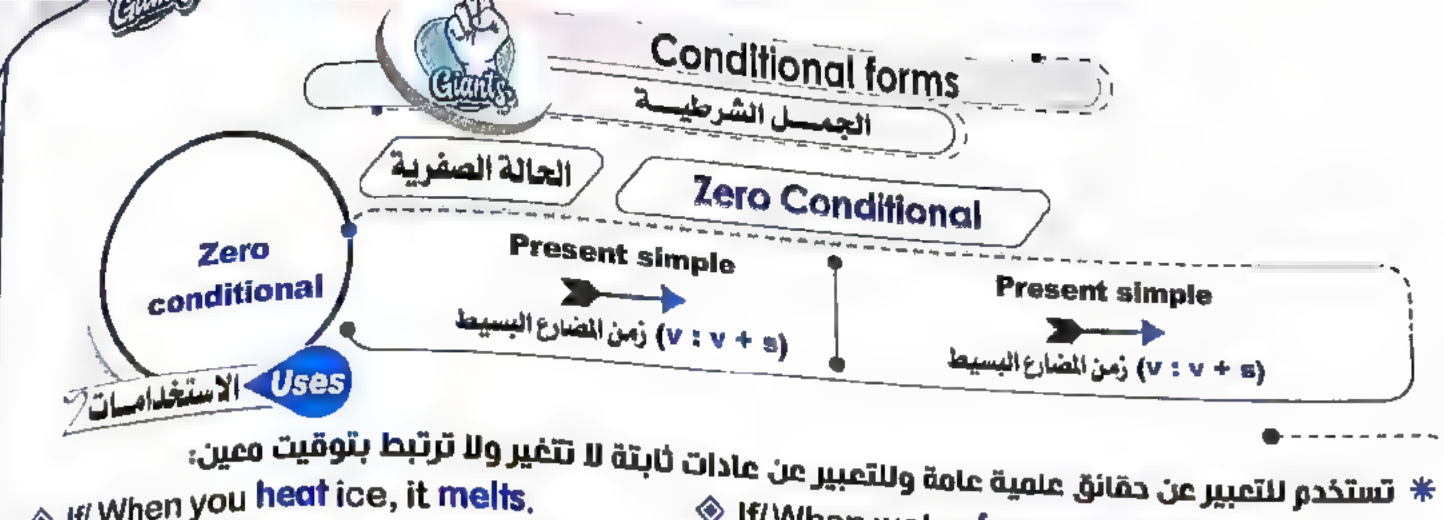
52. If only I .... to Alex during the summer holiday last year.
ⓐ could go ⓑ would go ⓒ went ⓓ had gone

53. I really regret playing football in the street. If only I .... done that.
ⓐ had ⓑ hadn't ⓒ can't ⓓ couldn't

54. I regretted not seeing her off at the airport. I wish I .... done so.
ⓐ were ⓑ was ⓒ had ⓓ have

55. I'm sorry, I didn't bring my camera. I wish I .... it.
ⓐ would bring ⓑ had brought ⓒ brought ⓓ could bring

56. He regretted not attending yesterday's conference. He wished he .... there.
ⓐ would be ⓑ could be ⓒ was ⓓ had been



✳ تستخدم للتعبير عن حقائق علمية عامة وللتعبير عن عادات ثابتة لا تتغير ولا ترتبط بتوقيت معين:

◈ If/ When you **heat** ice, it **melts**.
◈ If/ When water **freezes**, it **turns** into ice.
◈ If/ When I **read** for too long, I **get** a headache.
◈ If/ When our heart **stops** working, death soon **follows**.
◈ If/ When we **mix** white and red, we **get** pink.
◈ If/ When I **read** in bed, I **fall** asleep. It's a **habit**.

✳ لابد أن تكون الحقيقة عامة وليست خاصة وإذا كانت موقف خاص تستخدم الحالة الأولى وتتحول الحقيقة العامة إلى خاصة كما يلي:

❶ استخدام صفة إشارة (this / that / these / those) قبل الفاعل أو المفعول.

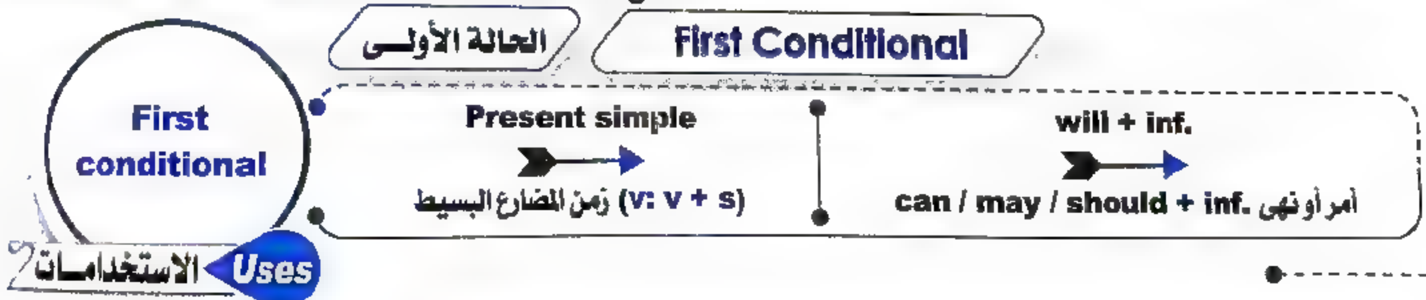
◈ If goats **eat** the bark on a tree, the tree **dies**.
◈ If those goats **eat** the **bark** on a tree, the tree **will die**.

❷ استخدام صفة ملكية (my / his / her / its / your / our / their / ....'s...)

◈ If the plants on **our** farm **get** very thirsty, we **will irrigate** them.

❸ ارتباط حدوث الفعل بمكان محدد أو بتوقيت محدد أو ما يدل على ذلك.

◈ Streets **will become wet** if it **rains** tonight.



✳ تستخدم للتعبير عن إمكانية حقيقية لحدوث شيء في المستقبل تـتوفر شروط حدوثه.

◈ If you **study** hard, you **will succeed**.
◈ If the bus **arrives** late again, **I'll phone** my mother.
◈ Tarek is ill. If he's better tomorrow, he'**ll come** to school.

✳ يمكننا استخدام الأمر أو النهي أو الطلب في جملة جواب الشرط:

◈ If Jana **calls**, **tell** her I am here.
◈ If she **comes** late, **don't allow** her to enter.
◈ If you **have** free time, **can** you help me?

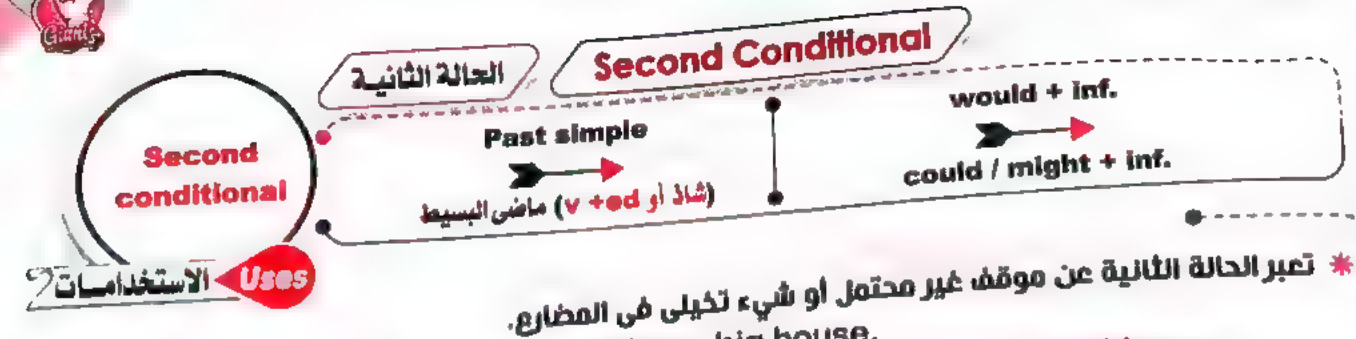
✳ يمكننا استخدام (may) في جملة جواب الشرط للتعبير عن الاحتمال أو (can) للتعبير عن المقدرة:

◈ If Jana **studies** well, she **can get** high marks.
◈ If Seif **looks** at me carefully, he **may recognise** me.

✳ يمكننا استخدام (should) في جملة جواب الشرط للتعبير عن النصيحة أو (have to) للتعبير عن الإلزام.

◈ If you **ask** me, you **should** see a doctor.
◈ If Seif **comes** late, he **has to** apologise.

Second Conditional الحالة الثانية



Uses الاستخدامات

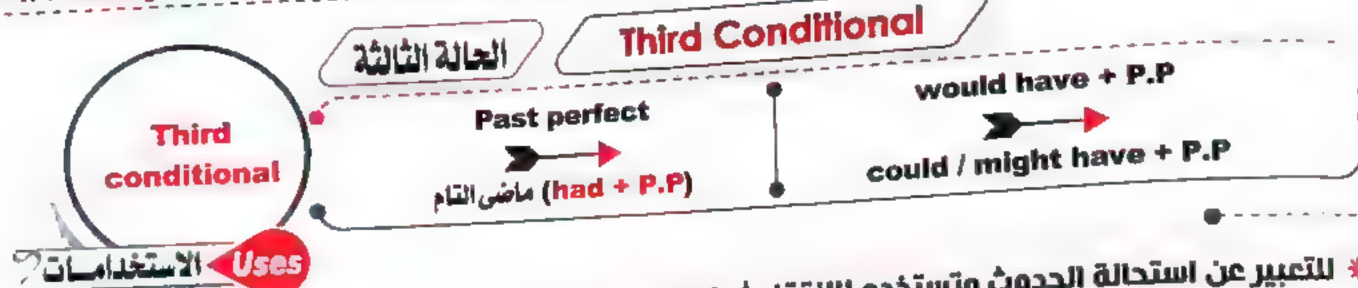
* تعبر الحالة الثانية عن موقف غير محتمل أو شيء تخيلي في المضارع.

◈ If Toka had a million dollars, she would buy a big house.
◈ If I studied hard, I would pass.
◈ If I was / were a bird, I could fly.
◈ If I was / were rich, I would build a palace!
◈ If Egypt had a lot of rain, it might have a lot more trees.

* تستخدم الحالة الثانية أيضا للتعبير عن النصيحة.

◈ If I were you, I'd help poor people.
◈ If I were you, I wouldn't waste my time.
◈ If I were you, I'd read this useful book.

Third Conditional الحالة الثالثة



Uses الاستخدامات

* للتعبير عن استحالة الحدوث وتستخدم للانتقاد أو الندم في الماضي

◈ If you had gone to the sports club, you would / could / might have seen Ali.
◈ If I had had enough money yesterday, I would / could / might have bought that mobile phone.
◈ If Toka had left earlier, she wouldn't have missed the train.

Between lines

❶ يتم حل جمل الاختياري عن طريق النظر إلى الجملة الكاملة سواء كانت جملة فعل الشرط أو جملة جواب الشرط ثم تحديد الحالة من الجملة الكاملة كما يلي:

◈ If she....... up early, she would catch the train.

* الجملة الكاملة هنا جملة جواب الشرط وبها would + inf. وهي تعبر عن الحالة الثانية أي الاختيار الصحيح سوف يكون ماضي بسيط.

◈ If she had read quickly, she .... the competition.

* الجملة الكاملة هنا جملة فعل الشرط و بها had + P.P وهي تعبر عن الحالة الثالثة أي الاختيار الصحيح سوف يكون به would have +P.P.

❷ لاحظ كلمة had فقط تعبر عن الحالة الثانية أما had + P.P تعبر عن الحالة الثالثة:

◈ If she had a car, she would be faster.
◈ If she had visited Luxor, she would have enjoyed.

❸ لاحظ كلمة would have فقط تعبر عن الحالة الثانية أما would have + P.P تعبر عن الحالة الثالثة:

◈ If she started saving, she would have a big sum of money.
◈ If she had started saving, she would have had a big sum of money.

❹ لاحظ الجمل التالية:

◈ If he had written work, he....... them.
(published - will publish - would publish - would have published)

* هذه الجملة الحالة الثانية رغم وجود had written وذلك بسبب أن كلمة written هنا صفة مع كلمة work بمعنى عمل مكتوب وليست تصريف ثالث بعد had

◈ If the novel he had, ...exciting, I would have read it. (had - had had - had been - been)

* هذه الجملة الحالة الثالثة وسوف نختار had been رغم وجود كلمة had بالجملة إلا أنها تتبع الفاعل.



Exercise 1 from Tests أسئلة امتحانات الإدارات

1. If he read this book, he ………… a lot of information. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ will get ⓑ would get ⓒ would have got ⓓ gets
2. What ………… if plants aren't watered regularly ? إدارة نقادة ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ happen ⓑ happens ⓒ would happen ⓓ would have happened
3. If they ………… me a good salary, I would have accepted the job. إدارة زفتى ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ offer ⓑ offered ⓒ had offered ⓓ hadn't offered
4. Water freezes if the temperature ………… zero or below. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ was ⓑ will be ⓒ had been ⓓ is
5. If he ………… with us, he could have a good time. المنيا ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ had come ⓑ came ⓒ has come ⓓ comes
6. Who ………… him, if he put himself in a dangerous situation? الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ helps ⓑ will help ⓒ would have helped ⓓ would help
7. If I ………… him tomorrow, I'd talk to him about your problem. الجيزة ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ meet ⓑ will meet ⓒ met ⓓ have met
8. What ………… he do if he hurt himself? إدارة عزبة البرج ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ will ⓑ would ⓒ can ⓓ shall
9. If the Moroccan football team hadn't played well, they ………… great success. إدارة إسنا ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ would achieve ⓑ wouldn't achieve
   ⓒ would have achieved ⓓ wouldn't have achieved
10. If I had enough money, I ………… a good car. إدارة أبو حماد ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ will buy ⓑ would buy ⓒ would have bought ⓓ would be bough
11. ………… Tom answer all the questions correctly if he read the passage once? إدارة إسنا ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ Would ⓑ Did ⓒ Will ⓓ Does
12. If he ………… with us, he could have a good time. إدارة دشنا ٢٠٢٢
    ⓐ had come ⓑ came ⓒ has come ⓓ comes

Exercise 2 Longman أسئلة موقع لونجمان

13. If he ………… harder, he ………… his work on time. LM
    ⓐ works /would have finished ⓑ work/ finished
    ⓒ works / can finish ⓓ works /can be finished
14. Ice ………… if it gets hot. LM
    ⓐ is melting ⓑ won't met ⓒ melt ⓓ melts
15. What ………… if you ………… in my situation yesterday? LM
    ⓐ should you have done / are ⓑ will you do / are
    ⓒ have you done / had been ⓓ would you have done / had been
16. He would have visited a lot of historic places if the holiday he had ………… longer. LM
    ⓐ had ⓑ had been ⓒ had had ⓓ has had
17. If Rami had listened more carefully to the instructions, he ………… that mistake. LM
    ⓐ wouldn't have made ⓑ would have made ⓒ didn't make ⓓ isn't making
18. If you add black to white, you ………… grey. LM
    ⓐ will be getting ⓑ gets ⓒ will get ⓓ get
19. If I hadn't been ill, I'd have worked harder. This means that I ………… harder because I ………… ill. LM
    ⓐ hadn't worked / was ⓑ didn't work / was
    ⓒ didn't work / am ⓓ had worked / had been

20. If it........... heavily last night, the traffic........... much better.
ⓐ didn't rain / will be
ⓑ hadn't been rained / would have been
ⓒ hadn't rained / would have been
ⓓ has rained / would have been

21. If I........... a lot of money, I would have the chance to help the poor people in my area.
ⓐ had ⓑ hadn't had ⓒ have had ⓓ have

22. If I were rich, I would help you. This means that I........... rich.
ⓐ am ⓑ am not ⓒ was ⓓ wasn't

23. She would have failed if it.....for my support. So, she appreciated my help very much.
ⓐ had been ⓑ hadn't been ⓒ isn't ⓓ were

24. If our garden........... after, trees would have grown better.
ⓐ had been looked ⓑ had looked ⓒ wasn't looked ⓓ is being looked

25. If you wake up before me, ... breakfast?
ⓐ did you prepare
ⓑ will you prepare
ⓒ will you be prepared
ⓓ would you have prepared

26. If he finished the job on time, he wouldn't he...........?
ⓐ wouldn't be ignored
ⓑ could be honoured
ⓒ might be thanked
ⓓ would be rewarded

Exercise 3 Giants تمارين كتاب العمالقة

27. If I........... a lot of money, I would surely build a hospital in my area.
ⓐ have ⓑ have had ⓒ hadn't had ⓓ had

28. If Rami had thought of what to buy carefully, he........... his money.
ⓐ isn't wasting ⓑ didn't waste ⓒ would have wasted ⓓ wouldn't have wasted

29. What........... have done if you had been in my situation?
ⓐ would you ⓑ did you ⓒ will you ⓓ must you

30. I........... the coffee more if you had put less sugar in it.
ⓐ would be liked ⓑ wouldn't have like ⓒ would have liked ⓓ had liked

31. If I had more Eid cookies, I........... them with my next-door neighbours.
ⓐ should have shared ⓑ shared ⓒ must share ⓓ would share

32. He........... as the best singer if he were more talented.
ⓐ would have been chosen
ⓑ would have chosen
ⓒ wouldn't be chosen
ⓓ would be chosen

33. What if you........... your passport last night? You really need to be more careful!
ⓐ don't find ⓑ haven't found ⓒ hadn't found ⓓ wouldn't have found

34. If you throw a piece of rock into water, it........... .
ⓐ sink ⓑ sank ⓒ will sink ⓓ sinks

35. She would have failed if it........... for my support. So she appreciated my help very much.
ⓐ were ⓑ isn't ⓒ hadn't been ⓓ had been

36. He would have visited a lot of historic places if the holiday........... longer.
ⓐ has had ⓑ had had ⓒ had been ⓓ had

37. If I........... wise, I would have saved money and bought the cell phone I wanted.
ⓐ weren't ⓑ hadn't been ⓒ were ⓓ had been

38. My mother always has a bad reaction if she........... honey.
ⓐ eats ⓑ will have ⓒ have ⓓ had

39. If you post that picture of Amir, he........... angry for sure.
ⓐ would have got ⓑ would get ⓒ gets ⓓ will get

40. My brother would have been a doctor if he........... his exams.
ⓐ passed ⓑ would pass ⓒ had passed ⓓ pass

41. I always........... a severe headache if I spend much time on the computer.
ⓐ will get ⓑ got ⓒ am getting ⓓ get

42. If it freezes tonight, we .... heaters out around the orange trees.
ⓐ places ⓑ place ⓒ are placing ⓓ will place

43. If I .... rich, I'd buy a big car.
ⓐ am ⓑ had ⓒ will ⓓ were

44. If I .... strong, I'd beat you at running.
ⓐ am ⓑ were ⓒ have been ⓓ had been

45. If you had come five minutes later, I ....
ⓐ would have left ⓑ would leave ⓒ will leave ⓓ leave

46. If you face a problem, ... the police.
ⓐ will call ⓑ would call ⓒ call ⓓ can call

47. If she trains hard, she .... next week's race.
ⓐ wins ⓑ will win ⓒ would win ⓓ won

48. If it .... an eclipse, the sky would have gone dark.
ⓐ had been ⓑ was ⓒ would be ⓓ is

49. If I .... you, I would do research into new kinds of wheat.
ⓐ am ⓑ were ⓒ is ⓓ had been

50. If I .... a taxi, I'd have arrived on time.
ⓐ have taken ⓑ took ⓒ had taken ⓓ take

51. If you can't dictate your conditions, you .... negotiate.
ⓐ will ⓑ should ⓒ need ⓓ ought

52. I would have that mobile if I .... enough money.
ⓐ had had ⓑ had ⓒ have had ⓓ would have

53. What .... if you got lost in a big city?
ⓐ you would do ⓑ did you do ⓒ would you do ⓓ you did

54. What if your passport .... ? - Surely, I'd inform the police.
ⓐ had stolen ⓑ had been stolen ⓒ stole ⓓ was stolen

55. Iron .... if you leave it in the open air.
ⓐ rust ⓑ will rust ⓒ rusts ⓓ would rust

56. Contact the ambulance if there .... an accident.
ⓐ was ⓑ is ⓒ were ⓓ will be

57. If it's a dry year, the rings .... narrower.
ⓐ be ⓑ will be ⓒ are ⓓ have been

58. If I were not ill, I'd visit you; really I .... ill.
ⓐ weren't ⓑ were ⓒ am ⓓ am not

59. I will go to Alex. If so, I .... you.
ⓐ contact ⓑ will be contacted ⓒ will contact ⓓ would contact

60. .... help me if I were in trouble?
ⓐ Will you ⓑ Would you ⓒ Did you ⓓ Can you

61. If you .... more careful, you would have minimized your mistakes.
ⓐ had been ⓑ were ⓒ had ⓓ had had

62. I .... go to the club if I have time. I haven't decided yet.
ⓐ would ⓑ may ⓒ should ⓓ have to

63. If she read the news, she .... shocked to read about the terrible accident.
ⓐ is ⓑ will be ⓒ would be ⓓ were

64. If the problem .... well, we would have reached a reasonable solution.
ⓐ discussed ⓑ was discussed ⓒ had discussed ⓓ had been discussed

65. She won't mind if I .... early, will she?
ⓐ had left ⓑ will leave ⓒ would leave ⓓ leave

66. If you watch too much television, you .... your eyes.
ⓐ will damage ⓑ would damage ⓒ won't damage ⓓ would have damaged

67. If you .... red and green paint, you get brown paint.
ⓐ mixed ⓑ will mix ⓒ had mixed ⓓ mix

68. If Ahmed had read that book, he .... what happened at the end.
ⓐ knew ⓑ will know ⓒ would know ⓓ would have known

69. If the books hadn't been so expensive, I .... some.
ⓐ would buy ⓑ would have bought ⓒ bought ⓓ had bought

70. If you want to come first, it .... necessary to exert more efforts.
ⓐ is ⓑ was ⓒ would ⓓ will

71. I wouldn't have met Hassan if I .... at home.
ⓐ stayed ⓑ will stay ⓒ would stay ⓓ had stayed

72. If he .... thirsty, he would have drunk some water.
ⓐ had had ⓑ had been ⓒ were ⓓ was

73. I .... it very much if they gave the job to Ali.
ⓐ don't like ⓑ didn't like ⓒ won't like ⓓ wouldn't like

74. If I were with them, I .... stop the fight.
ⓐ will ⓑ may ⓒ could ⓓ can

75. I'd have told you the news sooner if I .... you.
ⓐ saw ⓑ will see ⓒ would see ⓓ had seen

76. If the weather .... fine tomorrow, we'll go camping.
ⓐ will be ⓑ is ⓒ was ⓓ has

77. I .... you all about it if you had the time.
ⓐ tell ⓑ told ⓒ would tell ⓓ will tell

78. I would have closed the window if it .... cold.
ⓐ were ⓑ was been ⓒ had being ⓓ had been

79. If I .... mistaken, I will apologize to her.
ⓐ was ⓑ were ⓒ am ⓓ had been

80. She .... better leave now if she wants to catch the train.
ⓐ will ⓑ would ⓒ could ⓓ had

81. I'll never get here on time if I .... the train.
ⓐ take ⓑ took ⓒ will take ⓓ would take

82. If the bark of a tree ...., the tree dies.
ⓐ was destroyed ⓑ destroyed ⓒ destroys ⓓ is destroyed

83. If water freezes, it .... into ice.
ⓐ will turn ⓑ turns ⓒ would turn ⓓ turned

84. Butter .... if you leave it out in the sun.
ⓐ melts ⓑ will melt ⓒ would melt ⓓ had melted

85. I wouldn't get so angry with you if you .... more work done.
ⓐ get ⓑ got ⓒ would get ⓓ had got

86. If he read the story, ... he give it to me?
ⓐ will ⓑ does ⓒ would ⓓ would have

87. If the money I had, ... enough, I'd have bought a new house.
ⓐ had ⓑ had been ⓒ been ⓓ were

88. If he arrived early, ... catch the metro?
ⓐ he would ⓑ would he ⓒ he will ⓓ will he

89. If he .... the papers, he would find a lot of job advertisements.
ⓐ read ⓑ reads ⓒ had read ⓓ would read

90. If he ...., he would have gone to the party.
ⓐ had invited ⓑ was invited ⓒ had been invited ⓓ were invited

91. He will visit you if he .... time.
ⓐ has ⓑ had ⓒ had had ⓓ will have





Learning from our mistakes



Key Vocabulary

hang out with	يقضي وقت مع	keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال بـ	fall out	يقاطع / يتشاجر
bring back	يُعيد ذكرى / يُذكر	lose touch with	ينقطع الاتصال بـ	apparently (adv)	من الواضح / ظاهرياً
get into	يستمتع بـ / يألف	get along / on with	ينسجم مع	caption (n)	شرح / عنوان لمقال

Main Vocabulary

honest (adj)	أمين	feedback (n)	التغذية الراجعة	organise (v)	ينظم
wear (v)	يرتدي	guess (v)	يخمن	own (v)	يمتلك
close (adj)	قريب / مقرب	ignore (v)	يتجاهل	pocket (n)	جيب
conversation (n)	محادثة	improve (v)	يحسن	polite (adj)	مؤدب
friendship (n)	صداقة	leader (n)	قائد	pretty (adj)	جميلة
chat (v/n)	يدردش / دردشة	mall (n)	مركز تجارى / مول	prompt (adj)	مثير / محفز / عاجل
prep school (n)	مدرسة إعدادى	memory (n)	ذاكرة / ذكري	relation (n)	علاقة
argue (v)	يجادل	necklace (n)	قلادة	relationship (n)	علاقة
continue (v)	يستمر	opposite (n)	عكس / مقابل	reunion (n)	لم الشمل
damage (v)	يدمر / يُتلف	kind (n/adj)	عطوف / نوع	uncomfortable (adj)	غير مريح
hang (v)	يعلق	laugh (v)	يضحك	together (adv)	معاً
share (v)	يشارك			interest (n)	اهتمام

King Lear

philosopher (n)	فيلسوف	lightning (n)	برق
straw (n)	قش	mice (n)	فئران
torch (n)	كشاف	hut (n)	كوخ
hard-hearted (adj)	قاسي القلب	try walking in...shoes	يحاول أن يضع نفسه مكان
forgive - forgave - forgiven (v)	يسامح	rise - rose - risen (v)	ينهض / يرتفع
homeless (adj)	مشرد / بلا مأوى	force (v/n)	يُجبر / قوة / سلطة

Synonym & Antonym

word	meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym العكس
guess	يخمن / يظن	suppose / think	assure / prove
apparently	بوضوح	clearly / obviously	mysteriously / unclearly
hard-hearted	قاسي القلب	cruel / heartless	kind-hearted / charitable
forgive	يسامح	pardon / excuse	penalize / punish



Prepositions

communicate with	يتواصل مع
move away	يبتعد
thank for	يشكر ... على
get on with	ينسجم مع
argue with	يتجادل مع
donate... to	يتبرع لـ

pick up	يلتقط / يتناول
feel about	يشعر تجاه
according to	طبقا لـ
interested in	مهتم بـ
continue to	يستمر في
go past	يمر بـ / يجتاز

Expressions & Idioms

as usual	كالمعتاد
keep / get in touch with	يبقى على الاتصال مع
lose touch with	يفقد الاتصال مع
make friends online	يُكون صداقات على الإنترنت
feel ignored and upset	يشعر بالتجاهل والاستياء
take an interest in	يُظهر اهتمامًا بـ

feel uncomfortable with	يشعر بعدم الارتياح
get worse	يزداد سوء
keep attention on	يظل منتبهاً لـ
pay attention to	يُركز انتباهه على / يُصغي إلى
draw someone's attention	يسترعي انتباهه / يُنبه إلى
go (do the) shopping	يذهب للتسوق / يقوم بالتسوق

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
ignore	يتجاهل	ignorance	جهل	ignorant	جاهل
touch	يلمس	touch	لمس / تلامس	touched	متأثر / ممسوس
attend	يحضر / يرعى / يهتم بـ	attention	انتباه / اهتمام	attentive	منتبه / مُصغٍ
communicate	يتواصل	communication	تواصل	communicative	صريح

Definitions

bring back	يعيد ذكرى	to make somebody remember something or think about it
fall out	يقاطع	stop being friendly with somebody
get into	يستمتع بـ / يهتم بـ	start enjoying
get on with	ينسجم مع	be friendly with
hang out with	يقضي وقت مع	spend time with
keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع	continue to communicate with
lose touch with	يفقد اتصال مع	stop communicating with



Language Notes

Notice the Difference

own	يملك	⊃	owe	يدين
reward	مكافأة / يكافئ	⊃	award	جائزة / يمنح جائزة
online	على النت	⊃	offline	غير موصل بالانترنت
trust	يثق	⊃	truth	حقيقة
remember	يتذكر	⊃	remind	يذكر

quiet, quite & quit

quiet	هادئ	▸ Keep **quiet**! The baby is asleep.
quite	إلى حد ما / تماما	▸ The exam is **quite** difficult.
quit	يترك / يغادر / يستقيل	▸ I'll **quit** this game. It's boring.

other, another & others

another	آخر (مفرد)	▸ Would you give me **another** chance, please?
other + اسم جمع	آخر	▸ Some students are from the city while **other** students come from villages.
others	آخرون	▸ Some students are from the city while **others** are from villages.
the other	الآخر	▸ Here's one book. Where's the **other** one?

make / let / allow / force

- فاعل + make - let + مفعول + Inf. → مصدر
- مفعول + V. be + made - allowed + to → مصدر (المبني للمجهول)
- فاعل + allow / force / cause + مفعول + to. + مصدر

◈ Toka **makes** Jana **tidy** her room.
◈ Ali **let** me **go**.
◈ My teacher always **causes** me **to study** hard.
◈ Jana **is made to tidy** her room.
◈ Ali **allowed** me **to** go.

take (took) + فترة زمنية + to + مصدر **or** spend (spent) + فترة زمنية + v + ing

◈ He **took** three hours **to study** his lessons.
◈ He **spent** three hours **studying** his lessons.

look forward to + n. / V. + ing → يتطلع إلى

◈ I **look forward to my summer** holiday.
◈ I **look forward to visiting** London.







Judy

Huda was my best friend. We'd always hang out together at school. We made each other laugh a lot and we were very close. Sometimes, we'd hang out together after school as well. We'd listen to music, look at magazines and chat for hours.

One weekend, we went shopping at the mall. We had a great time as usual, but that was when she showed me her new smartphone.

Apparently, it was a really good phone and Huda couldn't stop using it all the time. She got really into social media and made lots of new friends online.

How are your friendships?

Have you ever met a friend to spend time with them and, when you're in the middle of a conversation, when you're talking they start looking at their phone? When that happens, many people feel ignored and upset. And the problem may be getting worse because over 81% of Egyptian teenagers between the ages of 15 and 17 now own a phone.

Studies have shown that just having a mobile phone out while having a conversation makes friends feel uncomfortable with each other. Any many people think that when someone is using their phone, they are not being polite and not really listening. So, using a phone like this can damage even good friendships.



However, there are ways to have a phone without losing your friends. Understanding the problem is important. So, the next time you are going to pick up your phone while talking to a friend, think about what you are doing and stop. Is your phone really more important than your friend? Perhaps you should keep your attention on the person you are talking to. And if a friend ignores you, tell them about it because they may not understand how it makes you feel.

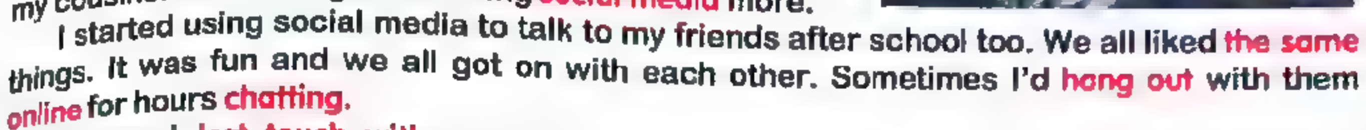
So, if you want to be a kind and honest friend, keep your phone in your pocket and your eyes on your friendship.



Presenter

In today's show, we're going back in time and looking at some of our regrets. Now I've got a message from Tarek. And Tarek has a story that, I think, will bring back memories for many of us. This is what he says ....

I used to talk to my family and play with my brothers after school! I also used to phone my grandparents and my cousins. But then I got into using social media more.



I started using social media to talk to my friends after school too. We all liked the same things. It was fun and we all got on with each other. Sometimes I'd hang out with them online for hours chatting.

I guess I lost touch with my cousins and my grandparents a bit. I still saw them sometimes, of course, but I didn't call them. I didn't tell my grandparents about my day at school.

But when my friends started falling out with each other online, I stopped chatting with them, too. Now, I'm sorry, I shouldn't have ignored my family. I wish I'd kept in touch with my cousins more. I should have called my grandparents, and I wish I could change what happened.

Sadly, this kind of thing seems to happen so often these days. I guess, when we're getting into something new, we can forget to take an interest in the people who really care about us.

Thank you for sharing your story with us,

Tarek

Prep School Memories

Hoda Hey Lamia! Have you seen this from Ola? She's posted some old photos from when we were in prep school.

Lamia Really? Let's see. But, I don't remember an Ola in our class.

Hoda Yes, you do. She used to sit opposite you in class and you would always fall out when we played any game together because you both wanted to be the leaders.

Lamia Ahhh, yes. I remember now. I shouldn't have argued with her so much because she was a kind person really.

Hoda Look. Here she is in the photo.

Lamia Ahh, wow!

Hoda .....and look at us! Oh, no way! Just look at your hair!

Lamia Oh, that's terrible! And what about your dress!

Hoda Oh, no! Not that dress! It brings back so many bad memories. That was the dress I was wearing when I lost my favourite necklace. I wish I hadn't taken it to school that day.

Lamia But the necklace was very pretty and if you hadn't taken it to school, Samira wouldn't have spoken to you about it and you two wouldn't have got on so well!

Hoda That's true! I guess, and we are still very good friends now.

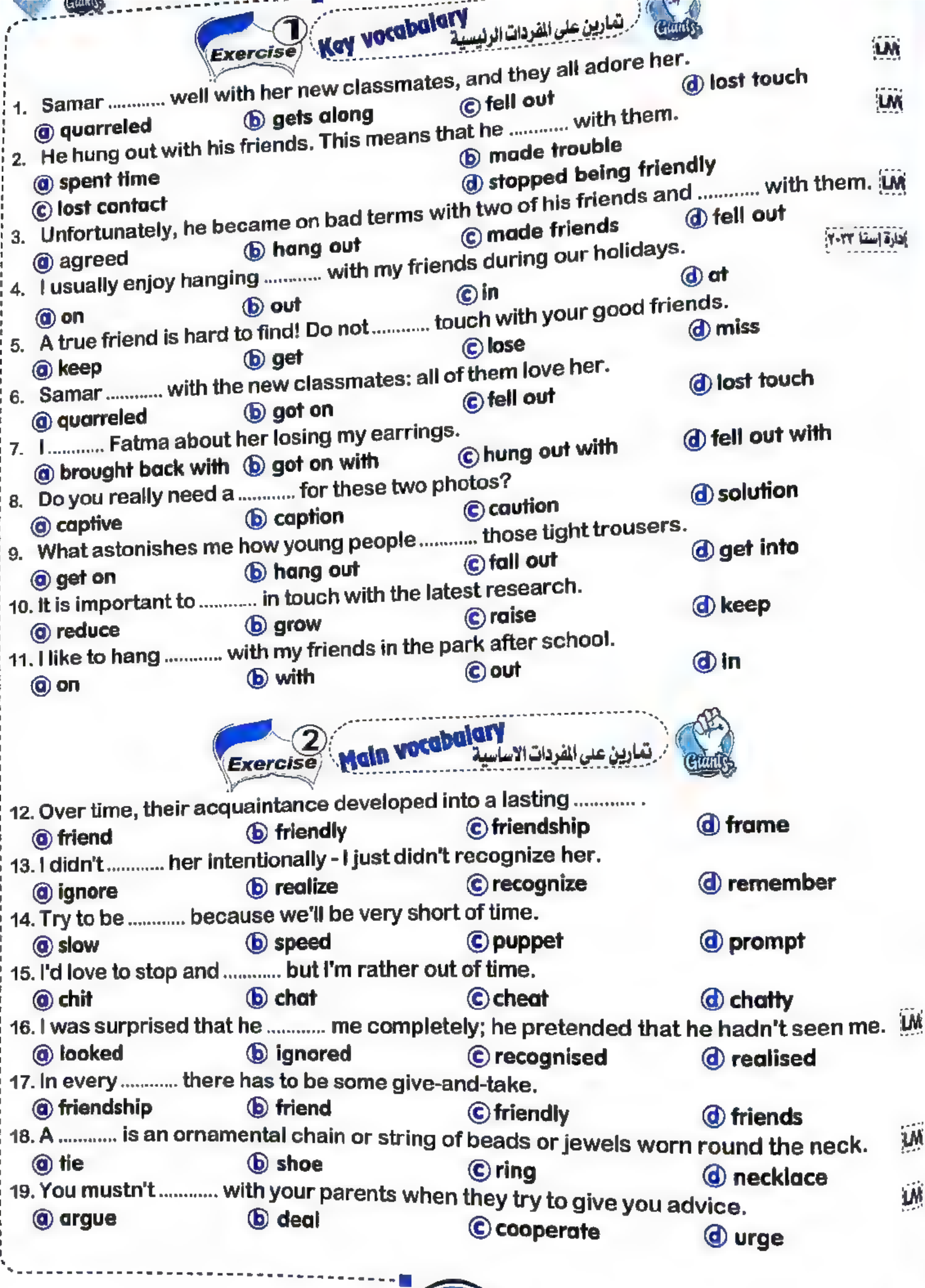
Lamia And look! There's the old group of friends we used to hang out with. I was sad when they moved away to go to high school and really wish we hadn't lost touch with them.

Hoda Yes, we had some great times together and if we had stayed in touch, we would have been able to organise a school reunion. I wish we hadn't left prep school! We had a lot less homework!

Lamia That's true! Perhaps we can keep in touch with them on social media.

Hoda Good idea! Let's post a message asking if anyone knows anything about them.





Exercise 1 Key vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الرئيسية

1. Samar .... well with her new classmates, and they all adore her. LM
   ⓐ quarreled ⓑ gets along ⓒ fell out ⓓ lost touch
2. He hung out with his friends. This means that he .... with them. LM
   ⓐ spent time ⓑ made trouble ⓒ lost contact ⓓ stopped being friendly
3. Unfortunately, he became on bad terms with two of his friends and .... with them. LM
   ⓐ agreed ⓑ hang out ⓒ made friends ⓓ fell out
4. I usually enjoy hanging .... with my friends during our holidays. إدارة إسنا ٢٠٢٣
   ⓐ on ⓑ out ⓒ in ⓓ at
5. A true friend is hard to find! Do not .... touch with your good friends.
   ⓐ keep ⓑ get ⓒ lose ⓓ miss
6. Samar .... with the new classmates: all of them love her.
   ⓐ quarreled ⓑ got on ⓒ fell out ⓓ lost touch
7. I .... Fatma about her losing my earrings.
   ⓐ brought back with ⓑ got on with ⓒ hung out with ⓓ fell out with
8. Do you really need a .... for these two photos?
   ⓐ captive ⓑ caption ⓒ caution ⓓ solution
9. What astonishes me how young people .... those tight trousers.
   ⓐ get on ⓑ hang out ⓒ fall out ⓓ get into
10. It is important to .... in touch with the latest research.
   ⓐ reduce ⓑ grow ⓒ raise ⓓ keep
11. I like to hang .... with my friends in the park after school.
   ⓐ on ⓑ with ⓒ out ⓓ in

Exercise 2 Main vocabulary تمارين على المفردات الاساسية

12. Over time, their acquaintance developed into a lasting ....
   ⓐ friend ⓑ friendly ⓒ friendship ⓓ frame
13. I didn't .... her intentionally - I just didn't recognize her.
   ⓐ ignore ⓑ realize ⓒ recognize ⓓ remember
14. Try to be .... because we'll be very short of time.
   ⓐ slow ⓑ speed ⓒ puppet ⓓ prompt
15. I'd love to stop and .... but I'm rather out of time.
   ⓐ chit ⓑ chat ⓒ cheat ⓓ chatty
16. I was surprised that he .... me completely; he pretended that he hadn't seen me. LM
   ⓐ looked ⓑ ignored ⓒ recognised ⓓ realised
17. In every .... there has to be some give-and-take.
   ⓐ friendship ⓑ friend ⓒ friendly ⓓ friends
18. A .... is an ornamental chain or string of beads or jewels worn round the neck. LM
   ⓐ tie ⓑ shoe ⓒ ring ⓓ necklace
19. You mustn't .... with your parents when they try to give you advice. LM
   ⓐ argue ⓑ deal ⓒ cooperate ⓓ urge

Exercise 4 Various Exercises تماريـــــن منوعـــــة

20. I saw that someone is offering a .... for finding a lost mobile phone.
ⓐ profit ⓑ assistant ⓒ prize ⓓ reward

21. She's not especially .... in sport.
ⓐ interest ⓑ interesting ⓒ entered ⓓ interested

22. I can't .... the kettle up - the handle's too hot.
ⓐ pick ⓑ pack ⓒ pile ⓓ pole

23. My mother usually .... the shopping at the weekend. LM
ⓐ goes ⓑ does ⓒ makes ⓓ sits

24. The teacher suddenly spoke up to .... the student's attention to important points. إدارة العجمى ٢٠٢٢
ⓐ peel ⓑ pay ⓒ draw ⓓ vary

Exercise 5 King Lear تمارين على الملك لير

25. My parents usually .... me whenever I make a mistake, and give me advice how to do things better next time.
ⓐ fire ⓑ kill ⓒ forgive ⓓ forget

26. This cave is very dark. Does anyone have a .... ?
ⓐ sword ⓑ post ⓒ torch ⓓ frown

27. He still hasn't .... me for what I did.
ⓐ given ⓑ forgiven ⓒ taken ⓓ forehead

28. We spent the night in a flimsy wooden ....
ⓐ hunt ⓑ coat ⓒ hut ⓓ cut

29. The calf was sitting, quite still, on bed of ....
ⓐ steward ⓑ straw ⓒ sorrow ⓓ stove

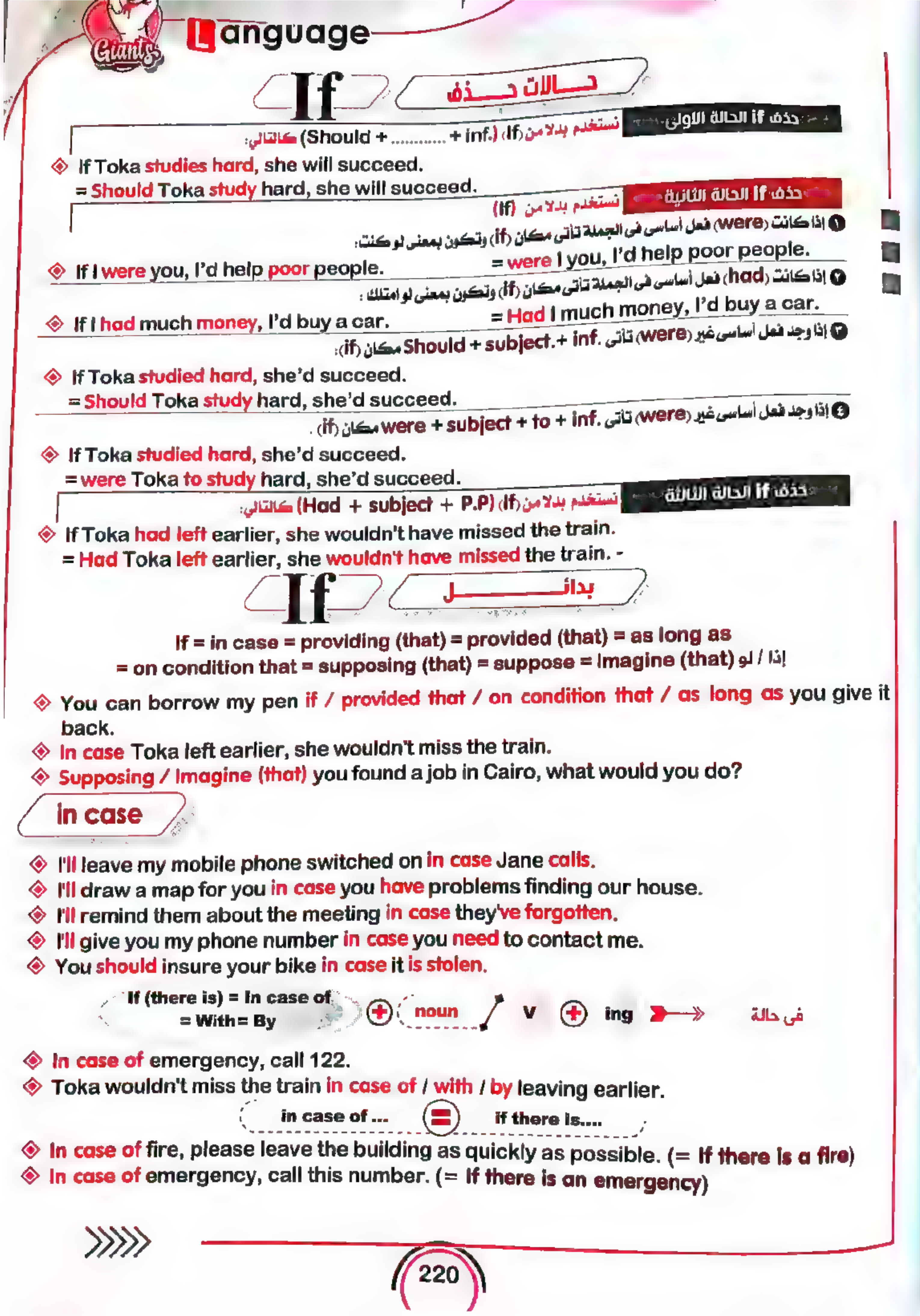
30. What time does the moon .... ?
ⓐ raise ⓑ rise ⓒ arise ⓓ arouse

31. This was a company that had .... from the dead.
ⓐ risen ⓑ raised ⓒ aroused ⓓ rose

32. Temperatures rarely .... above 50.
ⓐ arouse ⓑ arise ⓒ raise ⓓ rise

33. The young man is very kind and he is good .... his parents. LM
ⓐ by ⓑ from ⓒ to ⓓ at





حالات حذف If

حذف if الحالة الأولى

نستخدم بدلا من (If) (Should + ... + inf.) كالتالي:

- If Toka studies hard, she will succeed.
  = Should Toka study hard, she will succeed.

حذف If الحالة الثانية

نستخدم بدلا من (If)

❶ إذا كانت (were) فعل أساسى فى الجملة تأتى مكان (if) وتكون بمعنى لو كنت:

- If I were you, I'd help poor people. = were I you, I'd help poor people.

❷ إذا كانت (had) فعل أساسى فى الجملة تأتى مكان (if) وتكون بمعنى لو امتلك :

- If I had much money, I'd buy a car. = Had I much money, I'd buy a car.

❸ إذا وجد فعل أساسى غير (were) تأتى Should + subject.+ inf. مكان (if):

- If Toka studied hard, she'd succeed.
  = Should Toka study hard, she'd succeed.

❹ إذا وجد فعل أساسى غير (were) تأتى were + subject + to + inf. مكان (if).

- If Toka studied hard, she'd succeed.
  = were Toka to study hard, she'd succeed.

حذف If الحالة الثالثة

نستخدم بدلا من (If) (Had + subject + P.P) كالتالي:

- If Toka had left earlier, she wouldn't have missed the train.
  = Had Toka left earlier, she wouldn't have missed the train. -

بدائل If

If = in case = providing (that) = provided (that) = as long as
= on condition that = supposing (that) = suppose = Imagine (that) إذا / لو

- You can borrow my pen if / provided that / on condition that / as long as you give it back.
- In case Toka left earlier, she wouldn't miss the train.
- Supposing / Imagine (that) you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?

in case

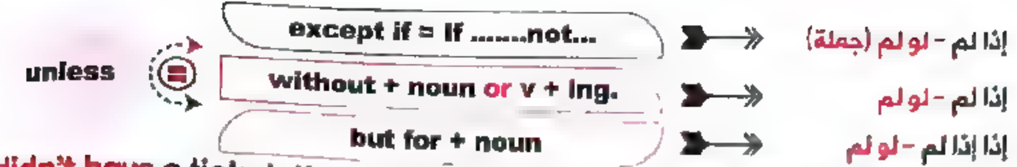
- I'll leave my mobile phone switched on in case Jane calls.
- I'll draw a map for you in case you have problems finding our house.
- I'll remind them about the meeting in case they've forgotten.
- I'll give you my phone number in case you need to contact me.
- You should insure your bike in case it is stolen.

If (there is) = In case of = With = By + noun / V + ing ⟶ فى حالة

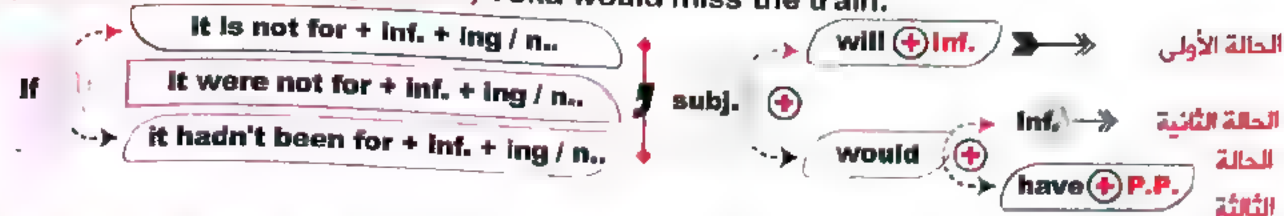
- In case of emergency, call 122.
- Toka wouldn't miss the train in case of / with / by leaving earlier.

in case of ... = if there is....

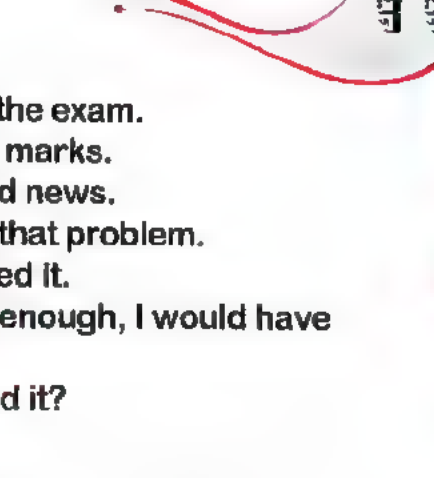
- In case of fire, please leave the building as quickly as possible. (= If there is a fire)
- In case of emergency, call this number. (= If there is an emergency)



- If they didn't have a ticket, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- Unless they had a ticket, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- Without having a ticket, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- If Toka didn't leave earlier, she would miss the train.
- Unless Toka left earlier, she would miss the train.
- Without / But for leaving earlier, Toka would miss the train.



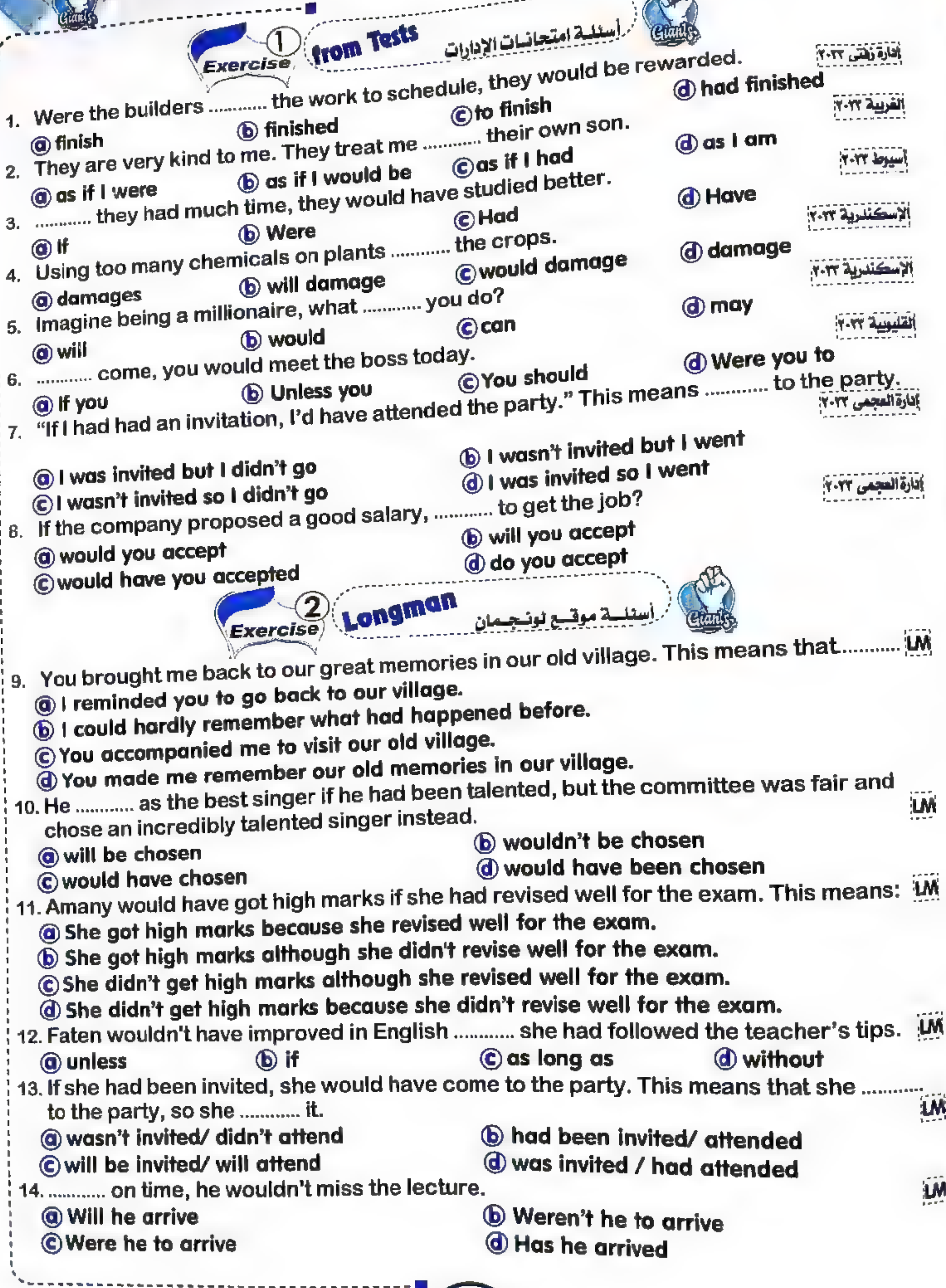
- If it is not for your help, I won't be able to watch the match.
- If it were not for your help, I wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- If it hadn't been for your help, I wouldn't have been able to watch the match.



1. (Had - Were) I money, I would buy a car.
2. (Had - Were) I a bird, I could fly.
3. (Had - Were) I wings, I could fly.
4. (Should - Were) he study hard, he would pass the exam.
5. (Should - Were) I to study hard, I would get full marks.
6. (Should - Were) you meet Ali, tell him your good news.
7. (If - Had) I been stupid, I wouldn't have solved that problem.
8. (If - Had) I read the book, I would have explained it.
9. If the money I had, (had - had had - had been) enough, I would have bought a car.
10. If he read the book, (will - would) he understand it?







Exercise 1 from Tests أسئلة امتحانات الإدارات

1. Were the builders .... the work to schedule, they would be rewarded. إدارة زفتى ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ finish ⓑ finished ⓒ to finish ⓓ had finished
2. They are very kind to me. They treat me .... their own son. الغربية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ as if I were ⓑ as if I would be ⓒ as if I had ⓓ as I am
3. .... they had much time, they would have studied better. أسيوط ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ If ⓑ Were ⓒ Had ⓓ Have
4. Using too many chemicals on plants .... the crops. الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ damages ⓑ will damage ⓒ would damage ⓓ damage
5. Imagine being a millionaire, what .... you do? الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ will ⓑ would ⓒ can ⓓ may
6. .... come, you would meet the boss today. القليوبية ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ If you ⓑ Unless you ⓒ You should ⓓ Were you to
7. "If I had had an invitation, I'd have attended the party." This means .... to the party. إدارة العجمى ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ I was invited but I didn't go
   ⓑ I wasn't invited but I went
   ⓒ I wasn't invited so I didn't go
   ⓓ I was invited so I went
8. If the company proposed a good salary, ... to get the job? إدارة العجمى ٢٠٢٢
   ⓐ would you accept
   ⓑ will you accept
   ⓒ would have you accepted
   ⓓ do you accept

Exercise 2 Longman أسئلة موقع لونجمان

9. You brought me back to our great memories in our old village. This means that............ LM
   ⓐ I reminded you to go back to our village.
   ⓑ I could hardly remember what had happened before.
   ⓒ You accompanied me to visit our old village.
   ⓓ You made me remember our old memories in our village.
10. He .... as the best singer if he had been talented, but the committee was fair and chose an incredibly talented singer instead. LM
    ⓐ will be chosen
    ⓑ wouldn't be chosen
    ⓒ would have chosen
    ⓓ would have been chosen
11. Amany would have got high marks if she had revised well for the exam. This means: LM
    ⓐ She got high marks because she revised well for the exam.
    ⓑ She got high marks although she didn't revise well for the exam.
    ⓒ She didn't get high marks although she revised well for the exam.
    ⓓ She didn't get high marks because she didn't revise well for the exam.
12. Faten wouldn't have improved in English .... she had followed the teacher's tips. LM
    ⓐ unless ⓑ if ⓒ as long as ⓓ without
13. If she had been invited, she would have come to the party. This means that she .... to the party, so she .... it. LM
    ⓐ wasn't invited/ didn't attend
    ⓑ had been invited/ attended
    ⓒ will be invited/ will attend
    ⓓ was invited / had attended
14. .... on time, he wouldn't miss the lecture. LM
    ⓐ Will he arrive
    ⓑ Weren't he to arrive
    ⓒ Were he to arrive
    ⓓ Has he arrived

15. .... he enough money, he would buy a new car.
ⓐ If ⓑ Were ⓒ Should ⓓ Had
16. .... you need any information, ask Salah.
ⓐ Will ⓑ Could ⓒ Should ⓓ Would
17. Had he been more careful, he .... low marks.
ⓐ wouldn't get ⓑ wouldn't have got ⓒ will get ⓓ would have got
18. .... she been more careful she wouldn't have broken her leg.
ⓐ If ⓑ Were ⓒ Should ⓓ Had
19. .... you were in China, what food would you eat?
ⓐ In case of ⓑ Unless ⓒ Suppose ⓓ Without
20. .... he a proper plan, he wouldn't waste his time.
ⓐ Had ⓑ Were ⓒ If ⓓ Unless
21. You can borrow this book .... as you look after it.
ⓐ provided ⓑ if ⓒ as long ⓓ on condition
22. Mother says we can watch TV on .... that we do our homework first.
ⓐ condition ⓑ provided ⓒ long as ⓓ if
23. .... he understand the lesson if he read the summary?
ⓐ Will ⓑ Did ⓒ Would ⓓ Can
24. .... raining, we won't be able to finish the game.
ⓐ If it didn't stop ⓑ Should it stop ⓒ If it stopped ⓓ Unless it stops
25. He will catch the train .... coming in time.
ⓐ if ⓑ in case of ⓒ unless ⓓ in spite of
26. .... studying hard, he would have got high marks.
ⓐ In case ⓑ As long as ⓒ Provided ⓓ By
27. .... you have any problem, give me a ring immediately.
ⓐ Were ⓑ Should ⓒ Unless ⓓ Had
28. Had it rained so heavily, we .... floods.
ⓐ wouldn't have had ⓑ would have ⓒ would have had ⓓ may have
29. .... that you lived by the sea, what would you do every day?
ⓐ Condition ⓑ As long ⓒ Imagine ⓓ Supposed
30. Don't go to that restaurant .... you like Chinese food.
ⓐ in case of ⓑ if not ⓒ unless ⓓ in case
31. You will make mistakes .... you are careful.
ⓐ If ⓑ without ⓒ unless ⓓ in case
32. .... your carefulness, you would have hit the little boy.
ⓐ In case of ⓑ If it weren't ⓒ Unless ⓓ But for
33. Ali will attend the lecture .... that he comes on time.
ⓐ unless ⓑ if ⓒ provided ⓓ should
34. .... he put down his roots in the country, he wouldn't have had a peaceful life.
ⓐ Weren't ⓑ Hadn't ⓒ Had ⓓ shouldn't
35. .... he had enough cash, he wouldn't be able to pay for the books.
ⓐ Unless ⓑ If ⓒ Without ⓓ In case
36. Take your umbrella .... it rains heavily.
ⓐ In case of ⓑ in case ⓒ unless ⓓ but for
37. You can borrow my camera .... you promise to keep it.
ⓐ were ⓑ in case of ⓒ as long as ⓓ unless

38. .... passing the driving test is a must, you have to train well for the test.
ⓐ In case ⓑ Unless ⓒ As long as ⓓ Should

39. You won't be allowed to enter the party .... you have an invitation.
ⓐ If ⓑ unless ⓒ but for ⓓ provided

40. .... you were accused of robbery, what would you do?
ⓐ Supposing ⓑ Imagined ⓒ Unless ⓓ in case of

41. He wouldn't agree to do extra tasks without ....
ⓐ paying ⓑ being paid ⓒ be paid ⓓ been paid

42. You can't drive a car .... you are 18 or older.
ⓐ as long as ⓑ unless ⓒ on condition that ⓓ without

43. .... he travel to France, he would improve his language.
ⓐ If ⓑ Were ⓒ Should ⓓ Will

44. .... him, I wouldn't have been able to survive.
ⓐ If ⓑ Unless ⓒ Without ⓓ Provided

45. .... you hadn't spent so long in the sun, you wouldn't have got burnt.
ⓐ If ⓑ Unless ⓒ Should ⓓ Had

46. .... he here right now, he would know the truth.
ⓐ In case ⓑ Unless ⓒ Were ⓓ If

47. .... your help, he wouldn't have got the job.
ⓐ If ⓑ Unless ⓒ Without ⓓ In case

48. .... a movie star, I could get any table in the fanciest restaurant.
ⓐ Were I ⓑ Was I ⓒ Am I ⓓ If I am

49. .... they run out of tickets, we will have to go to another cinema.
ⓐ Were ⓑ Will ⓒ Had ⓓ Should

50. .... he a proper plan, he wouldn't waste his time.
ⓐ Had ⓑ Were ⓒ If ⓓ Unless

51. .... she gets a promotion, she won't get more money.
ⓐ If ⓑ Unless ⓒ But for ⓓ Were

52. .... I your teacher, I would force you try harder.
ⓐ Were ⓑ Was ⓒ Had ⓒ Should

53. .... you get out in the cold, you won't catch a flu.
ⓐ If ⓑ Were ⓒ But for ⓓ Unless

54. .... he played well, he would have won.
ⓐ Should ⓑ If ⓒ Had ⓓ Were

55. .... he to help us, we would be saved.
ⓐ If ⓑ Were ⓒ Had ⓓ Should

56. .... the bird dancing, you would have laughed too.
ⓐ If you saw ⓑ Were you to see ⓒ Had you seen ⓓ Should you see

57. .... my father, you would have thought he was wonderful too.
ⓐ If you knew ⓑ Had you known ⓒ Should you ⓓ Were you to know

58. .... you do your job well, you'll be fired.
ⓐ If ⓑ Unless ⓒ In case of ⓓ Without



1. The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) has received a collection of 23 ancient artefacts transported from the Egyptian Museum in Tahrir.

(أ) استقبل المتحف المصرى الكبير ٢٣ من المصنوعات اليدوية القديمة منقولة من المتحف المصرى بالتحرير.
(ب) أرسل المتحف المصرى القديم ٢٣ من المصنوعات اليدوية القديمة منقولة من المتحف المصرى بالتحرير
(ج) استقبل المتحف المصرى القديم ٢٣ من المصنوعات الذهبية القديمة منقولة من المتحف المصرى بالتحرير.
(د) استقبل المتحف المصرى الكبير ٢٣ من المصنوعات اليدوية القديمة منقولة من المعبد المصرى بالتحرير.

2. Climate change reduces the ability of many countries to produce crops of the desired quality and quantity.

(أ) يقلل التغير المناخى قدرة دول كثيرة على إنتاج المحاصيل بالجودة و الكمية المرغوبة.
(ب) يقلل التغير المناخى قدرة دول كثيرة على بيع المحاصيل بالجودة و الكمية المرغوبة.
(ج) يقلل التغير المناخى قدرة دول كثيرة على إنتاج المحاصيل بالجودة و الخصائص المرغوبة.
(د) يزيد التغير المناخى قدرة دول كثيرة على إنتاج المحاصيل بالجودة و الكمية المرغوبة.

3. Tourism gives the opportunity for mutual understanding and peace among nations, and it has the effect of bringing nations closer.

(أ) السياحة تعطى فرصة التبادل و الفهم بين الدول، ولها تأثير على تقريب الدول.
(ب) الصناعة تعطى فرصة التفاهم المتبادل والسلام بين الدول، ولها تأثير على تقريب الدول.
(ج) السياحة تصنع فرصة التفاهم المتبادل والسلام بين الدول، ولها تأثير على ترهيب الدول.
(د) السياحة تعطى فرصة التفاهم المتبادل والسلام بين الدول، ولها تأثير على تقريب الدول.

٤. تتمتع الكثير من النساء بقدرة أفضل بكثير من الرجال علي تربية الأطفال الصغار لما يحظين به من صبر وحنان غريزي.

ⓐ Many men have a much better ability than women to raise young children because of their instinctive patience and tenderness.
ⓑ A lot of women have a much better strength than men to raise young children because of their instinctive patience and tenderness.
ⓒ Most women have a much better ability than men to raise all children because of their instinctive patience and tenderness.
ⓓ Many women have a much better ability than men to raise young children because of their instinctive patience and tenderness.

٥. أثرت التغيرات المناخية بشكل خطير على القطاع الزراعي المصرى و العالمى.

ⓐ Climate changes have effected seriously on the Egyptian and international agricultural sector.
ⓑ Climate changes have affected serious on the Egyptian and international agricultural sector.
ⓒ Climate changes have seriously affected the Egyptian and international agricultural sector.
ⓓ Climate changes have affected seriously on the Egyptian and national agricultural sector.

٦. قد يصاب البالغين بارتفاع ضغط الدم بسبب الوزن الزائد وسوء التغذية وقلة التمارين.

ⓐ Adults may suffer from high blood pressure due to overweight, malnutrition and luck of exercise.
ⓑ Adults may suffer from high blood pressure due to overweight, malnutrition and lack of exercise.
ⓒ Adult may protect from high blood pressure due to overweight, malnutrition and lack of exercise.
ⓓ Adults may suffer from high blood pressure despite overweight, malnutrition and lack of exercise.



Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Many robots have been sent to Mars. Such robots have usually looked like a box with wheels. Scientists have been developing a new and unusual kind of robots move like snakes, so they have been given the name snakebots. "They can get into very small spaces, like crakes in rocks or trees. A snakebot would be much more effective than regular robots with wheels, which easily get stuck or fall over. Since they can carry tools, snakebots would be able to work in space, as well. They could, for example, help repair the International Space Station.

A snakebot is built like a chain made of about thirty parts, or modules. Each module is basically the same in that they all have a small computer and a wheel to aid movement. The large computer in the "head" of the snake makes all of the modules in a snakebot work together. The modular design of the snakebot has many advantages. If one module fails, another can be added easily. Snakebot modules can carry different kinds of tools, as well as cameras. Each module can work apart from the rest if necessary.

Researchers are also trying to develop snakebots made of plastic that can change its shape using electricity, almost like animal muscles. Snakebots made with this plastic will be very strong and hard to break. Overall, the snakebot design is much simpler than that of common robots and they will be much less expensive to build unlike the ordinary robots which are unreliable, extremely expensive, and they break easily.

1. The synonym of the underlined word "effective" is ....
   ⓐ vain ⓑ impact ⓒ influence ⓓ influential
2. Why are snakebots useful for exploring other planets?
   ⓐ They are made of plastic ⓑ They can move freely
   ⓒ They are able to fly ⓓ They have twenty modules
3. Which of the following sentences can summarise the second paragraph?
   ⓐ How snakebots are formed and their advantages ⓑ Why snakes are formed
   ⓒ Where sankebots formed and their merits ⓓ Allow to use snakeshots properly
4. The snakebot consists of ....
   ⓐ twenty robots ⓑ one robot ⓒ thirteen robots ⓓ thirty robots
5. What happens when snakebots are made of plastic?
   ⓐ They can control the universe industry. ⓑ They will be popular and inexpensive.
   ⓒ Their tails will be easily replaced. ⓓ They can carry heavy loads.
6. How does the snakebot have a special building?
   ⓐ It can take off and land easily. ⓑ It moves up and down freely.
   ⓒ It can go everywhere without any trouble. ⓓ All the above
7. Why do scientists need to develop a new kind of robots?
   ⓐ To try new kinds of robots. ⓑ To make plastic snakebots.
   ⓒ To devise new techniques of technology. ⓓ To overcome traditional robots problems.
8. What jobs could robots be used for apart from the ones in the passage?
   ⓐ space exploration ⓑ forests ⓒ medical field ⓓ electronics

Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:

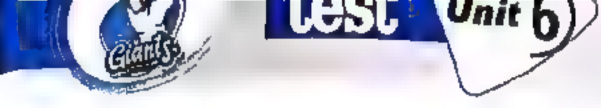
"The best ways for learning"

....

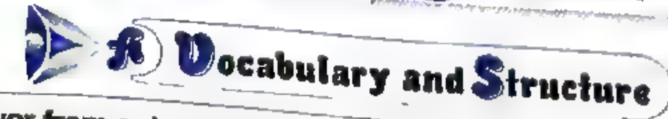
....

....









A) Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If they found their company, they .... it on their own.
   ⓐ will run ⓑ run ⓒ would run ⓓ would have run
2. If you are a well-organised person, you .... your time.
   ⓐ will manage ⓑ would manage ⓒ manages ⓓ managed
3. If you mix yellow and blue, you .... green.
   ⓐ would get ⓑ are getting ⓒ get ⓓ may get
4. She would have been successful if she .... well.
   ⓐ plans ⓑ planned ⓒ had planned ⓓ has planned
5. He gave me his pen as a .... and I thanked him.
   ⓐ gift ⓑ crown ⓒ talent ⓓ gifted
6. Don't .... out like that , you will wake your tired father.
   ⓐ talk ⓑ say ⓒ tell ⓓ shout
7. If he .... me, I would have been able to finish the work quickly and accurately.
   ⓐ had helped ⓑ has helped ⓒ helped ⓓ helps
8. When you .... the truth, you'll change your mind.
   ⓐ have known ⓑ knew ⓒ are known ⓓ had known
9. Do you think King Lear learnt from his previous .... ?
   ⓐ daughters ⓑ sons ⓒ mistakes ⓓ right
10. If metal is heated, it ....
    ⓐ will expand ⓑ expand ⓒ expands ⓓ would expand
11. The passengers on the train spend their time .... to each other.
    ⓐ chatting ⓑ shit ⓒ sharing ⓓ shouting
12. Hearing the news of his success, he breathed a .... of relief.
    ⓐ pile ⓑ tone ⓒ beg ⓓ sigh
13. My close friend was very .... and honest who would never betray anyone.
    ⓐ doubtful ⓑ distant ⓒ reliable ⓓ disorganized
14. I .... a nice time If I had been to the party.
    ⓐ will have ⓑ would have ⓒ would have had ⓓ had
15. I can't read .... I wear glasses.
    ⓐ if ⓑ unless ⓒ provided ⓓ in case

B) Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

As the world population continues to grow and climate change makes it more difficult to produce food in the traditional way, scientists are developing new ways of growing plants efficiently. One of these ways is growing plants without soil.

Although this may sound like a modern process, it is not new technology. Ancient Egyptians writings describe how plants were grown in water and early examples include the famous gardens of Babylon and floating gardens built by the Aztec in Mexico. In traditional farming, soil protects the roots of plants, but scientists have shown that plants don't need soil to grow as long as <u>they</u> can get nutrients from somewhere, they will grow successfully.



To grow plants without soil, a special fertilizer is added to water, the plants take this in through their roots.

Recently, this technology has developed very quickly. It is common in northern Europe where it is used to grow food crops. Vegetables have been grown in submarines and astronauts have produced food in space using this technology. Many people think that growing plants in water could help to solve the world' s food problems. As cities become larger, there is less land for agriculture. Countries with little land for growing crops could produce more of their food without soil. This way can also be used in poor soils such as deserts and in areas near the sea where is salty water is damaging the soil. Perhaps soon there will be no areas in the world where food can be produced.

16. The best title for this passage is ....
   ⓐ floating gardens
   ⓑ food shortage
   ⓒ traditional forming
   ⓓ planting without soil

17. There must be a .... to grow plants in water.
   ⓐ vitamin ⓑ medicine ⓒ food ⓓ fertilizer

18. Growing plants in water can be used in areas with .... soil.
   ⓐ rich ⓑ poor ⓒ strong ⓓ excellent

19. Scientists are .... to solve the world's food problems.
   ⓐ imagining ⓑ helping ⓒ urging ⓓ questioning

20. As cities become larger, there is .... land for agriculture.
   ⓐ few ⓑ many ⓒ much ⓓ less

21. In traditional farming soil .... the roots of plants.
   ⓐ protects ⓑ covers ⓒ damages ⓓ feeds

22. Ancient Egyptian writings describe .... plants were grown in water
   ⓐ when ⓑ who ⓒ how ⓓ where

23. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....
   ⓐ plants ⓑ scientists ⓒ roots ⓓ cities

C Writing

24. **B: Translate the following into English.**

Egypt has won AFCON more than any other country, seven times, at one time three in succession.

(أ) لقد فازت مصر ببطولة أبطال إفريقيا أكثر من اى دولة أخرى، سبع مرات، منهم ٣ مرات على التوالى.

(ب) لقد فازت مصر ببطولة أبطال أوروبا أكثر من اى دولة أخرى، سبع مرات، منهم ٣ مرات على التوالى.

(ج) لقد فازت مصر ببطولة أبطال إفريقيا اقل من اى دولة أخرى، سبع مرات، منهم ٣ مرات على التوالى.

(د) لقد فازت مصر ببطولة أبطال إفريقيا أكثر من اى دولة أخرى، سبع مرات، منهم ٣ مرات على فترات.

25. **A: Translate the following into Arabic.**

الانترنت ومواقع التواصل الاجتماعي هما أسرع نظام اتصال متنامي في تاريخ البشرية.

ⓐ The internet and social networking sites are the fastest growing communication system in human history.

ⓑ The internet and social networking sights are the fastest growing communication system in human history.

ⓒ The internet and social networking sites are the fastest growth contact system in humane history.

ⓓ The internet and social networking websites are the fastest growth contact system in human history.

26. **Write an essay of about 180 words on the following topic:**

How to help improve your country







1) Complete the following dialogue: (2 Marks)

أزهر دمياط ٢٠٢٢

"Manal has just moved to the town. She asks her neighbour Laila about places to buy food"

Manal Hello. Are you new in town?
Laila ❶ ....
Manal I am Manal ❷ .... .I'm Leila I have just moved in.
Laila Yes, please. I'd like to ask you about places to buy food.
Manal ❸ ....?
Laila Is the supermarket too expensive?
Manal No, it isn't, but ❹ ....
Laila Are there any street markets here?
Manal Yes, but they sell only fruit and vegetables there.
Laila Thank you very much for your help.

2) Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (5 Marks)

أزهر الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

According to the United Nations, there will be almost 10 billion people in the world by 2050.As a result, we will have to increase our food production about 70 percent. However, farmers don't have space on the land to keep more livestock and grow more crops. So why don't we think about farms in the sea?

Algae are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. Some kinds of algae are called seaweed and this is a very popular food in China and Japan. Algae is very healthy food and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating it in the future. They hope that farmers will not need to damage the environment because they will be growing our food in the ocean.

A Answer the following questions:

1. What will happen to the world by 2050?
....
2. Why should we think about farms in the sea?
....
3. What peoples like eating seaweed?
....

B Choose the correct answer:

4. Algae is .... for health.
ⓐ dangerous ⓑ harmful ⓒ good ⓓ bad
5. Increasing food production is a/an ....
ⓐ must ⓑ option ⓒ choice ⓓ luxury

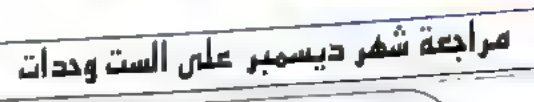
3. A- Translate into Arabic: (1 Mark)

أزهر الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

Smartphones are changing the way we choose to communicate with each other. More people use the phone to send messages than they do to make phone calls.

B- Translate into English: (1 Mark)

الحفاظ على الصحة مطلب أساسي للاستمتاع بالحياة.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... is a very small living thing that causes diseases.
ⓐ virus ⓑ organ ⓒ cell ⓓ member
2. .... is the process of growing plants in water or sand rather than in soil.
ⓐ Agriculture ⓑ Hydroponics ⓒ Industry ⓓ Botany
3. He was found .... so, he was sent to prison.
ⓐ guilty ⓑ rude ⓒ honest ⓓ mad
4. The teacher dismissed the student who laughed .... loud.
ⓐ in ⓑ out ⓒ off ⓓ over
5. Don't .... your personal photos online.
ⓐ download ⓑ upgrade ⓒ consult ⓓ upload
6. It's better not to waste your time .... online.
ⓐ doing ⓑ giving ⓒ gaming ⓓ having
7. We must bring up our children to .... their parents if they need any help.
ⓐ consult ⓑ adapt ⓒ advise ⓓ think
8. We made too many errors, and that cost us the game. The word "error" is a synonym to the word ....
ⓐ prize ⓑ correctness ⓒ mistake ⓓ clearing
9. We always .... our wedding anniversary by going out to dinner.
ⓐ deliberate ⓑ celebrate ⓒ collaborate ⓓ cooperate
10. All of these can have the same meaning as "severe" except ....
ⓐ harsh ⓑ serious ⓒ relentless ⓓ mild
11. A .... is someone who teaches or studies linguistics.
ⓐ biologist ⓑ linguist ⓒ therapist ⓓ psychiatrist
12. .... is still the main source of income in rural areas: farmers sell their crops and vegetables to earn their living.
ⓐ Economy ⓑ Tourism ⓒ Industry ⓓ Cultivation
13. The large .... from his aunt meant that he could buy his own boat.
ⓐ inherit ⓑ inheritance ⓒ heir ⓓ hair
14. It is a/an .... to wash your dirty hand before eating.
ⓐ important ⓑ forbidden ⓒ necessary ⓓ necessity
15. I can't believe that he's .... against his own father.
ⓐ lying ⓑ plotting ⓒ telling ⓓ ploughing
16. This coin is not original," The adjective 'original' gives the antonym of ....
ⓐ first ⓑ fake ⓒ native ⓓ true
17. "He runs a supermarket." Another word for "runs" is ....
ⓐ races ⓑ speeds ⓒ manages ⓓ works
18. Mr Ayman applies the latest .... in business management.
ⓐ resilience ⓑ techniques ⓒ pioneers ⓓ emergency
19. The .... between services in the countryside and the city is very big.
ⓐ capital ⓑ percent ⓒ gap ⓓ hole
20. I asked you to .... the vase carefully on the table. Why did you drop it?
ⓐ bleed ⓑ place ⓒ press ⓓ lie



21. The .... of the research surprised everyone.
ⓐ findings ⓑ selfie ⓒ messaging ⓓ emoji

22. My father encouraged me .... accept that bad offer.
ⓐ whether ⓑ that ⓒ to ⓓ not to

23. Some people are interested in the number of .... they have on their posts.
ⓐ knowledge ⓑ likes ⓒ victims ⓓ warning

24. We add .... to make the antonym of the word "honest".
ⓐ ir ⓑ im ⓒ un ⓓ dis

25. Do you think this car is .... to travel by all week?
ⓐ truthful ⓑ faithful ⓒ loyal ⓓ reliable

26. A lot of dirty pans .... in the sink. Could you wash them, please?
ⓐ came into ⓑ threw away ⓒ piled up ⓓ gave off

27. A last-minute rush by Christmas shoppers .... sales at the shops.
ⓐ reflexed ⓑ hindered ⓒ boosted ⓓ puzzled

28. Before going on a diet, it's advisable to .... your doctor.
ⓐ detect ⓑ consult ⓒ inject ⓓ reflect

29. The Seriousness of the opening statement of the manager set the .... for the meeting.
ⓐ note ⓑ tone ⓒ sound ⓓ part

30. If people .... cutting down more trees, we will face more difficult weather.
ⓐ save ⓑ rescue ⓒ keep ⓓ preserve

31. The young man spent a night in a prison .... because of driving without a license.
ⓐ well ⓑ cell ⓒ organ ⓓ box

32. My uncle doesn't have the .... to start a new business, so he is going to get a loan from the bank.
ⓐ staff ⓑ intention ⓒ place ⓓ capital

33. The expansion of building on the agricultural land will push Egypt to depend on ....
ⓐ statistics ⓑ economics ⓒ hydroponics ⓓ hibernation

34. Firefighters should have a quick .... when there is an emergency.
ⓐ reduction ⓑ react ⓒ reaction ⓓ decrease

35. Cul8r is the .... of the phrase "See You Later".
ⓐ abbreviation ⓑ acronym ⓒ prevention ⓓ shortage

36. If she .... the report carefully, she would have a clear picture about the matter.
ⓐ read ⓑ reads ⓒ had read ⓓ has read

37. It is amazing to see a variety of wild animals live together in the same place. We can replace the word "variety" by ....
ⓐ difficulty ⓑ kindness ⓒ diversity ⓓ possibility

38. It's a .... in America to eat turkey on Thanksgiving Day.
ⓐ traditional ⓑ conditional ⓒ tradition ⓓ punctual

39. King Lear wasn't right to give his .... to his greedy daughters.
ⓐ weapons ⓑ kingdom ⓒ recommendations ⓓ diary

40. Menna lives .... her grandfather's near her school.
ⓐ on ⓑ with ⓒ by ⓓ for

41. Mother always asks my little brothers to .... out of the kitchen.
ⓐ sleep ⓑ take ⓒ keep ⓓ give

42. Experts advise people to eat .... meals instead of fast-food takeaways.
ⓐ probable ⓑ proper ⓒ vague ⓓ void

43. You must always have the .... that you can succeed.
ⓐ law ⓑ despair ⓒ relief ⓓ belief

44. The Pacific Ocean is the world's .... ocean.
ⓐ deeper ⓑ deep ⓒ deepest ⓓ the deepest

45. Firefighters have to .... quickly when there is an emergency.
ⓐ sigh ⓑ divide ⓒ persuade ⓓ react

46. The .... of energy a person needs each day depends on the type of work they do.
ⓐ account ⓑ quality ⓒ weight ⓓ amount

47. A/An .... is someone who studies or teaches the science of languages.
ⓐ linguist ⓑ botanist ⓒ astrologist ⓓ biologist

48. If you get a profit from something, you .... from it.
ⓐ beneath ⓑ benefit ⓒ beneficial ⓓ benefactor

49. If you .... to the page, you will become a follower.
ⓐ describe ⓑ subscribe ⓒ tribe ⓓ type

50. You should follow the rules of hygiene to avoid being ....
ⓐ protected ⓑ injected ⓒ infected ⓓ predicted

51. We must .... our immune system to keep healthy.
ⓐ boast ⓑ boost ⓒ burst ⓓ paste

52. .... is a synonym to very serious.
ⓐ Serve ⓑ Simple ⓒ Severe ⓓ Safe

53. An old-fashioned vehicle which is usually pulled by horses is called a ....
ⓐ carriage ⓑ palace ⓒ servant ⓓ sword

54. If someone is cruel to you, you might want to take .... on him or her.
ⓐ revenge ⓑ rule ⓒ a kingdom ⓓ a storm

55. Hi, Mum, the bus is late, could you .... me up from the park?
ⓐ take ⓑ put ⓒ give ⓓ pick

56. Algeria became fully .... from France in 1962.
ⓐ dependent ⓑ nosy ⓒ independent ⓓ facilitated

57. The new hotel has lots of modern ...., including a gym and swimming pool.
ⓐ facilities ⓑ species ⓒ objects ⓓ innovators

58. In their game, some of the children .... to be animals.
ⓐ rewarded ⓑ acted ⓒ looked ⓓ pretended

59. .... are used to express emotions in electronic messages.
ⓐ Emojis ⓑ Abbreviations ⓒ Keys ⓓ Symbols

60. She is 85 and still in very good ....
ⓐ filthy ⓑ wealthy ⓒ healthy ⓓ health

61. A .... is a prize, for example a silver cup, that is given to the winner.
ⓐ trophy ⓑ trophic ⓒ tropic ⓓ trope

62. I could see the general outline, but I want to see the ....
ⓐ forms ⓑ details ⓒ shapes ⓓ lanes

63. Take .... your coat and sit down. Would you like a coffee?
ⓐ away ⓑ off ⓒ out ⓓ on

64. We .... our 25th anniversary in Paris.
ⓐ celebrated ⓑ separated ⓒ celebration ⓓ celebrity

65. They know me well here as I am a regular ....
ⓐ custom ⓑ habit ⓒ customary ⓓ customer

66. It is the .... in that country for women to marry young.
ⓐ habit ⓑ traditional ⓒ custom ⓓ customary

67. Do you prefer sweet food like chocolate or .... food such as fish and nuts?
ⓐ salt ⓑ salty ⓒ spicy ⓓ small

68. Where do you have to put your hands when you .... CPR?
ⓐ prepare ⓑ make ⓒ perform ⓓ act

69. You shouldn't smoke, it is very bad for your ....
ⓐ muscles ⓑ cells ⓒ surfaces ⓓ lungs

70. All king Lear wanted was to keep the .... of king.
ⓐ inheritance ⓑ promotion ⓒ address ⓓ title

71. We must look for more .... solutions that involve producing a wider variety of food.
ⓐ unavailable ⓑ sustainable ⓒ traditional ⓓ insupportable

72. She felt .... for making her sister angry, so she apologised to her.
ⓐ guilty ⓑ fond ⓒ proud ⓓ capable

73. Ali .... what the teacher said and did the wrong homework last night.
ⓐ misunderstood ⓑ deceived ⓒ ruined ⓓ fell out with

74. Mr. Omar is a .... man. He always gives us the right advice.
ⓐ well-known ⓑ wise ⓒ wealthy ⓓ wild

75. We are going to .... today because my father was promoted.
ⓐ compete ⓑ complete ⓒ celebrate ⓓ construct

76. This bandage will stop your wound from ....
ⓐ breathing ⓑ bleeding ⓒ blessing ⓓ flooding

77. I shouldn't have wasted my money on this trip. This sentence expresses ....
ⓐ possibility ⓑ necessity ⓒ regret ⓓ obligation

78. .... are animals and birds kept on a farm.
ⓐ Livestock ⓑ cattle ⓒ crops ⓓ kettle

79. Despite the big disaster of the earthquake, many people ....
ⓐ saved ⓑ alive ⓒ survived ⓓ lives

80. Waiters usually .... food at restaurants.
ⓐ severe ⓑ serve ⓒ servant ⓓ swerve

81. When children .... a new sport, their hearts must be checked.
ⓐ get up ⓑ take up ⓒ get over ⓓ take off

82. " Basic " has the same meaning as ....
ⓐ fundamental ⓑ minor ⓒ unimportant ⓓ traditional

83. Coins are usually round and ....
ⓐ flat ⓑ apartment ⓒ house ⓓ block

84. You sound fatter these days, you should .... on a diet.
ⓐ take ⓑ get ⓒ go ⓓ give

85. This meat is not well-cooked. It is ....
ⓐ rare ⓑ rarely ⓒ seldom ⓓ bare

86. She is always very .... She never thinks anything good will happen.
ⓐ individual ⓑ pessimistic ⓒ optimistic ⓓ ashamed

87. In Ramadan, some restaurants offer meals .... of charge.
ⓐ engaged ⓑ free ⓒ occupied ⓓ busy

88. You can't drive a car unless you .... a driving test.
ⓐ pass ⓑ succeed ⓒ park ⓓ support

89. My brother has had a .... wish to be a doctor.
ⓐ life like ⓑ short life ⓒ long life ⓓ lifelong

90. The man I shared the room with, ... was mad.
ⓐ unfortunately ⓑ unfortunate ⓒ fortunately ⓓ fortunate

91. The teacher split the class .... two groups.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ with ⓓ into

92. I m not keen on football. For me, It is the .... important thing.
ⓐ most ⓑ least ⓒ best ⓓ little

93. Today's session is .... as training, so you will get paid.
ⓐ teased ⓑ applied ⓒ trained ⓓ counted

94. Many scientists .... unconvinced by the current evidence.
ⓐ stain ⓑ remain ⓒ plain ⓓ drain

95. Unusual weather is becoming more .... at present.
ⓐ scare ⓑ rare ⓒ favourite ⓓ common
96. Children don't like those who are .... to them.
ⓐ good ⓑ cruel ⓒ kind ⓓ helpful
97. I don t understand this serial .It is all ....
ⓐ fantastic ⓑ terrific ⓒ nonsense ⓓ enjoyable
98. We would like to .... a table at the restaurant, please.
ⓐ grow ⓑ give ⓒ look ⓓ book
99. Factories release millions of tons of toxic .... into the atmosphere.
ⓐ chemicals ⓑ rules ⓒ laws ⓓ styles
100. Sorry, I .... you for my brother you look very similar.
ⓐ took ⓑ missed ⓒ mistook ⓓ lost
101. -She begged her friend to stay. The synonym of "begged" is ....
ⓐ helped ⓑ requested ⓒ ignored ⓓ watched
102. I didn't .... you in your new uniform.
ⓐ recognize ⓑ realize ⓒ conclude ⓓ acknowledge
103. We need a definite answer by tomorrow. The synonym of the word "answer" is ....
ⓐ ask ⓑ question ⓒ reply ⓓ challenge
104. You are mad to turn down such a wonderful offer. The opposite meaning of mad is ....
ⓐ sensible ⓑ foolish ⓒ insane ⓓ crazy
105. Dad .... us not to go near the fire.
ⓐ suggested ⓑ warned ⓒ said ⓓ begged
106. Winning the cup .... the team's confidence.
ⓐ detached ⓑ attracted ⓒ reduced ⓓ boosted
107. We're hungry. It's time to .... the food.
ⓐ serve ⓑ save ⓒ sever ⓓ converse
108. The whole family usually .... together have fun on happy occasions.
ⓐ go ⓑ get ⓒ make ⓓ intend
109. Suzan speaks French fluently, but it isn't her .... language.
ⓐ health ⓑ dead ⓒ native ⓓ modern
110. Mr. Ahmed says our next meeting will take .... next Monday.
ⓐ place ⓑ part ⓒ up ⓓ care
111. My children, Omar and Salma, have both .... good results in the final exam.
ⓐ deceived ⓑ achieved ⓒ removed ⓓ succeeded
112. Luckily, the local people started to .... money from tourism.
ⓐ make ⓑ do ⓒ gain ⓓ beat
113. Most big cities are .... quickly which results in serious problems.
ⓐ planting ⓑ growing ⓒ making ⓓ revealing
114. I had to walk because there wasn't .... for me in the car.
ⓐ room ⓑ a room ⓒ hall ⓓ hole
115. The young woman wasn't accepted for the job because she hasn't ....
ⓐ condition ⓑ experiment ⓒ experience ⓓ competition
116. He suffered .... headaches as a result of injury, so his doctor recommended a rest.
ⓐ service ⓑ serve ⓒ series ⓓ severe
117. As a result of having a .... dream, he woke up suddenly in panic.
ⓐ terrible ⓑ peaceful ⓒ quiet ⓓ nice
118. You're .... to start work at 8:30 every morning.
ⓐ suggested ⓑ substituted ⓒ supported ⓓ supposed
119. In many offices the most .... people with the longest service are the secretaries as you can trust them.
ⓐ reliable ⓑ irresponsible ⓒ untrustworthy ⓓ unreliable

120. Her doctor immediately noticed the obvious signs of the disease. The Antonym of the word "obvious" is ....
ⓐ distinct ⓑ ambiguous ⓒ clear ⓓ transparent
121. After a long time of sadness, her .... was a mixture of contentment and relief.
ⓐ thigh ⓑ sigh ⓒ nigh ⓓ high
122. After a period of time, some friends start .... with each other online.
ⓐ picking out ⓑ putting out ⓒ hanging out ⓓ falling out
123. To attract or make someone want to do or have something is to ....
ⓐ reject ⓑ tempt ⓒ distract ⓓ refuse
124. We need a/ an .... who can change things with new ideas.
ⓐ engineer ⓑ accountant ⓒ innovator ⓓ illustrator
125. Being angry, the .... of his voice wasn't friendly.
ⓐ tone ⓑ size ⓒ tune ⓓ smell
126. What do you think I should do to .... my daughter's success?
ⓐ survive ⓑ celebrate ⓒ rest ⓓ complicate
127. The immune .... is a way that your body protects you from disease.
ⓐ Discipline ⓑ regime ⓒ system ⓓ order
128. It is foolish of you to .... your mistakes.
ⓐ apologize for ⓑ learn from ⓒ do ⓓ repeat
129. Farmers need to find out more .... methods of growing foods.
ⓐ sustainable ⓑ terrible ⓒ unfortunate ⓓ dry
130. We live in the age of technological ....
ⓐ proposal ⓑ rainforest ⓒ summary ⓓ innovation
131. .... is a type of plant that grows in the sea and can be used as food.
ⓐ seafood ⓑ seaweed ⓒ corals ⓓ whales
132. Your .... expression reflect your feelings and reaction.
ⓐ endless ⓑ facial ⓒ basics ⓓ basically
133. The .... of Egypt increases rapidly.
ⓐ population ⓑ pollution ⓒ evidence ⓓ rainforest
134. "App" is another word for ....
ⓐ appointment ⓑ application ⓒ appearance ⓓ a & b
135. In the first .... the camera moves slowly across the room.
ⓐ sight ⓑ view ⓒ scene ⓓ position
136. I don't think she's ever quit .... me for getting her name wrong that time.
ⓐ forgotten ⓑ forgiven ⓒ prevented ⓓ foreseen
137. She removed the .... to reveal a red swollen wound.
ⓐ bandage ⓑ bondage ⓒ baggage ⓓ bankrupt
138. This film is very .... .I'd rather watch something funny.
ⓐ funny ⓑ sensible ⓒ serious ⓓ fun
139. The team got together to .... the project to do it on time.
ⓐ brainstorm ⓑ trade ⓒ reclaim ⓓ make
140. To be .... It was one of the worst meals I have ever had.
ⓐ silent ⓑ sincere ⓒ joking ⓓ honest
141. He went down on his knees as a .... for forgiveness.
ⓐ teacher ⓑ doctor ⓒ beggar ⓓ keeper
142. Tests should be administered by medical ....
ⓐ exposure ⓑ experience ⓒ experts ⓓ experiment
143. I don't know why he is staying with her. She .... him like dirt.
ⓐ deals ⓑ treats ⓒ believes ⓓ thinks
144. Teenagers need .... from their teachers.
ⓐ serious ⓑ sever ⓒ guidance ⓓ guide

145. My parents' support has .... my self-confidence.
ⓐ boosted ⓑ boost ⓒ boosts ⓓ a boost

146. To .... means to change your appearance, so that no one can recognize you.
ⓐ interrupt ⓑ upset ⓒ upset ⓓ disguise

147. Making someone believe something that is unreal means .... them.
ⓐ employing ⓑ including ⓒ deceiving ⓓ creating

148. We don't like the .... of this review. It is full of negative criticism.
ⓐ tone ⓑ profile ⓒ follow ⓓ upgrade

149. My father cares much about our family ....
ⓐ destruction ⓑ regret ⓒ reunion ⓓ tone

150. He is a sport celebrity. In this sentence "celebrity means ....
ⓐ fame ⓑ star ⓒ popular ⓓ celebrated

151. You can trust Menna, as she is ....
ⓐ employable ⓑ reliable ⓒ recognizable ⓓ incredible

152. I suppose .... to be a good mother.
ⓐ she ⓑ her ⓒ hers ⓓ herself

153. The teacher .... us not to look at our phones during the exam.
ⓐ suggested ⓑ recommended ⓒ warned ⓓ looked

154. All the .... of this farm is sold to the restaurants in the nearby town.
ⓐ crops ⓑ vegetables ⓒ produce ⓓ cattle

155. Don't expect from someone that is .... to donate any money.
ⓐ main ⓑ mean ⓒ foggy ⓓ generous

156. To me, your help .... too much.
ⓐ means ⓑ supposes ⓒ piles ⓓ a & c

157. I hope that my........... will agree to promote me.
ⓐ employ ⓑ employs ⓒ employer ⓓ employee

158. The liver is an extremely complex .... which needs special care.
ⓐ member ⓑ organ ⓒ individual ⓓ place

159. Our .... to our country is something we are born with.
ⓐ truth ⓑ income ⓒ loyalty ⓓ exit

160. Include only the basic facts in the report. The adjective "basic" is a synonym of ....
ⓐ trivial ⓑ fundamental ⓒ principle ⓓ b & c

161. .... , everything went well. That's clear to everyone.
ⓐ Apparently ⓑ Alone ⓒ Sadly ⓓ Unlikely

162. I have never doubted your .... I trust you.
ⓐ rely ⓑ reliable ⓒ unreliable ⓓ reliability

163. He's suffering from an acute lung ....
ⓐ affection ⓑ infection ⓒ reflection ⓓ intention

164. The movie helped .... her screen career.
ⓐ boost ⓑ boast ⓒ post ⓓ puzzle

165. His death became a/an .... for widespread discussion of his character.
ⓐ agreement ⓑ conflict ⓒ occasion ⓓ relief

166. It's a long time since he visited his .... Poland.
ⓐ strange ⓑ native ⓒ modern ⓓ deadly

167. To lead a luxurious life, we ought to have a .... economic growth.
ⓐ sustain ⓑ sustainable ⓒ sustainability ⓓ unsustainable

168. Machines can't .... people in this work.
ⓐ replacement ⓑ replace ⓒ renew ⓓ destroy

169. Our teacher didn't punish students who did wrong severely. He just ....
ⓐ frowned ⓑ smiled ⓒ rewarded ⓓ introduced

170. .... is a way of doing something, especially the usual or correct way.
ⓐ Procedure ⓑ Result ⓒ Cause ⓓ Consequence

171. My close friend was a very .... and honest who would never betray anyone.
ⓐ doubtful ⓑ distant ⓒ reliable ⓓ disorganized

172. I pulled my diary from beneath .... of flies.
ⓐ seats ⓑ poles ⓒ holes ⓓ piles

173. You must know certain rules before you .... first aid.
ⓐ react ⓑ perform ⓒ challenge ⓓ carry

174. This house is a\an .... from my father.
ⓐ exit ⓑ trust ⓒ income ⓓ inheritance

175. Cycling is a totally .... means of transport.
ⓐ sustainable ⓑ formal ⓒ agricultural ⓓ disguised

176. "LOL" is a\an .... for "laugh out loud".
ⓐ innovation ⓑ imagination ⓒ production ⓓ abbreviation

177. To .... is to move files from the internet to a phone, tablet or computer.
ⓐ upload ⓑ overload ⓒ download ⓓ overload

178. Hearing the news of his success, he breathed a .... of relief.
ⓐ pile ⓑ tone ⓒ beg ⓓ sigh

179. We are going to .... tonight celebrating father's promotion.
ⓐ eat out ⓑ find out ⓒ lock out ⓓ keep out

180. He has a .... of different, brightly-coloured ties which he wears to work.
ⓐ various ⓑ variety ⓒ vary ⓓ varied

181. It's advisable to .... an accountant if you're just starting your project.
ⓐ frown ⓑ pretend ⓒ consult ⓓ beg

182. I .... Fatma about her losing my earrings.
ⓐ brought back with ⓑ got on with ⓒ hung out with ⓓ fell out with

183. Temperatures rarely .... above 50.
ⓐ arouse ⓑ arise ⓒ raise ⓓ rise

184. Wearing a white dress for the bride is ....
ⓐ traditional ⓑ traditions ⓒ trade ⓓ tradition

185. A\An .... is a very simple plant without steam that grows near or in water.
ⓐ yield ⓑ crop ⓒ algae ⓓ hydroponic

186. Football is an .... game.
ⓐ indoor ⓑ outdoor ⓒ outdoors ⓓ door

187. I'm so sorry I have .... your message. Please forgive me.
ⓐ misbehaved ⓑ understood ⓒ misunderstood ⓓ encouraged

188. A .... is someone who teaches linguistics.
ⓐ architect ⓑ designer ⓒ linguist ⓓ biologist

189. I always believe whatever he says, he is a .... person.
ⓐ reliance ⓑ reliable ⓒ unreliable ⓓ unrelied

190. I forgot my key inside the flat, so I was locked ....
ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ out ⓓ with

191. This advertisement will help boost the sales. Boost here is the synonym of ....
ⓐ promote ⓑ fail ⓒ increase ⓓ a & c

192. He .... himself as a beggar so as not to be arrested.
ⓐ invented ⓑ discovered ⓒ disguised ⓓ innovated

193. Most women aim to become slimmer by following a ....
ⓐ meal ⓑ dietitian ⓒ diet ⓓ regime

194. Thanks to modern technology, these children will ....
ⓐ alive ⓑ survival ⓒ survive ⓓ survivors

195. We were told to stay .... as help was on the way.
ⓐ column ⓑ claim ⓒ calm ⓓ cattle

196. The software makes it easy to .... colourful graphs.
ⓐ spend ⓑ end ⓒ waste ⓓ create

197. Our house is so narrow that we can't .... guests or give parties.
ⓐ receive ⓑ deliver ⓒ invite ⓓ enlist

198. You can .... videos to YouTube. It is easy.
ⓐ overload ⓑ load ⓒ download ⓓ upload

199. The police .... two shots at the criminals before they were arrested.
ⓐ breathed ⓑ designed ⓒ warmed ⓓ fired

200. What's the chemical .... for mercury?
ⓐ sign ⓑ signal ⓒ syllabus ⓓ symbol

201. Being diabetic, doctors cut his leg to .... his life.
ⓐ save ⓑ endanger ⓒ end ⓓ expose

202. Language .... are those people who introduce new ideas into English.
ⓐ destroyers ⓑ damagers ⓒ runners ⓓ innovators

203. Breakfast is .... in the restaurant between 7:00 and 11:00.
ⓐ believed ⓑ served ⓒ employed ⓓ survived

204. The word "encourage" is similar in meaning to the word ....
ⓐ insult ⓑ hinder ⓒ prevent ⓓ inspire

205. Thanks for your donation. It was very .... of you.
ⓐ miserable ⓑ disappointed ⓒ generous ⓓ worthless

206. At least, Faten decided .... take part in the reading competition.
ⓐ on ⓑ with ⓒ for ⓓ to

207. We must encourage .... if the company is to remain competitive.
ⓐ invent ⓑ invention ⓒ innovation ⓓ inventor

208. .... , no one was in the building when it collapsed.
ⓐ Unfortunate ⓑ Unfortunately ⓒ Fortunately ⓓ Fortunate

209. I hope that heart disease is a problem that won't .... in the future.
ⓐ exist ⓑ existence ⓒ resist ⓓ expect

210. It is the most .... film I have ever watched.
ⓐ interest ⓑ interested ⓒ interesting ⓓ interestingly

211. I was angry .... her because of the way she treated me.
ⓐ with ⓑ for ⓒ of ⓓ in

212. People in Egypt .... at the age of sixty.
ⓐ retreat ⓑ reform ⓒ retire ⓓ resign

213. He studied medicine at Cairo university and .... as a doctor.
ⓐ applied ⓑ supplied ⓒ qualified ⓓ tried

214. Lions living in grasslands eat .... meat.
ⓐ cooked ⓑ grilled ⓒ boiled ⓓ raw

215. Potatoes grown using .... may be harmful for our health.
ⓐ chemicals ⓑ manure ⓒ nature ⓓ silt

216. The main .... in the play is called "Hamlet".
ⓐ personality ⓑ champion ⓒ character ⓓ actor

217. Many people are against using animals in scientific ....
ⓐ experience ⓑ experiments ⓒ experiences ⓓ expert

218. His good manners have made him .... to bad ideas.
ⓐ immune ⓑ affected ⓒ available ⓓ influenced

219. The .... of this mountain wasn't is covered with snow for most of the year.
ⓐ summit ⓑ bottom ⓒ high ⓓ weight

220. To make benefit from something means to ....
ⓐ improve ⓑ profit ⓒ celebrate ⓓ develop

221. The referee gave the player a yellow card because he .... to be injured.
ⓐ attended ⓑ intended ⓒ pretended ⓓ predicted

222. She gave a loud cry when she .... a bad dream.
ⓐ had ⓑ sent ⓒ made ⓓ got

223. Its important to .... your doctor . you are very hot.
ⓐ recommend ⓑ persuade ⓒ consult ⓓ ignore

224. After the accident, he needed .... donor.
ⓐ blood ⓑ oxygen ⓒ emergency ⓓ chest

225. A/An .... can make a lot of people very ill.
ⓐ muscle ⓑ orange ⓒ virus ⓓ brain

226. I need help with this lesson as I find it ....
ⓐ complicated ⓑ simple ⓒ personal ⓓ curious

227. Being a .... he eats no meat at all.
ⓐ farmer ⓑ agricultural ⓒ sports man ⓓ vegetarian

228. I will .... a new important file to this site.
ⓐ download ⓑ adapt ⓒ update ⓓ upload

229. You can drive your car if you .... a driving test.
ⓐ pass ⓑ succeed ⓒ support ⓓ park

230. The .... system protects you from infections and diseases.
ⓐ immune ⓑ digestive ⓒ respiratory ⓓ circulatory

Exercises on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

231. I will .... an operation to get rid of my pains.
ⓐ have ⓑ make ⓒ do ⓓ perform

232. You .... sit on that wall. It is very dangerous.
ⓐ must ⓑ don't have to ⓒ needn't ⓓ mustn't

233. If I had had my mobile phone yesterday, I .... you.
ⓐ would contact ⓑ will contact ⓒ contact ⓓ would have contacted

234. I .... watch the film until I have finished my homework.
ⓐ don't ⓑ won't ⓒ didn't ⓓ wasn't

235. Mona .... twenty-two tomorrow.
ⓐ is being ⓑ is ⓒ will be ⓓ is going to be

236. I asked Fatma .... noise in the library.
ⓐ make ⓑ made ⓒ to make ⓓ not to make

237. I am going to buy this car. It .... to be very good.
ⓐ is seemed ⓑ was seemed ⓒ is supposed ⓓ suppose

238. .... I a car, I would be happy.
ⓐ Should ⓑ Were ⓒ If ⓓ Had

239. .... he understand the lesson if he read the summary?
ⓐ Will ⓑ Did ⓒ Can ⓓ Would

240. You can know .... pieces of information from the internet.
ⓐ furthers ⓑ further ⓒ fathers ⓓ father

241. Adel isn't as old as Hatim. Adel is ....
ⓐ younger ⓑ older ⓒ youngest ⓓ oldest

242. It is the .... nature documentary of the two I have.
ⓐ best ⓑ better ⓒ the better ⓓ the best

243. They 've made all the arrangements, they .... a party next Friday.
ⓐ are holding ⓑ will be holding ⓒ hold ⓓ will hold

244. You'll be late for your train- I .... you to the station if you like.
ⓐ am driving ⓑ will be driving ⓒ will drive ⓓ will have driven

245. I .... the full mark in English but I didn't concentrate.
ⓐ should have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ cannot have ⓓ could have had

246. We've skimmed off the six people who .... be the most suitable for the job.
ⓐ seemed ⓑ mean ⓒ seem to ⓓ supposed

247. If I .... enough time, I'd pay you a visit.
ⓐ had had ⓑ have had ⓒ had ⓓ have

248. Have you ever .... go to hospital?
ⓐ must ⓑ had to ⓒ has to ⓓ need to

249. You .... take photos here; it's a military area.
ⓐ must ⓑ mustn't ⓒ needn't ⓓ shouldn't

250. Nobody in our company is .... Abdulrahman.
ⓐ as efficient ⓑ most efficient than ⓒ as efficient as ⓓ efficient

251. You didn't do as .... work as I did.
ⓐ much ⓑ least ⓒ less ⓓ more

252. I predict that Ahmed .... a part- time job during the next summer holiday.
ⓐ shall find ⓑ is finding ⓒ will find ⓓ finds

253. We should be .... mum with the housework now.
ⓐ help ⓑ helped ⓒ helping ⓓ to help

254. One of the team members .... to attend the press conference now.
ⓐ suppose ⓑ is supposed ⓒ are supposing ⓓ are supposed

255. I must apologise, but really I didn't .... you any harm.
ⓐ mean ⓑ suppose ⓒ seem ⓓ make

256. He will have his lunch as soon as he .... the restaurant.
ⓐ is reaching ⓑ reaches ⓒ was reaching ⓓ reached

257. The boy .... in the accident was taken to hospital.
ⓐ killing ⓑ kill ⓒ killed ⓓ kills

258. Cookies are .... to make it easier for us to use internet.
ⓐ seems ⓑ meant ⓒ supposed ⓓ meaning

259. It isn't sustainable for my friends to buy so much .... for a picnic.
ⓐ stuff ⓑ stuffs ⓒ staff ⓓ staffs

260. Must we finish this exercise today? No, you ....
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ don't have to ⓒ haven't got ⓓ doesn't need to

261. He has slightly improved in English. He has got .... marks than last year.
ⓐ much higher ⓑ a lot higher ⓒ a bit higher ⓓ less higher

262. Although my uncle is a wealthy man, he is too ....
ⓐ means ⓑ mean ⓒ meaning ⓓ a mean

263. Our school .... part in the "Top form contests" next week.
ⓐ will take ⓑ takes ⓒ is taking ⓓ is going to take

264. The tree is .... than the building over there.
ⓐ more taller ⓑ very tall ⓒ a bit taller ⓓ the tallest

265. You .... his phone ringing. He hasn't got a phone.
ⓐ shouldn't have heard ⓑ could have heard
ⓒ must have heard ⓓ couldn't have heard

266. Why does he always come to see me at .... possible time?
ⓐ bad ⓑ the worst ⓒ worse ⓓ badly

267. Ola's hair isn't as long as it used to be. She used to have .... hair.
ⓐ a longer ⓑ longest ⓒ the longest ⓓ longer

268. Ola travelled by train, even though she .... by car. She thought it would be safer.
ⓐ had to travel ⓑ has to travel
ⓒ could have travelled ⓓ couldn't have travelled

269. This time next week, I .... at the Helton if you need to contact me.
ⓐ will stay ⓑ will be staying ⓒ am going to stay ⓓ wait

270. If the internet .... , we wouldn't be able to communicate with people in other countries.
ⓐ wasn't exist ⓑ don't exist ⓒ didn't exist ⓓ hadn't existed

271. .... he to see a lion, he would run away.
ⓐ If ⓑ Unless ⓒ Were ⓓ Had

272. I .... go to a specialized hospital because I had a heart attack.
ⓐ have to ⓑ must ⓒ didn't have to ⓓ had to

273. You .... come if you don't want to.
ⓐ don't have to ⓑ mustn't ⓒ must ⓓ will have to

274. By this time next month, the builders .... the house.
ⓐ will complete ⓑ will be completing
ⓒ will have completed ⓓ will have been completing

275. This book is brilliant; it is .... than the last book he wrote!
ⓐ slightly worse ⓑ far better ⓒ almost better ⓓ not better

276. I can't understand why Dad is now so careful with his money. He .... such a generous person.
ⓐ would be ⓑ has been ⓒ used to be ⓓ must be

277. I think my brother .... this mobile phone most.
ⓐ going to like ⓑ will like ⓒ is like ⓓ has liked

278. I didn't know you were in my city yesterday, you .... me!
ⓐ could phone ⓑ should have phoned
ⓒ should phone ⓓ would have phoned

279. I wish I .... that food yesterday; I got very sick from it.
ⓐ had eaten ⓑ didn't eat ⓒ hadn't eaten ⓓ won't eat

280. Dina's sister is .... the same height as her!
ⓐ very ⓑ far ⓒ exactly ⓓ more

281. This is the surgeon who .... on my uncle.
ⓐ worked ⓑ operated ⓒ performed ⓓ did

282. I can't see you now. I .... for the test.
ⓐ revise ⓑ am revising ⓒ was revising ⓓ revised

283. she usually .... short stories when she was eight.
ⓐ reads ⓑ read ⓒ is reading ⓓ was reading

284. You .... take food in your room. It's not allowed.
ⓐ needn't to ⓑ doesn't have to ⓒ mustn't ⓓ must

285. You .... shout. I can hear you.
ⓐ must ⓑ don't have to ⓒ needn't to ⓓ can

286. This is the .... test I've ever taken.
ⓐ hard ⓑ harder ⓒ less hard ⓓ hardest

287. You aren't late. You .... hurry.
ⓐ had to ⓑ don't have to ⓒ didn't have to ⓓ have to

288. .... I rich, I would help poor people.
ⓐ If ⓑ Were ⓒ Had ⓓ Unless

289. The teacher told the students .... their books at page 140.
ⓐ to open ⓑ open ⓒ you open ⓓ opening

290. Do you know that Indian food is one of the .... foods in the UK.
ⓐ most popular ⓑ poor ⓒ best popular ⓓ popular

291. Travelling by plane is .... expensive than travelling by train.
ⓐ many more ⓑ much ⓒ much more ⓓ a lot

292. They are happy, they .... be having a nice time.
ⓐ are meaning to ⓑ supposed to ⓒ seem to ⓓ won't

293. Travelling by plane is .... more expensive than travelling by train.
ⓐ a lot of ⓑ little ⓒ most ⓓ much

294. My brother would have been a doctor if he .... his exams.
ⓐ passed ⓑ would passed ⓒ had passed ⓓ pass

295. .... they to play well, they would win the match.
ⓐ If ⓑ Should ⓒ Had ⓓ Were

296. Mona was supposed .... lunch yesterday as her mother was ill.
ⓐ cook ⓑ cooking ⓒ to cook ⓓ cooked

297. You .... tell anyone about it. It is a secret.
ⓐ must ⓑ mustn't ⓒ don't need ⓓ doesn't have to

298. " .... noise", the teacher said to us.
ⓐ Don't make ⓑ Not to make ⓒ No make ⓓ Doesn't make

299. He looks very sad. His team .... the match.
ⓐ could have won ⓑ shouldn't have won ⓒ might have won ⓓ couldn't have won

300. Alexandria is the second .... city in Egypt.
ⓐ bigger ⓑ bigger than ⓒ the biggest ⓓ biggest

301. Give the money back or we .... call the police.
ⓐ are going to ⓑ will ⓒ would ⓓ were going to

302. If you come first this month, you .... a prize.
ⓐ will give ⓑ are going to give ⓒ can give ⓓ will be given

303. Oh! I .... my mobile. What can I do?
ⓐ was breaking ⓑ have broken ⓒ broken ⓓ had broken

304. Doctors .... to do their best in case of emergency.
ⓐ are asked ⓑ have asked ⓒ asked ⓓ are asking

305. Have you seen .... she bought from the book fair?
ⓐ what ⓑ that ⓒ which ⓓ when

306. She .... visited the city before the school trip.
ⓐ had already ⓑ was already ⓒ has already ⓓ is already

307. Hurry up, Noha! Everyone .... for you.
ⓐ has waited ⓑ waits ⓒ is waiting ⓓ wait

308. The meal .... yesterday was delicious.
ⓐ we had ⓑ we had it ⓒ which we had it ⓓ having

309. People in the past used to have long hair, but now they ....
ⓐ haven't ⓑ aren't ⓒ didn't ⓓ don't

310. The teacher asked us to remain in the class until we .... the project.
ⓐ finish ⓑ finishing ⓒ have finished ⓓ finished

311. Noha phoned me while the dinner ....
ⓐ was being cooked ⓑ was cooking ⓒ cooks ⓓ cooked

312. Warda came third and .... a bronze medal.
ⓐ had won ⓑ have won ⓒ won ⓓ was win

313. He is .... driver in the company.
ⓐ less careful ⓑ more careful ⓒ the most careful ⓓ careful

314. Ali .... to take his sunglasses because it was cloudy.
ⓐ didn't have ⓑ had ⓒ has ⓓ doesn't have

315. You .... Smoke in public transport. It is forbidden.
ⓐ don't have to ⓑ mustn't ⓒ needn't ⓓ shouldn't

316. The doctor advised me .... medicine regularly.
ⓐ take ⓑ taking ⓒ to take ⓓ took

317. Pass me the sugar, please. Well, you .... supposed to have any sugar.
ⓐ are ⓑ aren't ⓒ were ⓓ mustn't

318. If you are patient for a few moments mom, I .... able to finish this.
ⓐ would be ⓑ would have been ⓒ will be ⓓ could be

319. The new director of the company .... strict and tough.
ⓐ seem to ⓑ seems to ⓒ seems to be ⓓ seems to being

320. A grown young man should rely .... himself not his family.
ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ about ⓓ with

321. The course of English this year is different .... last year.
ⓐ from ⓑ in ⓒ of ⓓ at

322. Nader is interested .... starting his own business.
ⓐ from ⓑ in ⓒ of ⓓ at

323. You .... him so much money when he asked. It will take you a lot of time to get it back.
ⓐ should have lent ⓑ shouldn't have lent ⓒ should lend ⓓ shouldn't be lent

324. He .... a great doctor. He had the ability but he didn't want to work hard.
ⓐ could have been ⓑ have
ⓒ could have ⓓ shouldn't have been

325. You .... any more eggs yesterday, mother has a lot in the refrigerator.
ⓐ don't have to buy ⓑ shouldn't buy ⓒ mustn't buy ⓓ needn't have bought

326. At this time next Friday, we .... to New York.
ⓐ will being fly ⓑ 'll being flying ⓒ will be flying ⓓ flying

327. If we .... a taxi, we would have been late for the train.
ⓐ had taken ⓑ didn't take ⓒ hadn't taken ⓓ took

328. My sister is using my pen. I wish she .... up.
ⓐ had hurried ⓑ hurried ⓒ would hurry ⓓ Is hurrying

329. A: Who is that man with the children? B; He .... be their father.
ⓐ seems that ⓑ seems to ⓒ seems ⓓ is seemed

330. Why did you drive so carelessly? You .... been more careful.
ⓐ should ⓑ must have ⓒ can't have ⓓ should have

331. Should it rain in Egypt in summer, it .... strange.
ⓐ is ⓑ should be ⓒ would be ⓓ could be

332. I can't read .... I wear glasses.
ⓐ if ⓑ unless ⓒ provided ⓓ in case

333. You .... renew your passport as you're travelling to London next month.
ⓐ have to ⓑ must ⓒ don't have to ⓓ needn't

334. I .... a nice time If I had been to the party.
ⓐ will have ⓑ would have ⓒ would have had ⓓ had

335. You .... take an umbrella if you are going to Aswan. It doesn't often rain there.
ⓐ haven't to ⓑ don't need to ⓒ must ⓓ need to

336. This is the .... company in the world.
ⓐ big ⓑ bigger ⓒ biggest ⓓ most big

337. I .... the housework all morning tomorrow.
ⓐ will be done ⓑ won't be done ⓒ will be doing ⓓ going to do

338. She has already decided. She .... her old flat.
ⓐ is going to sell ⓑ is going to be sold ⓒ will have sold ⓓ will sell

339. I looked all over the house, but I .... find my phone.
ⓐ couldn't ⓑ wasn't able to ⓒ managed to ⓓ a & b

340. Your new job .... to be more interesting and rewarding.
ⓐ suppose ⓑ supposing ⓒ supposed ⓓ is supposed

341. I speak French .... than I write it.
ⓐ fewer ⓑ worse ⓒ fewest ⓓ worst

342. I can't meet you tonight, I .... dinner with my friend.
ⓐ will have ⓑ am going to have ⓒ have ⓓ am having

343. If he .... so many sweets, he wouldn't have problem with his teeth.
ⓐ hadn't eaten ⓑ hasn't eaten ⓒ didn't eat ⓓ ate

344. "Did you paint the room? - No, I .... It was recently painted.
ⓐ can't have ⓑ didn't have to ⓒ shouldn't have ⓓ won't have

345. Over the next five years, they .... an enormous bridge over The Nile.
ⓐ build ⓑ are building ⓒ will build ⓓ will be building

346. The doctor advised the injured man .... on his leg for five weeks.
ⓐ walk ⓑ walking ⓒ not to walk ⓓ to walk

347. Ahmed .... to Cairo University, but he decided to go abroad instead.
ⓐ could have gone ⓑ couldn't go ⓒ should have gone ⓓ can go

348. If the food I had .... enough, I wouldn't have asked for more.
ⓐ were ⓑ has been ⓒ had been ⓓ is

349. Is this movie .... to be a comedy? _ I don't think it is funny at all.
ⓐ means ⓑ meant ⓒ meaning ⓓ mean

350. She is not deaf, you .... shout.
ⓐ are permitted to ⓑ are allowed to ⓒ didn't have to ⓓ don't have to

351. Reem is more sociable than ....
ⓐ me is ⓑ I am ⓒ am I ⓓ mine

352. Global warming .... in the future.
ⓐ still rises ⓑ is still be rising ⓒ will still be rising ⓓ is still rising

353. They didn't like the dishes .... in this restaurant.
ⓐ serve ⓑ serving ⓒ served ⓓ which served

354. They didn't understand your opinion, they .... it wrong.
ⓐ did ⓑ had ⓒ got ⓓ made

355. They .... win the game, last week.
ⓐ managed to ⓑ succeeded ⓒ can ⓓ were able

356. .... seems to be a problem with my laptop. Can you check it please?
ⓐ There ⓑ They ⓒ Their ⓓ He

357. If you feel ill, ...
ⓐ not play ⓑ not to play ⓒ don't play ⓓ didn't play

358. Why didn't you take part in the competition? You ....
ⓐ can win ⓑ couldn't win ⓒ could have won ⓓ can't win

359. You .... buy a pen. I can lend you one.
ⓐ need to ⓑ needn't ⓒ should ⓓ haven't to

360. Look where you are going. You .... into a hole.
ⓐ will step ⓑ will be stepped ⓒ step ⓓ are going to step

361. Don't go out if you .... exhausted.
ⓐ will feel ⓑ feel ⓒ felt ⓓ are felt

362. This is his second .... successful film.
ⓐ more ⓑ the most ⓒ the most ⓓ most

363. He should have .... the problem with his staff.
ⓐ discuss ⓑ discussed ⓒ to discuss ⓓ discussing

364. .... she works hard, she can achieve her goals.
ⓐ Unless ⓑ As long as ⓒ With ⓓ Without

365. You are not late. You .... hurry.
ⓐ have to ⓑ had to ⓒ don't have to ⓓ didn't have to

366. The secretary .... here speaks three languages.
ⓐ working ⓑ works ⓒ work ⓓ worked

367. If you have a lot of work, you .... play football with them.
ⓐ must ⓑ had to ⓒ have to ⓓ don't have to

368. I .... my car to the market yesterday as it was very near.
ⓐ must have driven ⓑ had to drive ⓒ needn't have driven ⓓ don't have to drive

369. The more you exercise, ... you get.
ⓐ the fittest ⓑ fitter ⓒ the fitter ⓓ more fitter

370. You got bad marks. You .... studied hard.
ⓐ should have ⓑ shouldn't have ⓒ oughtn't to have ⓓ can't

371. The exam .... to start at 9:00 sharp, but the teacher was late.
ⓐ is supposed ⓑ was supposed ⓒ is seemed ⓓ meant

372. He was rude to his friend. I wish he .... well.
ⓐ will behave ⓑ won't behave ⓒ had behaved ⓓ hadn't behaved

373. We're really looking forward to .... you.
ⓐ see ⓑ seeing ⓒ saw ⓓ seen

374. This essay will focus .... important points.
ⓐ on ⓑ at ⓒ in ⓓ with

375. You .... smoke in a hospital.
ⓐ must ⓑ have to ⓒ mustn't ⓓ don't have to

376. Mohammed Salah is .... players in the world.
ⓐ the fastest ⓑ one of the fastest ⓒ the most fast ⓓ one of the most fast

377. I'm saving up. I .... a car.
ⓐ will have bought ⓑ am going to buy ⓒ am buying ⓓ will be buying

378. Our teacher .... us not to eat during the lesson.
ⓐ suggested ⓑ allowed ⓒ said ⓓ warned

379. You .... hit her. She didn't deserve it.
ⓐ should have ⓑ couldn't have ⓒ didn't have ⓓ shouldn't have

380. Why are those children playing in the street? They .... to be at school.
ⓐ are supposed ⓑ are meaning ⓒ suppose ⓓ mean

381. If he hit that dog, it .... him.
ⓐ will bite ⓑ bites ⓒ would bite ⓓ would have bitten

382. I wish I .... to the park last week.
ⓐ had gone ⓑ have gone ⓒ went ⓓ would go

383. Our neighbours don't have as .... children as our family.
ⓐ many ⓑ more ⓒ much ⓓ most

384. Adel .... to be very happy now.
ⓐ seem ⓑ is seeming ⓒ seems ⓓ is seemed

385. He is .... taller than me.
ⓐ little ⓑ a little ⓒ bit ⓓ more

386. We are having an exam next week, it .... at 9 o'clock.
ⓐ will start ⓑ starts ⓒ starting ⓓ is starting

387. Our economy has improved .... 10 percent last year.
ⓐ with ⓑ by ⓒ on ⓓ at

388. He regrets what he had done, he .... that terrible mistake.
ⓐ shouldn't have done ⓑ should have done ⓒ should do ⓓ must do

389. Have you got any .... dresses, or these are the only ones?
ⓐ another ⓑ other ⓒ others ⓓ the other

390. Today I'm bad, but yesterday I was even............ .
ⓐ worse than ⓑ worse ⓒ worst ⓓ the worst

391. It............ to be more important than it really is.
ⓐ supposes ⓑ is supposed ⓒ means ⓓ seeming

392. Aya is............ fatter than her sister.
ⓐ little ⓑ less ⓒ a bit ⓓ more

393. If it had rained yesterday, I would have stayed at home, but it............ .
ⓐ hadn't ⓑ didn't ⓒ doesn't ⓓ haven't

394. By 2030, scientists will............ glasses on which we watch videos.
ⓐ have invented ⓑ invent ⓒ be inventing ⓓ have been invented

395. She............ me to pay for the shirt over there.
ⓐ tells ⓑ told ⓒ said to ⓓ said

396. My teacher............ be happy with my work.
ⓐ meant ⓑ supposed ⓒ seemed to ⓓ meant to

397. Iron............ If you leave it in the open air.
ⓐ rust ⓑ will rust ⓒ rusts ⓓ would rust

398............. he to work hard, he would succeed.
ⓐ Had ⓑ Were ⓒ If ⓓ Unless

399. In the next few years, public spending............ fall, not rise.
ⓐ seems ⓑ is supposed to ⓒ supposed to ⓓ seem

400. I promised my dad............ my best next term.
ⓐ will do ⓑ would do ⓒ am going to do ⓓ to do

401. The slower you walk, the............ energy you use up.
ⓐ most ⓑ more ⓒ less ⓓ much

402. The bridge............ across the river next January.
ⓐ will be built ⓑ will have been built ⓒ will build ⓓ being built

403. Little children............ ride a bike in the park. It's forbidden.
ⓐ must ⓑ mustn't ⓒ should ⓓ will

404. You............ bring a swim suit. I can lend you one.
ⓐ must ⓑ don't have to ⓒ need ⓓ have to

405. The sky is very dark, it............ .
ⓐ rains ⓑ is raining ⓒ is going to rain ⓓ will rain

406. My car broke down again. I wish I............ checked before the trip.
ⓐ had ⓑ hadn't had ⓒ had had ⓓ didn't have

407. It's more than twenty years since I............ him.
ⓐ meet ⓑ had met ⓒ met ⓓ was meeting

408. We have decided where and when to meet. We............ at the club tonight.
ⓐ are going to meet ⓑ will meet ⓒ meet ⓓ meeting

409. If I............ wise, I would have saved my money and bought the mobile I wanted.
ⓐ weren't ⓑ hadn't been ⓒ were ⓓ had been

410. I'm going to buy this book. It............ to be very good.
ⓐ seemed ⓑ is seemed ⓒ is supposed ⓓ supposed

411. Do you think I'd be here if I............ a choice?
ⓐ had had ⓑ have ⓒ were ⓓ had

412. They............ for Paris tomorrow. They have arranged everything.
ⓐ leave ⓑ are going to leave ⓒ are leaving ⓓ will leave

413. My uncle went to a school in London............ he learned to speak English well.
ⓐ which ⓑ where ⓒ who ⓓ that

414. In winter, you............ use the air conditioner to cool the room.
ⓐ don't need to ⓑ mustn't ⓒ didn't have to ⓓ must

415. If you have a financial problem, you can count .... me.
ⓐ in ⓑ on ⓒ at ⓓ of
416. We should all .... about the dangers that exist today.
ⓐ are teaching ⓑ teaches ⓒ be taught ⓓ taught
417. The teacher read my essay and checked everything I had written ....
ⓐ care ⓑ careful ⓒ carefully ⓓ carefulness
418. He used to sweep the floor and .... jobs that no one wanted to do.
ⓐ make ⓑ do ⓒ made ⓓ did
419. My uncle used to be a taxi driver, but now he ....
ⓐ doesn't ⓑ wasn't ⓒ isn't ⓓ hasn't
420. The history test was the .... test that we've had this year.
ⓐ difficult ⓑ most ⓒ most difficult ⓓ more
421. Take an umbrella with you. It .... sunny this afternoon.
ⓐ was supposed being ⓑ is supposing being ⓒ was supposed to be ⓓ is supposed to be
422. Teachers often instruct their students .... the best use of their time.
ⓐ not to making ⓑ not making ⓒ not to make ⓓ to make
423. .... she answer all the questions correctly, she can win the prize.
ⓐ Should ⓑ Has to ⓒ If ⓓ In case
424. He seems .... by all his colleagues.
ⓐ to be loving ⓑ to being loved ⓒ to be loved ⓓ being to love
425. Parents always advise their children .... friends with bad people.
ⓐ to make ⓑ not to make ⓒ not to making ⓓ to making
426. If you boil water, it .... into steam.
ⓐ will turn ⓑ turned ⓒ would turn ⓓ turns
427. Let's leave. This's .... film I have ever watched.
ⓐ a bad ⓑ a worse ⓒ the worst ⓓ worst
428. Lunch is supposed .... by Mona.
ⓐ to cook ⓑ to be cooked ⓒ cooking ⓓ to have cooked
429. I would have lunch with you if I .... enough time.
ⓐ had ⓑ had had ⓒ have had ⓓ have
430. At one o'clock tomorrow, I .... lunch with my friends.
ⓐ eat ⓑ going to eat ⓒ will have eaten ⓓ will be eating
431. You .... have seen Nabil in the park this morning, he has been with me all day.
ⓐ could ⓑ couldn't ⓒ should ⓓ shouldn't
432. If you don't water plants, they ....
ⓐ die ⓑ would die ⓒ died ⓓ don't die
433. No sooner .... studied than he went out.
ⓐ had he ⓑ he had ⓒ has he ⓓ he has
434. I don't like that man. He .... friendly at all.
ⓐ seems ⓑ doesn't seem ⓒ never seem ⓓ not seem
435. You .... eat things with a lot of salt or fat in them.
ⓐ must ⓑ mustn't ⓒ have to ⓓ should
436. I .... uploaded this photo as it caused a lot of problems.
ⓐ shouldn't have ⓑ could have ⓒ can have ⓓ will
437. There is a lot of food in the fridge so you .... buy more.
ⓐ mustn't ⓑ don't need ⓒ doesn't have to ⓓ needn't



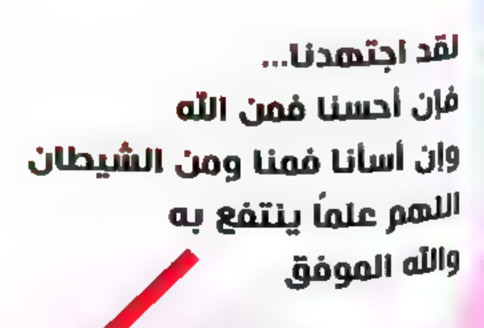


New Hello & King Lear



كتب العمالقة

الصف الثانى الثانوى
الفصل الدراسى الأول

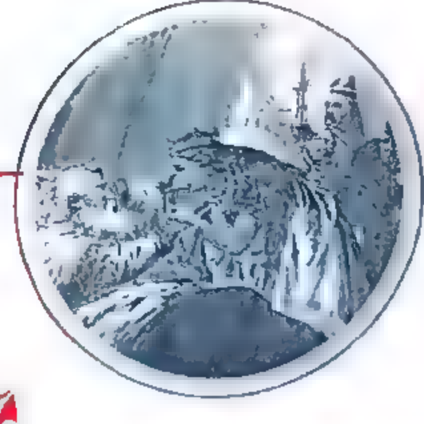


لقد اجتهدنا...
فإن أحسنا فمن الله
وإن أسأنا فمنا ومن الشيطان
اللهم علماً ينتفع به
والله الموفق

أسرة إعداد كُتب العمالقة

Chapter 1

King Lear





Before You Read

* Have you read a play before?
* Have you heard of King Lear?

Vocabulary

Duke	دوق	proud	فخور	pleased	سعيد
daughter	ابنة	enter	يدخل	kingdom	مملكة
marry	يتزوج	divide	يقسم	map	خريطة
forest	غابة	a third	ثلث	country	الريف
describe	يصف	feelings	مشاعر	speech	حديث
duty	واجب	honest	أمين	majesty	جلالة
stranger	غريب	power	سلطة	riches	ثروات
title	لقب	foolish	أحمق	terrible	فظيع
choice	اختيار	shout	يصرخ	point to	يشير إلى
palace	قصر	plan	خطة	suggest	يقترح
mean	يعني	goodbye	وداع	believe	يصدق



Act I, Scene i



[in King Lear's Palace.]

(DUKE OF) GLOUCESTER: Ah, the Duke of Kent! Hello, my friend. Have you met my son, Edmund?

(DUKE OF) KENT: I haven't, Kent. He's a fine young man. You must be proud of him.

GLOUCESTER: I'm very proud of him.

EDMUND: I'm pleased to meet you, sir.

GLOUCESTER: Edmund is my second child I also have another son, Edgar, who is about a year older than Edmund.

EDMUND: Listen! The King is coming.

[King Lear enters with Cornwall and Albany and his three daughters, Regan, Goneril and Cordelia. Gloucester and Edmund leave].

KING LEAR: Listen, everyone. I want to tell you all about my plan. I've decided to give everything in my kingdom to my three daughters, Goneril, Regan and Cordelia. I will also



give an answer to the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy. They have both asked to marry my youngest daughter, Cordelia. First, look at this map of my kingdom. I have divided it into three. I want to give the largest part to the daughter who loves me the most. So tell me, my daughters, which of you loves me the most? Goneril, you are the eldest, so you can speak first.

GONERIL: Father, I love you more than anything. No child can love a father more than I love you. love you more than health, beauty and riches.

CORDELIA: [To herself]. I love my father, but I don't know what to say!

KING LEAR: [Pointing to the map.] Goneril, you can have all this land, with its green forests and beautiful countryside. Now, Regan, wife of Cornwall. What does my second daughter want to say?

REGAN: Father, Goneril has described her love for you very well. But I have more to say. Your love is the only thing that makes me happy. I love nobody as much as you.

CORDELIA: [TO herself.] What can I say? I don't have the words to say how much I love my father.

KING LEAR: Thank you Regan. I will give a third of our beautiful kingdom to you and your children. [To Cordelia.] Now, Cordelia, my youngest daughter. What can you say to make me give you more than I gave to your sisters?

CORDELIA: I can say nothing, father.

KING LEAR: Nothing? Cordelia, if you say nothing, I will give you nothing. Speak again.

CORDELIA: I cannot put my feelings into words. love you as a daughter should love a father; but not more, and not less.

KING LEAR: But this is not kind, Cordelia. Change your speech a little, or your future will change, too.

CORDELIA: You have always been a good father and it is my duty to love you too. But my sisters say they only love you. How can this be true? Do they not love their husbands, too? If I marry, I will love my husband as much as my father.

KING LEAR: Cordelia. Do you really mean this? Can you be so young but also so cruel?

CORDELIA: Father, I am young but I am honest.

KING LEAR: Then you are not my daughter any more. You are now a stranger to me. I don't know you.

KENT: But your majesty

KING LEAR: Be quiet, Kent! I loved Cordelia, and I wanted her to look after me when I was old. Now she must go! But first, call the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy! While we wait for them, listen to what I say: Goneril and her husband Albany, and Regan with her husband Cornwall, will have half of my kingdom each. They will have all the power and riches that come with being a king. All I want is to keep the title of King, but they will have everything else.



KENT: Your majesty, what do you mean? I must speak honestly when my King is being **foolish**. Your youngest daughter does not **shout about** her love for you, but that doesn't mean she loves you the least. You mustn't **give** your country **away** like this.

KING LEAR: Say nothing more to me, Kent!

KENT: I am not afraid to make you angry if it will help to protect you.

KING LEAR: Then you must go away too! Leave!

KENT: Let me stay and give you good advice, King Lear. You must learn to see better.

KING LEAR: Oh, you are a cruel man!

[He puts his hand on his sword].

(DUKE OF) CORNWALL: Your majesty, please stop!

KENT: I'll say it again, King Lear. You've done a terrible thing.

KING LEAR: Kent! You've got five days to leave my kingdom, or you'll be killed. Go!

KENT: Then I'll say goodbye to you, my dear King.

[To Cordelia.] I hope you stay safe, young lady, because you were honest. And now I say goodbye to all of you; I shall live my life in a new country.

[Gloucester enters with the King of France, the Duke of Burgundy and his men.]

GLOUCESTER: Here are the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy, your majesty.

KING LEAR: Burgundy, I will speak to you first. What do you expect to have if you marry my daughter Cordelia?

(DUKE OF) BURGUNDY: Your majesty, I only expect to have what you promised me.

KING LEAR: I am sorry, but things have changed. Sir, there she is You can marry her.

BURGUNDY: I don't understand.

KING LEAR: You'll get my daughter and nothing more. Take her, or leave her. It's your choice.

BURGUNDY: I'm sorry, sir. I cannot marry her without some of your land.

KING LEAR: Then leave her, sir.

CORDELIA: Goodbye, Burgundy! I see now that you love things more than you love me, so I shall not be your wife.

KING LEAR: **[To the King of France].** So, the great King of France, I don't want you to marry someone I hate; so I suggest you give your love to a better girl.

(KING OF) FRANCE: But sir, Cordelia was your favourite daughter! It is very strange that she has suddenly lost all your love. I cannot believe that Cordelia could do anything terrible to anyone.

CORDELIA: **[To King Lear.]** Father, understand that I show my love in my actions, not my words. Please tell him that I haven't done anything wrong to make you hate me.

KING LEAR: I shall not. Go! You will have nothing from me!

FRANCE: My beautiful Cordelia, you are richer for being poor and I love you more now that you are hated! I'm happy for you to be my wife.

[To the King]. Your daughter will be queen of my country. Say goodbye to them, Cordelia, although they've been unkind to you. You have lost your life here, but you'll find a better one with me.

KING LEAR: She is yours, King of France; I'll never see her face again. **[To Cordelia.]** Leave now, without my love. Come with me, Burgundy.

[King Lear leaves with Burgundy, Cornwall, Albany, and Gloucester]





1) Choose the correct answer:

1. Who does King Lear want to give the largest part of his land to?
   ⓐ The King of France
   ⓑ The daughter who loves him best
   ⓒ The daughter who is the oldest
2. How much does Goneril say she loves her father?
   ⓐ More than health, beauty and riches
   ⓑ More than anyone else
   ⓒ As much as a daughter should love her father
3. What does King Lear decide to do after listening to Cordelia?
   ⓐ Give Cordelia all of his kingdom
   ⓑ Give his kingdom to his two other daughters
   ⓒ Give none of his daughters any of his kingdom
4. What does Kent tell King Lear?
   ⓐ That he has made a bad decision
   ⓑ That he has made a good decision
   ⓒ That he wants to marry Cordelia
5. Who will Cordelia leave with?
   ⓐ The Duke of Burgundy
   ⓑ The King of France
   ⓒ The Duke of Kent

2) Answer these questions.

1. Why do you think Goneril says "No child can love a father more than I love you." ?
   * ....
2. Why did Lear tell Kent to leave his kingdom?
   * ....
3. "Understand that I show my love in my actions, not my words."
   Who says this and why?
   * ....
4. Who is the King of Britain?
   * ....
5. Who is King Lear's third daughter?
   * ....
6. Which two characters want to marry Cordelia?



Chapter 2

King Lear





Before You Read

* What do you think will happen next?

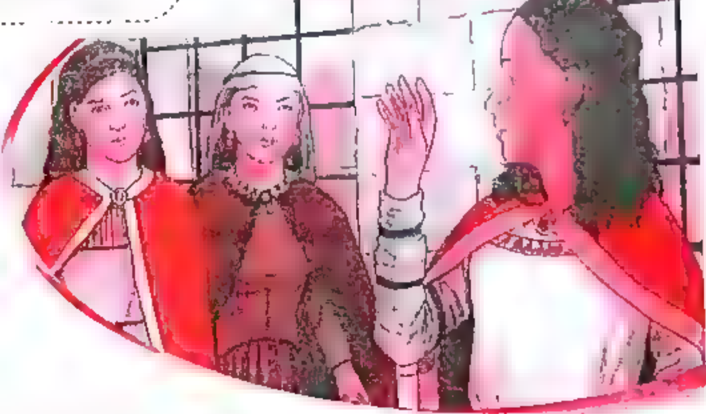


Vocabulary

fail	يفشل	exit	يخرج	worried	قلق
truth	الحقيقة	deserve	يستحق	discover	يكتشف
prepare	يجهز	mad	مجنون	healthy	صحي
inheritance	ميراث	anger	غضب	castle	قلعة
notice	يلاحظ	succeed	ينجح	beat	يهدم
test	يختبر	hide	يخبئ	pocket	جيب
discuss	يناقش	respect	يحترم	parents	والدين
handwriting	خط يد	income	دخل	receive	يستقبل
immediately	فى الحال	adult	بالغ	conversation	محادثة
husband	زوج	lie	يكذب	sword	سيف
talk to	يتحدث الى	care	يهتم	sad	حزين



Act I, Scene I, continued



[In King Lear's Palace.]

FRANCE: Cordelia, it is time to leave your country now. Say goodbye Co your sisters.

CORDELIA: Goneril and Regan, I am sad to leave you both. My heart is broken. Be good to our father. If he still loved me, I'd take good care of him! Please look after him well.



GONERIL: Don't tell us what to do, Cordelia.

REGAN: Yes, go to your husband You've failed to do what your father asked you to do. Now, you've got what you deserve.

CORDELIA: I don't know what you are planning, sisters, but remember: everyone discovers the truth in the end. Goodbye!

FRANCE: Come with me, my dear Cordelia.

[The King of France and Cordelia leave.]

GONERIL: Sister Regan, we must talk. I think our father will leave here tonight.

REGAN: I'm sure he will, and he'll leave with you. Next month, he'll stay with my husband Cornwall and I.

GONERIL: Our father always loved Cordelia the most, and a poor decision has made him send her away.

REGAN: He is becoming a little mad in his old age.

GONERIL: Even when he was younger and healthy, he was a difficult man. So we must be prepared for what ill health and old age will bring.

REGAN: He was angry when he sent Kent away today. He will probably be angry mote often in the future.

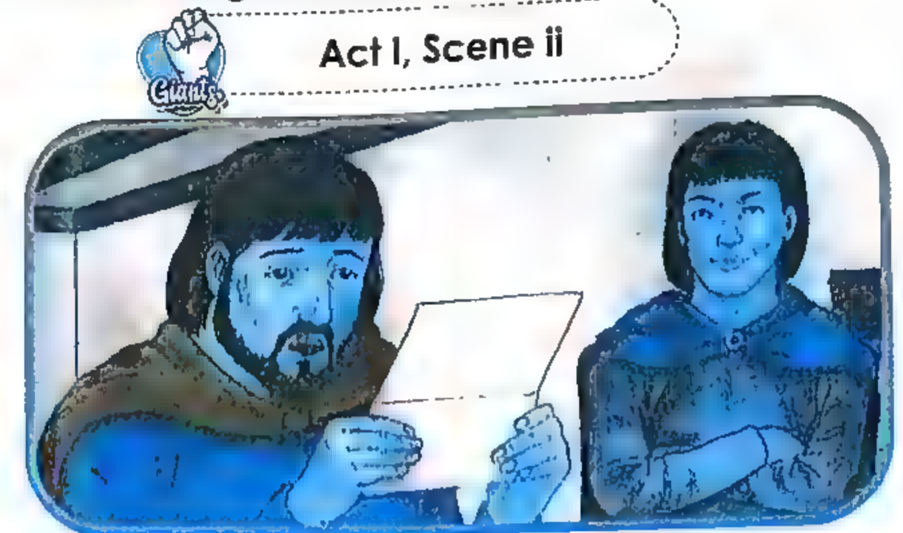


GONERIL: Let's sit together and talk, if our father still has some power, his anger will become a problem for us.

REGAN: You are right. Let's think about what we can do.

GONERIL: We must do something, and quickly.

Act I, Scene ii



[At the Duke of Gloucester's Castle. Edmund enters with a letter.]

EDMUND: My father Gloucester says that his first son, Edgar, will get his land when he dies. But why should I not have my inheritance just because I'm twelve or fourteen months younger than my brother? Is it just because I'm (he second son? I'm just as strong and kind as my brother, and as clever too. Well, elder brother, Edgar, I will have your land. Our father loves me, his younger son, as much as he loves you. And I have a letter here. If this letter succeeds, then Edmund the younger son will beat the older son Edgar!

[Gloucester enters,]

GLOUCESTER: Ah Edmund, my son! Have you heard? The King has sent Kent away! And the King of France has left with Cordelia! And the King has left the palace tonight without his powers! This has all happened so quickly!

[Gloucester notices Edmund hiding the letter.]

What are you doing Edmund?

EDMUND: Nothing, father.

GLOUCESTER: Why are you trying to hide that letter? What's in it?

EDMUND: Nothing, sir.

GLOUCESTER: Then, why did you hide it in your pocket? Let me see it.

EDMUND: Please forgive me, father. It is a letter from my brother Edgar that I haven't finished reading yet; but I don't think you should read it.

GLOUCESTER: Let me see that!

EDMUND: OK, but! hope he only wrote this to test me and my loyalty to my family,

GLOUCESTER: **[Reads the letter.]**

When we respect older people too much, it makes it hard for the young to live well. Our parents keep our money from us until we are too old to enjoy it. Older people only have power because we give it to them. Come and see me, so that we can discuss this. If our father were dead, you could enjoy half his income, and be loved by your brother Edgar.' Did my son Edgar write this letter? When did you receive this? Who brought it?

EDMUND: It wasn't brought to me, sir. I found it. It was thrown in through my bedroom window.

GLOUCESTER: Are you sure the writing is your brother's?



EDMUND: Yes, it is his handwriting, father.

GLOUCESTER: Has he ever talked to you about this before?



EDMUND: No, never. But I've often heard him say that when a son becomes an adult, he should be given some of his father's income.

GLOUCESTER: Oh, what a cruel son! Go and find Him, Edmund. Where is he?

EDMUND: I don't know, father. Please, don't be angry with my brother. Let's find out what he meant then you can decide what to do. I'm sure he wrote this to test my love and loyalty to you, and for nothing more dangerous than that.

GLOUCESTER: Do you really think so?

EDMUND: Yes. Listen, I have a plan. I'll hide you somewhere tonight. I'll discuss it with my brother and you can listen to our conversation. Then you'll know what he really thinks.

GLOUCESTER: My son cannot be so cruel to a father who loves him so much. Edmund, find Edgar and make him talk to you. I want to know the truth.

EDMUND: I'll and find him immediately.

GLOUCESTER: Find him, Edmund, and be careful. (to himself) What is happening? I cannot believe that Kent has been sent away! He is an honest man. It is all too strange.

[Gloucester exits. Edgar enters].

EDMUND: Ah, Edgar. There you are. How are you? When did you last see our father?

EDGAR: I am well, Edmund. I saw our father last night.

EDMUND: And did you talk to him?

EDGAR: Yes, we spent two hours together.

EDMUND: Did you say anything unkind to him? He's very angry with you at the moment Please don't go near him until he's less angry.

EDGAR: Really? Then somebody has **lied** about me.

EDMUND: That's what I'm worried about. Stay with me for now, I'll take you to see our father when he feels better. Here's my key. Oh, and if you go out, take your sword.

EDGAR: My sword? But why?

EDMUND: That's the best advice I can give you. Please, go quickly!

[Edgar exits]

EDMUND: My brother and father **trust** me, which makes them easy to **deceive**. I need these two fools to make my plan work. If I can't get some land in the correct way, I'll have to be clever to get it.

[Edmund exits].





1) Choose the correct answer:

1. .... heart was broken when she had to leave her sisters.
ⓐ Regan's ⓑ Cordelia's ⓒ Goneril's ⓓ Edgar's

2. .... thinks that Cordelia got what she deserved because she failed to do what her father asked.
ⓐ Regan ⓑ Edgar ⓒ Goneril ⓓ Lear

3. .... hopes that her sisters will take care of her father.
ⓐ Regan's ⓑ Edgar ⓒ Goneril ⓓ Cordelia

4. .... was an honest man.
ⓐ Kent ⓑ Edmund ⓒ Edgar ⓓ Lear

5. .... was cruel.
ⓐ Lear ⓑ Kent ⓒ Edmund ⓓ Edgar

2) Answer these questions.

1. If you were King Lear, would you be unkind to Cordelia because she couldn't say how much she loved you? Why? Why not?
* ....

2. Do you think that King Lear was right to give everything to Goneril and Regan? Why? Why not?
* ....

3. Are actions more important than words, or are words more important than actions? Why?
* ....

4. Why will Edgar get his father's inheritance and not Edmund?
* ....

5. In what ways are Goneril and Regan like Edmund?
* ....

6. "My son cannot be so cruel to a father who loves him so much."
Why does Gloucester think that Edgar is cruel?
* ....





Chapter 3

King Lear



Before You Read

What did King Lear tell the Duke of Kent to do in Chapter 1?

Vocabulary

servant	خادم	hit	يضرب	soldiers	جنود
behave	يتصرف	give away	يتخلى عن	plan	خطة
disguise	يتنكر	ready	جاهز	important	هام
advice	نصيحة	follow	يتبع	rude	وقح
unkind	غير عطوف	fool	أحمق / مغفل	matter	أمر
hold	يمسك	rather than	بدلا من	encourage	يشجع
cart	عربة	pull	يجر	wise	حكيم
keep	يحتفظ	trouble	مشكلة	surprised	مندهش
guilty	مذنب	taste	يتذوق	medicine	دواء
attack	يهاجم	poor	مسكين	change	يتغير
solve	يحل	noisy	مزعج	horse	حصان



Act I, Scene iii

[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with her servant Oswald.]

GONERIL: Did my father, King Lear, hit my servant?

OSWALD: Yes, madam.

GONERIL: I must do something. His soldiers are starting to behave badly, and my father gets angry about everything. When he comes here, I won't speak to him. I'll tell him that I am ill.

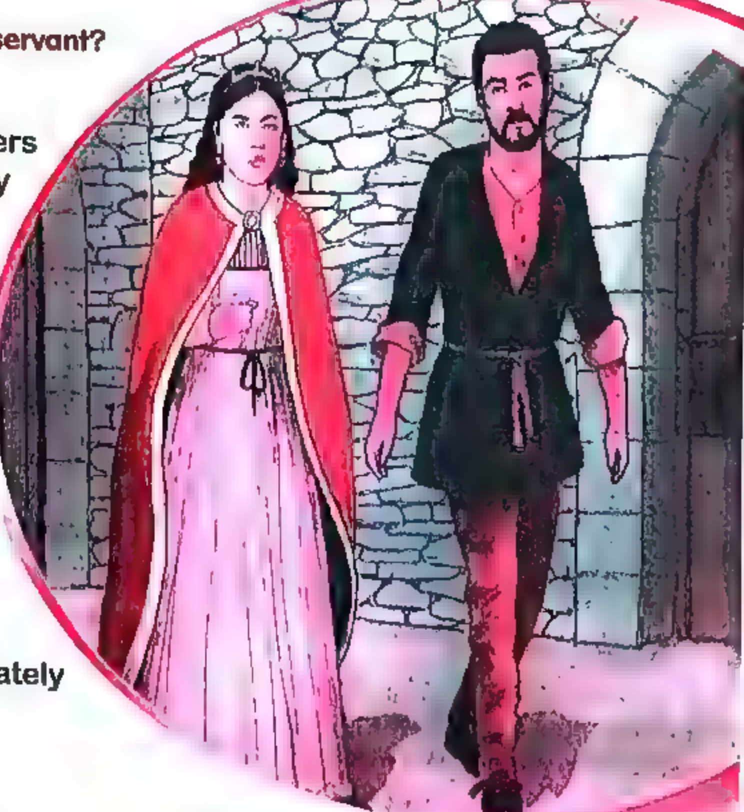
OSWALD: He's coming, madam; I can hear him.

GONERIL: Tell the other servants not to do what he asks them. If he's unhappy, he can stay with my sister. The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!

OSWALD: Yes, madam

GONERIL: I'll write to my sister immediately and tell her my plans.

[She exits.]





Act I, Scene iv



[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Kent enters in different clothes.]

KENT: I've **disguised** myself in different clothes, and I have changed how I usually speak, so I can help the man who told me to leave. I still love the King and I'll continue to work hard for him, but he won't know me.

[King Lear enters with soldiers and servants.]

KING LEAR: Get my dinner ready.

[A servant exits.] [To Kent] Who are you?

KENT: I am a poor but honest man.

KING LEAR: What do you want?

KENT: I want to help you, sir.

KING LEAR: Do you know me?

KENT: No, sir; but I want to help you because I can see that you are an important man.

KING LEAR: What can you do?

KENT: I can give good and honest advice.

KING LEAR: Then follow me. You can be my servant.

[Oswald enters.] You, where's my daughter?

OSWALD: I'm sorry, sir...

[He exits.]

KING LEAR: What did the man say? Call him back.

SOLDIER: He said that your daughter wasn't well.

KING LEAR: Why didn't he come back when I called him?

SOLDIER: Your majesty, he was very rude. I don't know what the problem is; but the servants, the Duke and your daughter are all being very unkind to you.

KING LEAR: I've noticed that too. But where's my Fool? I haven't seen him for two days.

SOLDIER: He has been very unhappy since Cordelia went to France.

KING LEAR: Don't say her name to me! Go and tell Goneril that I want to speak to her.

[The soldier exits. Oswald and the Fool enter.] Oh, you, come here! Who am I?

OSWALD: My lady's father.

KING LEAR: My lady's father? How rude!

[King Lear hits him.]

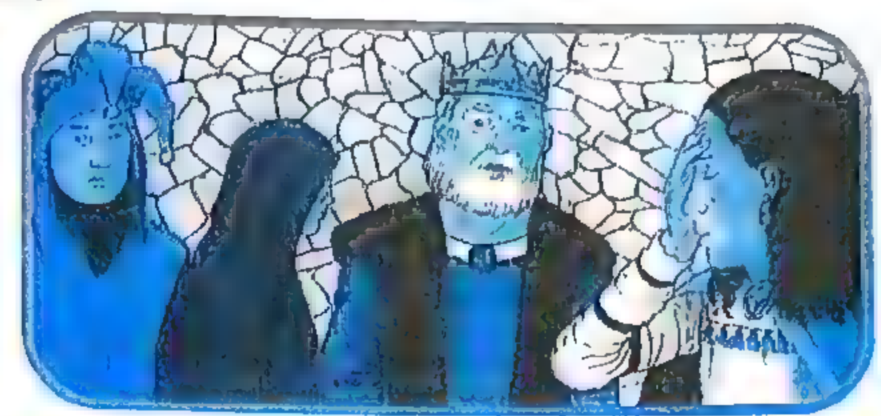
OSWALD: Don't hit me, my lord.

KENT: [Hitting him.] Don't be rude to the King hit you, too!



KING LEAR: Thank you. You are a good man.

[Goneril enters.]



KING LEAR: What's the matter, Goneril? Why are you holding your head?

FOOL: You should worry, old king, because you gave everything away, rather than worrying about her head. One day, you will want everything back.

GONERIL: Father, are you encouraging your men to behave badly? Your Fool says and does what he wants.

FOOL: Even a fool knows when the cart is pulling the horse.

KING LEAR: Does anyone here know who I am? Tell me!

GONERIL: You're old and you should be wise. But you're keeping a hundred soldiers here; they are noisy and rude. Please don't have so many soldiers, and only keep the men who can behave well.

KING LEAR: [angry] What did you say? Call my soldiers. You won't have any more trouble from me, because now I have only one daughter left.

[Albany enters and he is very surprised.]

[To the soldiers.] Prepare my horses.

ALBANY: Please, sir, wait.

KING LEAR: [To himself.] Oh, why was I angry with Cordelia? She was not as rude to me as Goneril. Why was I so foolish?

ALBANY: Your majesty, I don't know what's made you angry, but I'm not guilty.

KING LEAR: That might be true, but listen. If Goneril has a child one day, and the child is cruel to her, she will understand how I feel. Then she will have a taste of her own medicine.

[King Lear exits.]

ALBANY: What has happened, Goneril?

GONERIL: Nothing, Let him shout. He is a mad old man.

[King Lear enters again.]

KING LEAR: Goneril, you have told fifty of my soldiers to go!

ALBANY: What is the matter, sir?

KING LEAR: I'll tell you. [To Goneril.] I cannot believe that you have the power to make me so unhappy. But you have. I still have one daughter left, and I am sure she will be kind to me when she hears what you have done. She will not be happy with you!

[King Lear exits with Kent, and Attendants.]

GONERIL: Did you hear that, my husband?

ALBANY: You know how much I love you, Goneril, but ....

GONERIL: Do not say more.

[To the Fool.] You, go. **[The Fool exits.]**

GONERIL: Is it a good idea to let him keep a hundred soldiers to help him in his old age? They might **attack** us.





ALBANY: I think you are worrying too much.

GONERIL: It's better to worry and be safe. I've written to my sister Regan and told her everything. I'm not angry with you because you asked me to be kinder to my father, but you are being foolish.

ALBANY: Maybe you know more than I do, Goneril, but I think you are making problems rather than solving them.

Exercises on Chapter (3)

1) Choose the correct answer:

1. .... tells the king not to be angry with him and then tells his wife not to worry about the king.
   ⓐ Edgar ⓑ Kent ⓒ Edmund ⓓ Albany
2. .... gets angry with his daughter when she tells him that he shouldn't keep so many soldiers.
   ⓐ King Lear ⓑ Edgar ⓒ Kent ⓓ Albany
3. .... disguises himself so he can continue to work for the king.
   ⓐ Edgar ⓑ Kent ⓒ Albany ⓓ Edmund
4. Goneril feels .... because of the way her father is behaving.
   ⓐ happy ⓑ guilty ⓒ worried ⓓ sad
5. Kent .... the king.
   ⓐ will leave ⓑ won't leave ⓒ left ⓓ did leave
6. King Lear feels that .... doesn't know how much she has hurt him.
   ⓐ Edmund ⓑ Edgar ⓒ Kent ⓓ Goneril

2) Answer these questions.

1. "The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!"
   What does this tell us about how Goneril sees her father?
   * ....
2. "I still love the King and I'll continue to work hard for him, but he won't know me."
   What does this tell us about Kent?
   * ....
3. "My lady's father? How rude!"
   Why is King Lear angry with Oswald?
   * ....
4. "Call my soldiers. You won't have any more trouble from me, because now I have only one daughter left."
   Why does King Lear say this to Goneril?
   * ....
5. If Goneril has a child who is cruel to her, "... she will have a taste of her own medicine."
   What does King Lear mean by this expression?
   * ....
6. "It's better to worry and be safe."
   Why does Goneril say this to Albany?
   * ....



Chapter 4

King Lear



Before You Read

* What did Edmund show his father Gloucester in Chapter2?

Vocabulary

guard	حارس	arrest	يقبض على	pretend	يتظاهر
fight	يتعارك / يحارب	pick up	يلتقط	call out	ينادى
blood	دماء	cut	يجرح	injured	مصاب
refuse	يرفض	kill	يقتل	finally	أخيرا
terrible	فظيع	run away	يهرب	soon	قريبا
reward	يكافئ	persuade	يقنع	idea	فكرة
profit	مكسب	stab	يطعن	back	ظهر
broken	محطم	plot	يتآمر	against	ضد
warn	يحذر	message	رسالة	trust	يثق
bagger	متسول	dirty	قذر	disbelief	كذب
faithful	مخلص	loyalty	ولاء / إخلاص	sick	مريض



Act II, Scene I



[In the Castle of the Duke of Gloucester. Edmund enters.]

EDMUND: [To himself. So, I hear that the Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. That's good! It will help my plan a lot. My father has a guard ready to arrest my brother. But there's one more thing I should do first. Here's Edgar.

[Edgar enters.]

Brother, can we talk? Our father's coming here soon, so you must go! He knows you are hiding here. But first, we must pretend to fight. Pick up your sword. Quickly, before our father gets here. Now run from here, brother. (Calls out] Help me!

[To his brother again.] Goodbye, Edgar.

[Edgar exits.]

[To himself.] If there's some blood on me, people will think I've been in a fight.

[He cuts his arm.]

Father, father! Stop him, stop him! Help!

[Gloucester enters with servants]

EDMUND: Look at my arm, father, I'm injured.

GLOUCESTER: What happened? Where's Edgar?

EDMUND: He ran that way. When I refused his plan.

GLOUCESTER: You there, follow him!

[Some servants exit]



What plan, Edmund?

EDMUND: His plan is to kill you, father. I told him that I loved you. Finally, when he understood that I didn't want to help with his terrible plan, he cut my arm with his sword. Then he saw that I was ready to fight him, and he quickly ran away.

GLOUCESTER: He'll not run very far. If he stays in this country, we'll soon find him. Then we'll arrest him. The Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. I will tell him that there's a **reward** for any man who finds Edgar. And anyone who hides him will be arrested, too.

EDMUND: Father, I tried to **persuade** Edgar to stop his plan, but he wanted to continue with it. I told him that I would tell you all about it "Do you think anyone will believe you?" Edgar said. "No. I'll say that it was all your idea. They know that you will **profit** most if father dies, not me."

GLOUCESTER: This is terrible! **It is a stab in the back.** I'll stop people from leaving England's **ports**, Edgar won't leave the country. Thank you, my loving son Edmund. Now I will do everything to help you. You will inherit all my land.

[The Duke of Cornwall enters with his wife Regan and servants.]

CORNWALL: Gloucester, how are you, my friend? Since I've arrived here, I've heard some strange news.

REGAN: If it is true, it is terrible news!

GLOUCESTER: Oh Regan, my heart is broken!

REGAN: Did your son really try to kill you? Your son Edgar?

GLOUCESTER: Yes, it's true! I wish it were different.

REGAN: I know Edgar spent time with my father's soldiers.

EDMUND: That's correct, madam, he spent some.

REGAN: Then the soldiers have given him the idea of **plotting against** his father, trying to kill him, so that he can use his father's money. I've just had a message from my sister Goneril about the soldiers. She has warned me to be careful of them. If they come to my house, I won't be there.

CORNWALL: Edmund, I hear that you've been a good son to your father.

EDMUND: It was my duty, sir.

GLOUCESTER: Edmund told me of Edgar's plan, and he got this cut on his arm when he tried to stop him.

CORNWALL: Is anyone following Edgar?

GLOUCESTER: Yes, I've sent some guards.

CORNWALL: The guards must arrest him. Edmund, I'd like you to work for me. I need men like you that I can trust.

EDMUND: I'd be happy to help you, sir.

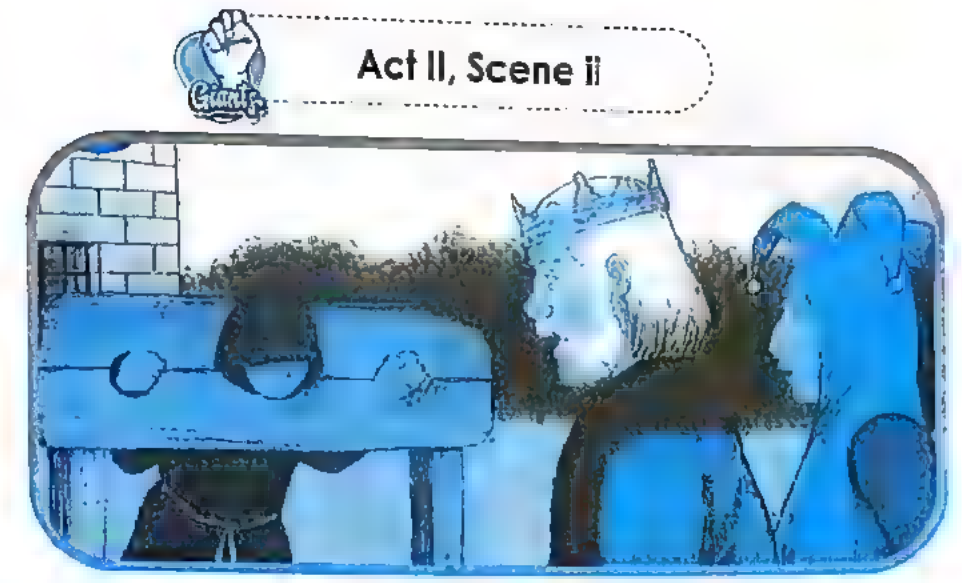
GLOUCESTER: I thank you, Cornwall

[They exit.]





Act II, Scene ii



[In the countryside. Edgar enters.]

OGAR: I've heard people say that I'm guilty! But I was not caught, because I hid in this old tree. It's not safe for me to go to any port now. Guards are looking for me. So I must disguise myself as a **beggar**. I will change my clothes and make my face and hair look dirty.

[He changes his clothes.]

I'll wear these clothes of a poor man, and live outside under the rain. Nobody will see Edgar any more. From now, I'll call myself Poor Tom.

[Edgar exits.]

[Enter, Lear, Fool and Knight. Kent is in the stocks.]

KENT: Good morning, my lord.

KING LEAR: [Looks in **disbelief** at Kent in the stocks]. What has happened? Who did this to you?

KENT: It was your daughter Regan and her husband Cornwall, sir.

KING LEAR: But you are working for the King! They should not do this to you! This is terrible. Where's my daughter?

[King Lear exits.]

KENT: Fool, why has the King got so few soldiers now?

FOOL: He has no money, so he has fewer people to help him But I'll be **faithful** to him, the Fool will always stay, and let the wise men run away.

[King Lear and Gloucester enter together.]

KING LEAR: Why don't they want to speak to me? You say they are sick? They are tired? That's no answer.

GLOUCESTER: I'm sorry, your majesty, but you know that the Duke of Cornwall easily feels angry. He won't **change his mind.**

KING LEAR: What? He's angry! Well, I'm angry, too!

[He sees Kent in the stocks again.]

Why is he sitting in the stocks? Go and tell the Duke of Cornwall and his wife that I want to speak to them, now! **[Gloucester exits.]**

KING LEAR: Oh, my heart, my unhappy heart!

[Cornwall, Regan, Gloucester and Servants enter.]

REGAN: Father, I'm pleased to see you.

KING LEAR: My dear daughter Regan, your sister is nothing to me. Oh Regan, she's been so cruel to me! You won't believe how badly she has behaved.



REGAN: I don't think my sister-could be unkind to you. If she has stopped your badly behaved soldiers, she has only done it to help you.

KING LEAR: I'm very angry with her!

REGAN: Father, please go back to my sister's house, you're the one who is wrong, not my good sister Goneril.

Exercises on Chapter (4)

1) Choose the correct answer:

1. All the ships had to remain in their .... due to the bad weather.
   ⓐ ports ⓑ imports ⓒ exports ⓓ airports
2. Edmund .... asked his brother if they could talk.
   ⓐ Edgar ⓑ Edmund ⓒ Kent ⓓ Goneril
3. .... said it was a stab in the back.
   ⓐ Edmund ⓑ Edgar ⓒ Kent ⓓ Gloucester
4. .... ran away to avoid getting arrested.
   ⓐ Edmund ⓑ Edgar ⓒ Kent ⓓ Goneril
5. .... pretends to fight with his brother
   ⓐ Edmund ⓑ Edgar ⓒ Kent ⓓ Goneril

2) Answer these questions.

1. What did Edmund show his father Gloucester?
   * ....
2. Why does Edmund cut his own arm?
   * ....
3. What do you know about Kent?
   * ....
4. What does Edmund say Edgar's plan is?
   * ....
5. Who does Regan think gave Edgar the idea?
   * ....
6. In what ways have Regan and Goneril changed since the beginning of the play?
   * ....





Chapter 5

King Lear

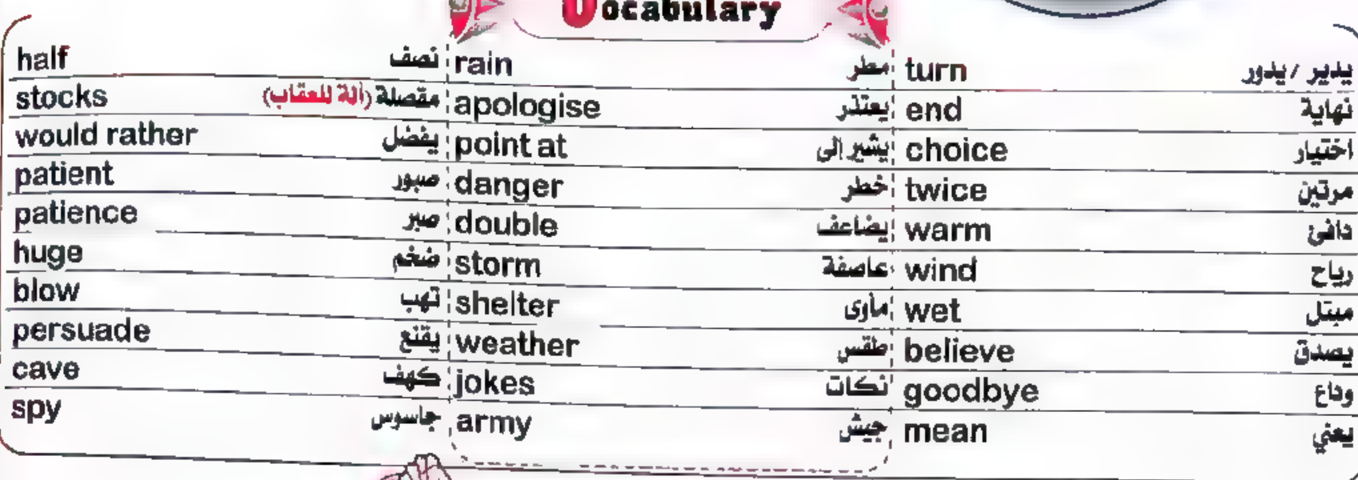


Before You Read

* What do you think will happen next?



Vocabulary



half	نصف	rain	مطر	turn	يدير / يدور
stocks	مقصلة (آلة للعقاب)	apologise	يعتذر	end	نهاية
would rather	يفضل	point at	يشير إلى	choice	اختيار
patient	صبور	danger	خطر	twice	مرتين
patience	صبر	double	يضاعف	warm	دافئ
huge	ضخم	storm	عاصفة	wind	رياح
blow	تهب	shelter	مأوى	wet	مبتل
persuade	يقنع	weather	طقس	believe	يصدق
cave	كهف	jokes	نكات	goodbye	وداع
spy	جاسوس	army	جيش	mean	يعني



Act II, scene iii



[In the countryside.]

KING LEAR: Regan, I will not stay with your sisters Goneril. Please, give me clothes, food and a bed Remember, I am old.

REGAN: Please father Go back and stay with my sister.

KING LEAR: Never, Regan! She's told half of my soldiers to leave! She's has been cruel and rude to me! I want rain to always fall on her head!

REGAN: You'll want the same to happen to me soon.

KING LEAR: No, Regan, I'll never say bad things about you. Goneril's eyes are cruel, but yours are kind. You would never **turn your back on me**. And you'd not **lock me out** of your house. You understand how a daughter should help her father. You haven't forgotten that I've given you half of my kingdom.

REGAN: Father, why are you unhappy?

CORNWALL: Listen! Who's coming?

REGAN: It's my sister. She said in her letter that she would come soon.

[Goneril enters with Oswald.]



KING LEAR: Who put my servant in the stocks? Regan, I hope that you didn't know about this. [To Goneril.] You shouldn't want to look at me Oh Regan, why are you holding her hand?

GONERIL: Why shouldn't she hold my hand, father? What have I done wrong?

KING LEAR: Oh, how unhappy you've made me. You're too cruel Why won't you **apologise** to me? And why is my servant in the stocks?

CORNWALL: I put him there sir, because he didn't behave well.

KING LEAR: You? Was it you?

REGAN: Please, father, you're ill today. Stay with my sister until the end of the month. Then, if you ask half of your soldiers to leave, you can come and stay with me.

KING LEAR: Stay with her, and ask my soldiers to leave? No, I would rather sleep outside under the stars.

[To himself.] Return with Goneril? I would prefer to stand in front of the King of France and ask him for food. Go back with her? I would prefer to be the servant of this terrible man. [Points at Oswald.]

GONERIL: It's your choice, father.

KING LEAR: Please, daughter, don't make me mad. I won't **set eyes on you** again, my child, goodbye. We won't meet any more. But you will soon feel bad about what you've done I'll be patient for now, and I'll stay with Regan with my hundred soldiers.

REGAN: That is not possible. My home isn't ready for you. Listen to my sister. Are fifty soldiers not enough for you?

GONERIL: My servants could help you.

REGAN: Yes, why not, father? We have enough servants. When you come to me (for now I see the danger of so many men), I ask you to bring just twenty-five soldiers. I won't have rooms for any more.

KING LEAR: But Regan, I gave you everything......

REGAN: And you gave it to me at the right time!

KING LEAR: I gave you enough to live well for all time! I asked for just one thing - to keep a hundred soldiers. Are you really asking me to a come with just twenty-five, Regan?

REGAN: Don't talk to me any more about this.

KING LEAR: [To Goneril.] Then I'll go back with you. Your fifty soldiers is **double** her twenty-five, so you must love me twice as much as she does.

GONERIL: Listen, father. You do not need twenty-five, ten or even five soldiers in a house where we have fifty servants to look after you.

REGAN: Why do you even need one soldier?

KING LEAR: Why do I need them? Even the poorest beggars have things that they don't need. If you only give people what they need to live, then they are little more than animals. You are a lady. If you just want to stay warm, you don't need those beautiful clothes you're wearing. They don't keep you warm at all. But, if you ask me what I really need, I need **patience**! Oh, give me patience, or I will **go mad**!

[King Lear exits with Gloucester and the Fool. There is a huge storm.]

CORNWALL: We should go inside; there's a big storm coming.

REGAN: This house is small; there isn't **room** for Lear and his soldiers.

GONERIL: Where is the Duke of Gloucester?

CORNWALL: He followed Lear. [Gloucester enters.] Here he is.

GLOUCESTER: The King is very angry. He has called for his horse.

CORNWALL: Let him go. He won't listen to anyone.

GONERIL: Yes, don't try to stop him.



GLOUCESTER: But it is nearly night and strong winds are blowing. There is nowhere to shelter for many kilometres.

REGAN: That will teach him a lesson. Lock the doors. He has his soldiers with him, and who knows what they'll persuade him to do.

CORNWALL: Regan is right. Lock the doors, it's a wet night. Come in out of the storm.

[They exit.]



Act III, Scene i

[In a field in the countryside. The storm continues. Kent enters with a soldier.]

KENT: Who's there, in this terrible weather? Where's the King?

SOLDIER: He's fighting with the wind and the rain. This terrible night would make a bear hide in a cave, but the King is running around outside without even a hat.

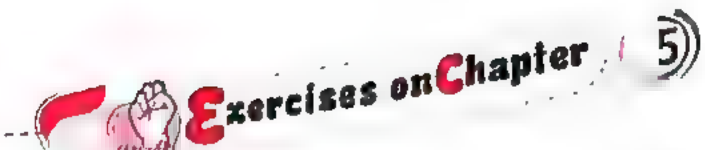
KENT: But who's with him?

SOLDIER: Only the Fool, who tries to make him happier with his **jokes**.

KENT: Sir, I trust you. I have got something to tell you. There's a **disagreement** between the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall. They both have servants who are really **spies** for the King of France. They have noticed that the Dukes are both against the King. Now the King of France has sent an army, and the French have spies at some of our ports. If you trust me, go quickly to Dover. There are people there who'll thank you when you tell them about the King's problems. I'm not the person who you think. I'm really an important man. If you see Cordelia, show her this ring, and she'll tell you who I am. Here's some money. Oh, this storm! I must go and find the King.

[They exit.]





1) Choose the correct answer:

1. When King Lear says to Regan, "You would never turn your back on me," he means that she would not ....
   ⓐ say bad things about him.
   ⓑ refuse to look at his face.
   ⓒ refuse to help him.
2. When King Lear says "You'd not lock me out," to Regan, he means that she would not ....
   ⓐ stop him coming into her home.
   ⓑ ignore him when he spoke to her.
   ⓒ lie to him about her plans.
3. When King Lear says "I won't set eyes on you again," to Goneril, he means that.... ......
   ⓐ he won't look at her again.
   ⓑ he won't visit her again.
   ⓒ he won't believe her again.
4. Goneril and.... ... . didn't want their father to bring any soldiers to their homes.
   ⓐ Edmund ⓑ Regan ⓒ Kent ⓓ Goneril
5. The Duke of Cornwall follows..... ... into the storm.
   ⓐ Edmund ⓑ Edgar ⓒ Lear ⓓ Goneril

2) Answer these questions.

1. What did Goneril do that made her father angry?
   * ....
2. Who did Kent ask to help Lear?
   * ....
3. Was Regan happy that her father has come to stay with her?
   * ....
4. Why does Kent give the soldier his ring?
   * ....
5. Do you think Cordelia will want to help her father? Why? Why not?
   * ....





Chapter 6
King Lear



Before You Read

* Why did king Lear go out in the storm?



Vocabulary

field	حقل	fill	يملأ	lightning	البرق
burn	يحرق	forgive	يسامح	hut	كوخ
near	قريب	rest	يرتاح	hard-hearted	قاسى القلب
force	يجبر	allow	يسمح	straw	قش
horrible	فظيع	worse	أسوء	lock	يحبس
win	يفوز	worries	مخاوف	rise	ترتفع
impossible	مستحيل	homeless	مشرد	stomach	معدة
frightened	مرعوب	blanket	بطانية	torch	مشعل
mice	فئران	apart from	ماعدا	lord	سيد
philosopher	فيلسوف	accept	يقبل	research	يبحث
almost	تقريبا	offer	يعرض	ride	يركب



Act III, Scene ii

[In another part of the field. The storm continues. King Lear enters with the Fool.]

KING LEAR: Blow winds, and let the rain fill our houses with water! Let lightning cut a tree in two, and burn my white hair!

FOOL: Oh, old man, go inside, and ask your daughters to forgive you!

KING LEAR: I'm a poor, weak old man. Why is the weather being cruel to me, like my daughters?

[Kent enters.]

KING LEAR: Who's there?

FOOL: Ah, here's someone who is both a wise man and a fool.

KENT: Oh no, why are you here? Even bears want to stay in their caves on a night like this. There's so much wind and rain! The storm is terrible. Your majesty, there's a poor man's hut near here. It will shelter you from the storm. Stay there and rest, while I go to the house of your hard-hearted daughters.

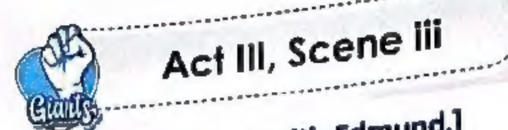
KING LEAR: When I asked for you, they did not let me in their house, so I'll force them to allow you in. But I think I'm going mad!

[To the Fool.] How are you, my boy? I'm cold. Where the straw? It's strange how I now want to have horrible things such as a bed of straw to sleep on!

[King Lear exits with Kent.]







Act III, Scene iii

[At Gloucester's castle. Gloucester enters with Edmund.]

GLOUCESTER: Oh, Edmund, I don't like the way Goneril and Regan are behaving with their father! When I asked them to help Lear, they told me not to talk about him or to look after him.

EDMUND: That's very cruel of them!

GLOUCESTER: Go to them; but do not say anything. There is some disagreement between the two Dukes, and maybe something even worse than that. I got a letter tonight.

[To himself.] No, it's too dangerous to talk about it to him.

[To Edmund] I have locked the letter in my bedroom. Some of the French army have already arrived in England. We must help King Lear. I will go and look for him and help him. You go and talk to the Duke of Cornwall and do not tell him where I am. If he asks for me, tell him I'm ill and have gone to bed. Strange things are happening, Edmund. Please be careful.

[He exits.]

EDMUND: **[To himself.]** I'll go and tell the Duke immediately about your worries for the King, father. I will tell him about that letter, too. Then I'll get rewarded for this, and I'll win the trust that my father loses. The younger man **rises** as the old man falls!

[He exits]



Act III, Scene iv

[In a field in front of a hut. King Lear enters with Kent and the Fool.]

KENT: Here is a hut where we can shelter, my lord. Please, go inside, This terrible storm makes it impossible for anyone to stay outside.

KING LEAR: Oh, my cruel children! You sent me out into a terrible storm like this. Oh Regan, Goneril! Your kind old father gave you everything! But I'll go mad if I think about this. I won't think about it any more!

KENT: Please, go inside.

KING LEAR: **[To the Fool.]** You go in first, my boy.

[The Fool goes into the hut.]

Poor homeless people, you are always outside when there's a cruel storm. How can your hungry stomachs and old clothes help you when it rains? Why have I not thought about this before? Rich people should **try walking in a poor person's shoes**, and then the world would be a better place for us all.

[The Fool enters. He has just come out of the hut and he's very frightened.]

FOOL: Don't go in there, sir. There's a mad man in that hut.

KENT: Who's in there?

FOOL: A mad man! He says his name is Poor Tom.

KENT: Who are you? He says his name is Poor Tom.

[Edgar enter disguised as a madman called Poor Tom.]

EDGAR: Keep away from me!

KING LEAR: Are you mad like me? Have you given everything to your two daughters?



EDGAR: Nobody gives anything to Poor Tom.

KING LEAR: Have his daughters done this to him?

[To Edgar.] Don't you have anything?

FOOL: No, he only has a blanket.

KING LEAR: Only cruel daughters could have made a man so poor. Who were you?

EDGAR: I was a servant, who was very proud.

KING LEAR: It would be better if you were dead than go around with nothing but a blanket on a night like this!

FOOL: Look, here comes a walking fire.

[Gloucester enters carrying a torch.]

KING LEAR: Who's this?

EDGAR: My name is Poor Tom, and I once had six shirts to wear and a horse to ride, but now all I have is **mice** to eat.

GLOUCESTER: Has your majesty nobody to help you apart from this mad man? Why have our children grown up to be so terrible, my lord? Why do they hate their fathers?

EDGAR: Poor Tom's cold.

Gloucester: Come inside with me, your majesty. I didn't want to do what your cruel daughters asked me to do. They asked me to lock the doors and leave you outside on this terrible night. I've come to find you and take you home, where there's a fire and food ready for you.

KENT: My lord, please accept this man's offer and go to the house.

KING LEAR: First, let me talk to this **philosopher**. What are you researching?

EDGAR: I am researching how to keep warm and to kill mice.

KENT: **[To Gloucester.]** Ask him again, my lord. He's a beginning to go mad. He thinks the poor man is a philosopher.

[Gloucester holds his torch it in front of him and looking at Edgar and Kent, but they are both disguised.]

GLOUCESTER: I'm not surprised Lear is mad. His daughters want him to die. Ah, that good man, Kent! He knew what would happen - the poor man! I'm almost mad myself. I have a son who tried to kill me. No father loved his son more than I loved him. What a night this is! Please your majesty, come with me.

EDGAR: Tom's cold.

GLOUCESTER: Go into your hut, Tom; keep yourself warm.

KENT: This way, your majesty.

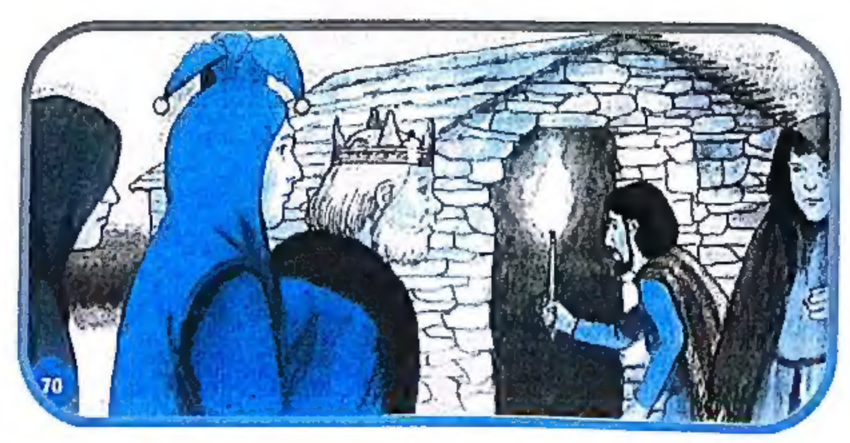
KING LEAR: **[Pointing to Edgar.]** I am going with him!

KENT: My lord, let him bring the poor man with us.

GLOUCESTER: OK. Sir, come on; come with us.

KING LEAR: Let's go then, my good philosopher.

[They exit.]







1) Choose the correct answer:

1. The .... is overgrown with weeds.
   ⓐ sea ⓑ field ⓒ fall ⓓ lake
2. A fierce fire is still raging through the forest, ... everything in its path.
   ⓐ watering ⓑ hurting ⓒ wounding ⓓ burning
3. The car was parked .... a small group of trees.
   ⓐ beneath ⓑ near ⓒ between ⓓ nearly
4. The rocket has to work against the .... of gravity.
   ⓐ power ⓑ force ⓒ energy ⓓ authority
5. Why should anyone want to eat something so ....?
   ⓐ good ⓑ horrible ⓒ delicious ⓓ sweet
6. Brazil are favourites to .... this year's World Cup.
   ⓐ beat ⓑ earn ⓒ win ⓓ gain
7. The ground was frozen hard and was .... to dig.
   ⓐ easy ⓑ impossible ⓒ fine ⓓ possible
8. When you got lost in the forest you must have been very ....
   ⓐ frightening ⓑ frightened ⓒ scary ⓓ happy

2) Answer these questions.

1. Why did King Lear go out in the storm?
   * ....
2. How does King Lear feel about Regan and Goneril?
   * ....
3. How does the Fool feel about King Lear?
   * ....
4. Who is the 'old man' that Edmund refers to?
   * ....
5. Is Edmund a good son to his father? Why? Why not?
   * ....
6. Why do you think Poor Tom does not tell King Lear who he really is?
   * ....
7. How does King Lear feel about the poor man?
   * ....

